

Owner's Manual

2017 A5 Cabriolet

Audi
Vorsprung durch Technik

Foreword

Thank you for choosing an Audi - we value your trust in us.

Your new Audi will allow you to experience the best in groundbreaking technology and premium quality equipment a vehicle has to offer. We recommend that you read your Owner's Manual thoroughly so that you quickly become acquainted with your Audi and make use of all of its features.

In addition to explaining how the different features work, we provide many useful tips and information concerning your safety, how to care for your vehicle and how to maintain your vehicle's value. We also give you useful tips and information on how to drive your vehicle more efficiently and in an environmentally friendly manner.

We hope you enjoy driving your Audi and we wish you safe and pleasant motoring.

AUDI AG

8F0012721BB

Table of contents

About this Owner's Manual 5

Operation 6
Cockpit 6
General illustration 6

Instruments and indicator lights 8
Instruments 8
Indicator lights 11

Driver information system 21
Introduction 21
On-board computer 22
Efficiency program 24
Service interval display 25
On Board Diagnostic System (OBD) 25

Opening and closing 27
Central locking 27
Luggage compartment lid 33
Power windows 35
Valet parking 36
Garage door opener (HomeLink) 36

Power top 40
Automatic power top 40
Wind deflector 43
Power top emergency operation 44

Lights and Vision 48
Exterior lighting 48
Interior lighting 51
Vision 51
Windshield wipers 53
Digital compass 55

Seats and storage 57
General information 57
Front seats 58
Head restraints 60
Memory function 61
Ashtray 62
Cigarette lighter 62
Storing 62
Luggage compartment 63

Warm and cold 66
Climate control system 66

Driving 71
Steering 71
Ignition lock 71
Convenience key 73
Driver messages 75
Electromechanical parking brake 76
Speed warning system 78
Cruise control system 79

Automatic transmission 81
multitronic, S tronic, tiptronic 81

Audi adaptive cruise control and braking guard 88
Introduction 88
General information 88
Audi adaptive cruise control 90
Audi braking guard 94
Messages 95

Audi side assist 97
Side assist 97

Audi drive select 101
Drive settings 101

Parking System 104
Parking system 104
Rear parking system 104
Rear parking system with rearview camera 105

Safety 111
Driving safety 111
Basics 111
Correct passenger seating positions 112
Driver's and front passenger's footwell 115
Pedal area 116
Storing cargo correctly 116
Reporting Safety Defects 118
Active rollover protection system 119

Safety belts 122
General information 122
Why use safety belts? 123
Safety belts 125
Belt tensioners 128

Airbag system 130
Important information 130
Front airbags 134
Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System . 140
Knee airbags 144
Side airbags 146

Child safety 150
Important information 150
Child seats 155
Securing child seats 159
LATCH system (lower anchorages and tethers for children) 163
Additional information 166

Driver messages 167
Intelligent Technology 167
Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC) 167
Notice about data recorded by the Event Data Recorder and vehicle control modules 169
Braking 170
Electro-mechanical power assist, dynamic steering 171
Driving with your quattro 172
Energy management 173

Driving and the environment 175
Breaking in 175
Avoid damaging the vehicle 175
Driving through water on roads 175
Catalytic converter 176
Shutting down vehicle 176
Economical and environmentally-friendly driving 177

Trailer towing 179
Driving with a trailer 179
Trailer towing information 180

Operating instructions 182
Care and cleaning 182
General information 182
Car washes 182
Cleaning and care information 183
Placing your vehicle out of service 186

Fuel and Refueling 188
Fuel 188
Refueling 190

Checking and Filling 193
Hood 193
Engine compartment 195
Engine oil 195
Cooling system 199
Brake fluid 202
Battery 203
Windshield/headlight* washer container . 206

Wheels 207
Wheels and Tires 207
Tire pressure monitoring system 224

Do It Yourself 227
Emergency assistance 227
Vehicle tool kit 227
Space-saving spare tire (compact spare tire) 227
Replacing wheels 228

Fuses and bulbs 234
Fuses 234
Bulbs 237

Emergency situations 238
General 238
Starting by pushing or towing 238
Starting with jumper cables 238
Use of jumper cables 239
Towing with a tow truck 240
Raising the vehicle 242

Technical data 243
Technical data 243
Vehicle identification 243
Weights 243
Dimensions 244
Capacities 244
Gasoline engines 245

Consumer information 246
Warranty coverages 246
Operating your vehicle outside the U.S.A. or Canada 246

8F0012721BB

Audi Service Repair Manuals and Literature 246
Maintenance 246
Accessories and technical changes 248
Declaration of Compliance, Telecommunications and Electronic Systems 249

Index 250

This Owner's Manual applies to all versions of this model. It contains important information, tips, suggestions and warnings for using your vehicle.

Keep this manual in your vehicle at all times. This is especially important if you loan your vehicle to others or sell it.

This owner's manual describes the **equipment range** specified for this model at the time of printing. Individual equipment options described may only be available at a later date or may only be offered in certain countries.

Some sections in this manual do not apply to all vehicles. In this case, the beginning of the section indicates the **validity**, for example “Applies to: vehicles with Audi side assist”. Optional or vehicle-specific equipment is also identified with an asterisk “*”.

The **illustrations** are designed as a general guide and on your vehicle may look slightly different than what is illustrated.

All **directions**, such as “left”, “right”, “front” and “rear”, are based on the vehicle's direction of travel.

* Optional or vehicle-specific equipment

▶ The section continues on the next page.

⇨ ⚠ Cross reference to a “WARNING”within a section. If a page number is indicated, the WARNING is located outside of the section.

Tips

Text with this symbol contains additional useful information.

WARNING

Text with this symbol contains information about safety and how to reduce the risk of serious personal injury or death.

Note

Text with this symbol contains information about reducing the risk of damage to your vehicle.

For the sake of the environment

Text with this symbol contains information on protecting the environment.

8F0012721BB

Cockpit

General illustration

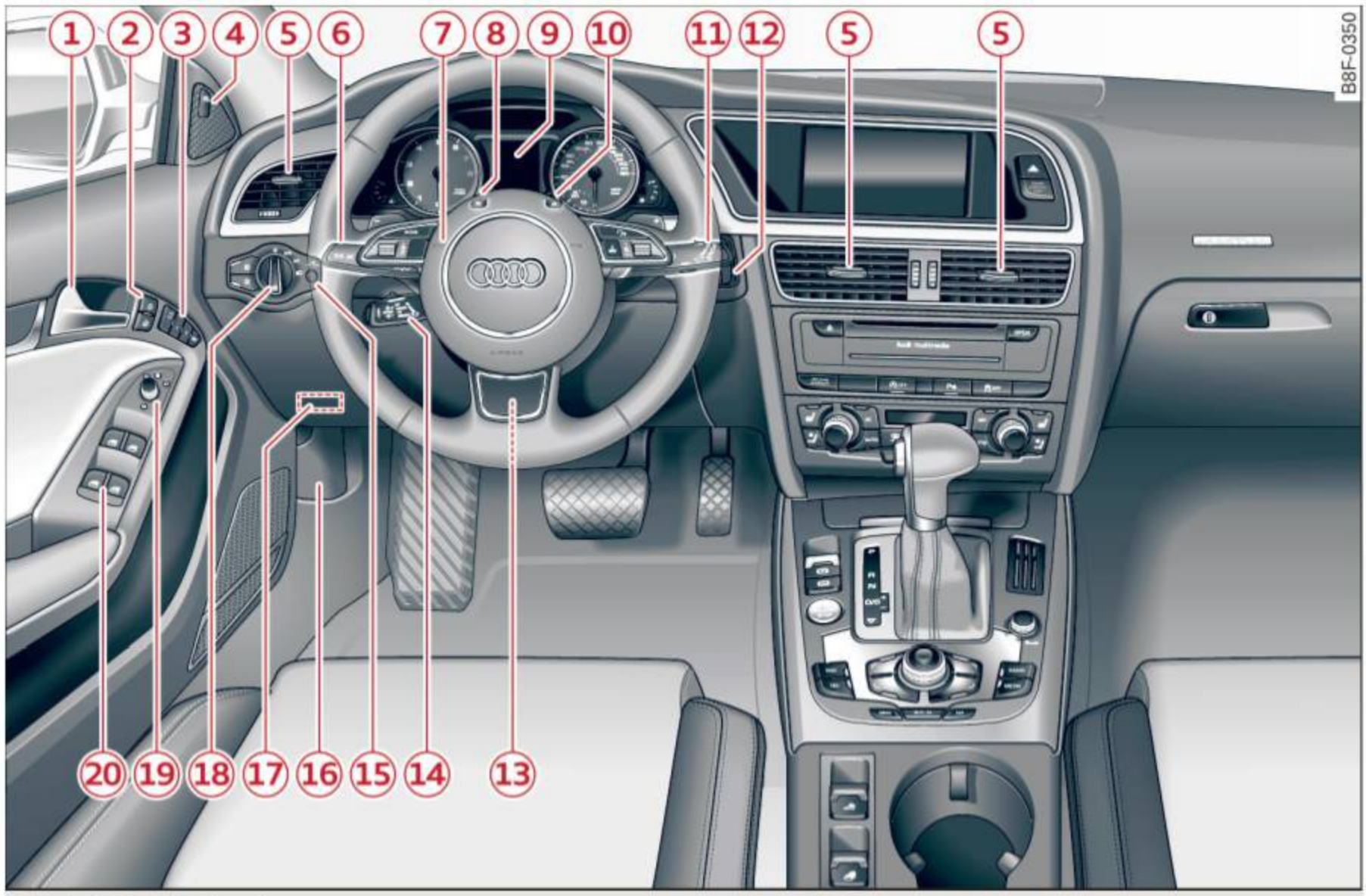


Fig. 1 Cockpit: left section

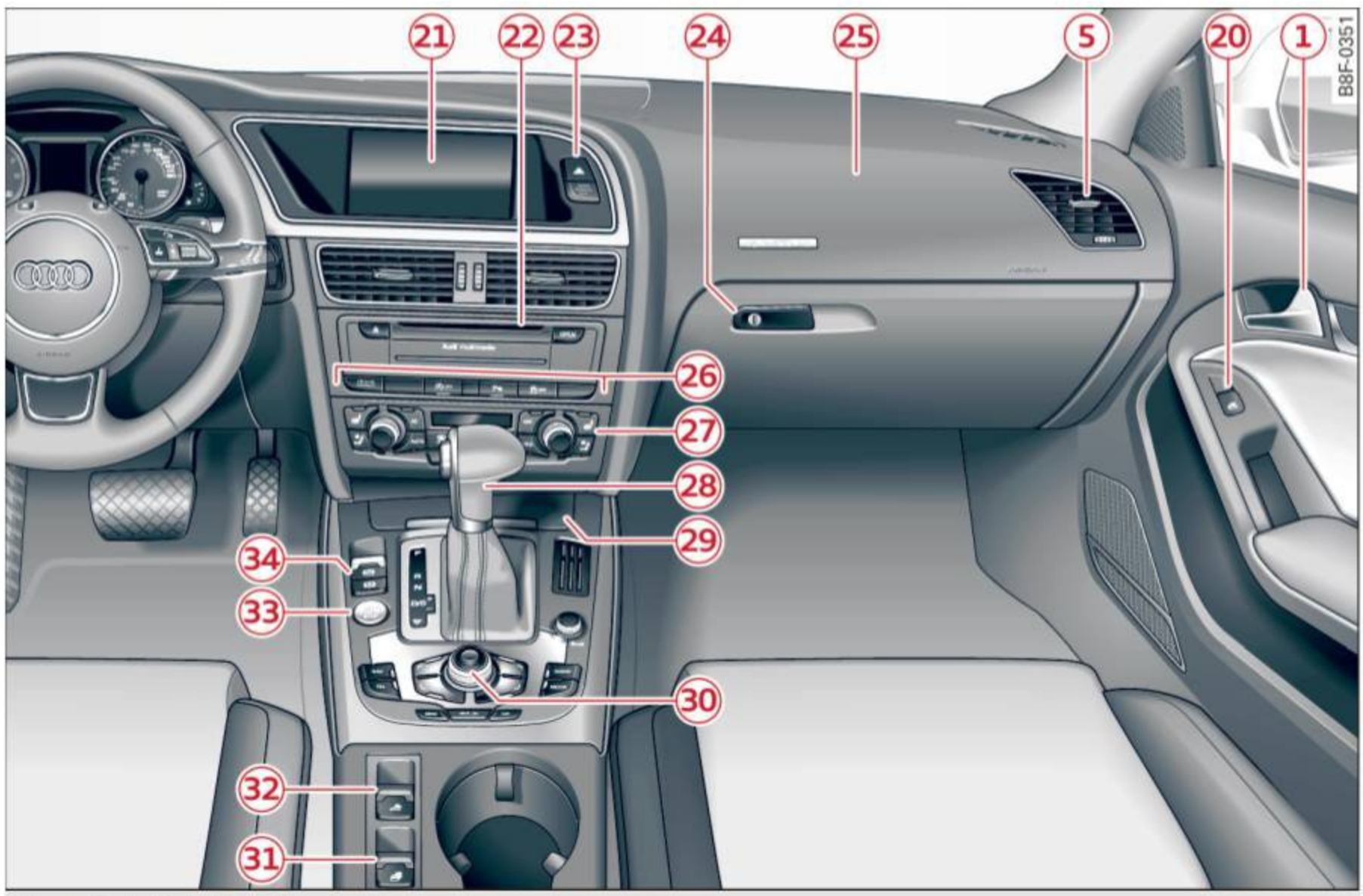


Fig. 2 Cockpit: right section

① Door handle
② Power locking switch 31
③ Memory buttons (driver's seat) .. 61
④ Button for side assist 97
⑤ Air outlets
⑥ Control lever for:
– Turn signal and high beam 49
⑦ Multifunction steering wheel with:
– Horn
– Driver's airbag 134
– Audio/video, telephone and navigation buttons
– Rocker switches for tiptronic operation 85
⑧ SET button 9
⑨ Instrument cluster 8
⑩ Reset button for trip odometer .. 10
⑪ Switches for:
– Windshield wiper/washer 53
– Trip computer 22
⑫ Ignition lock 71
⑬ Adjustable steering column 71
⑭ Control lever for:
– Cruise control 79
– adaptive cruise control 88
⑮ Instrument lighting 51
⑯ Release lever for the engine hood 193
⑰ Data Link Connector for On Board Diagnostics (OBD II) 25
⑱ Light switch 48
⑲ Adjuster control for outside mirrors 51
⑳ Power window switches 35
㉑ Radio-Display[1)] or MMI-Display
㉒ Depending on options:
– Radio system
– CD changer
㉓ Emergency flasher 50
㉔ Glove compartment (lockable) ... 63
㉕ Front passenger's airbag 134
㉖ Depending on options, switches for:
– drive select 101
– Electronic Stabilization Control . 167
㉗ Deluxe automatic climate control 66
㉘ Selector lever for automatic transmission 83
㉙ Ashtray with cigarette lighter ... 62, 62
㉚ Depending on options:
– MMI control console or
– drive select 101
– Electronic Stabilization Control button 167
㉛ Central power window switch
㉜ Power top switch 40
㉝ START ENGINE STOP button ... 73
㉞ Electromechanical parking brake . 76

Tips

– Some of the equipment or features shown in the general illustration may be standard equipment on your vehicle or may be optional equipment depending on your model. Always ask your authorized Audi dealer if you have a question about your vehicle.
– Operation of the Multi Media Interface (MMI) is described in a separate manual.

1) The image in the display will appear either in multiple colors or in a single color, depending on the vehicle equipment. The multi color image will be used in this Owner's Manual because both multi color and single color versions are almost identical.

8F0012721BB

Instruments and indicator lights

Instruments

Instrument cluster and controls

The instrument cluster is your central source of information.

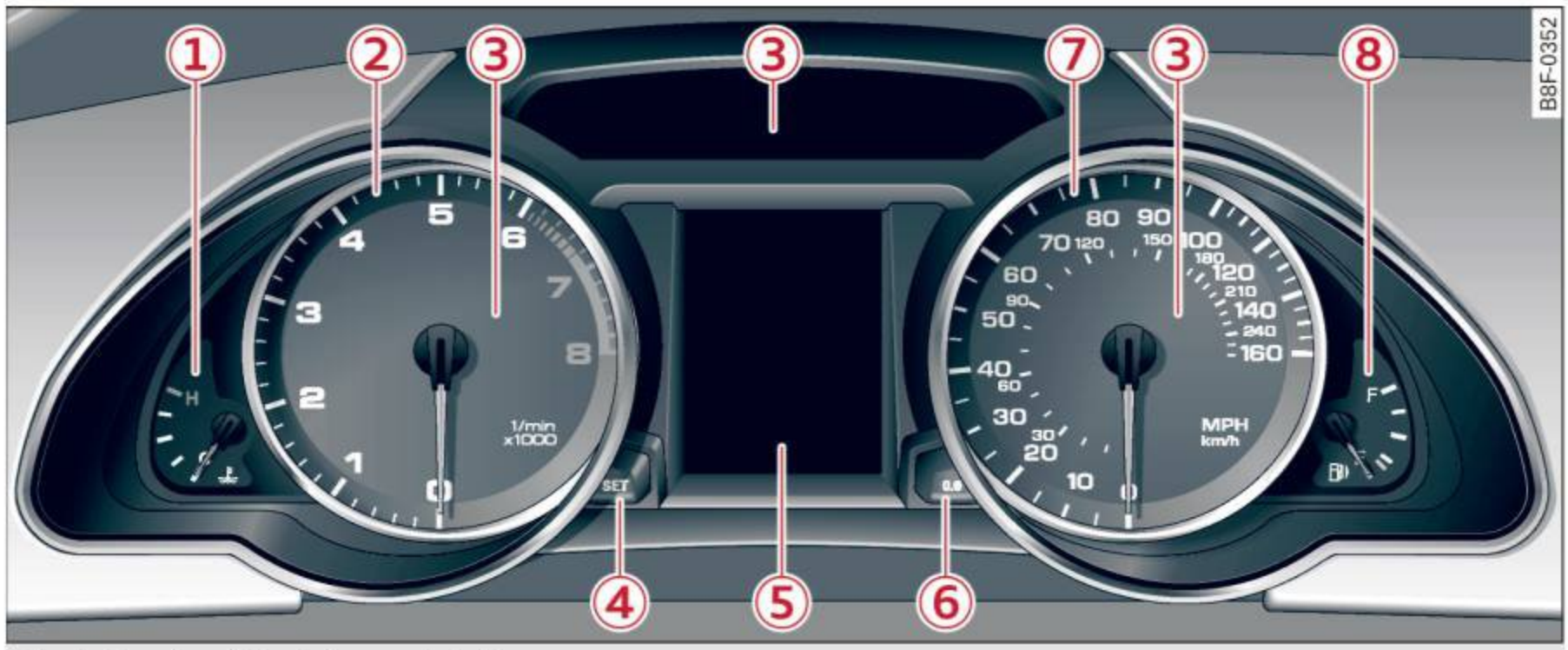


Fig. 3 Overview of the instrument cluster

① Coolant temperature gauge 8
② Tachometer 9
③ Warning/indicator lights 11
④ SET button 9
⑤ Display
– Driver information system 21
– Time and date display 10
– Odometer 10
⑥ Reset button for trip odometer . . 10
⑦ Speedometer
⑧ Fuel gauge 10

Tips

– When switching the ignition on, the needles in the instrument cluster swing upward briefly.
– The illumination for the instrument cluster lights up whenever you switch on the ignition with the **vehicle headlights off**. As the daylight fades, the instrument cluster illumination likewise dims automatically and will go out completely when the outside light is very low. This feature is meant to remind you to switch on the headlights when outside light conditions become poor.

Engine coolant temperature gauge

The engine coolant gauge ⇨ *page 8, fig. 3* ① only works when the ignition is on. To prevent damage to your engine, please note the following important points:

Engine cold

If the needle is at or close to the bottom of the gauge, the engine has not yet reached its operating temperature. Avoid high engine speeds, heavy engine loads, and heavy throttle applications.

Normal temperature

When the engine has reached its operating temperature, the needle will move to the middle of the gauge and remain there. If the engine is working hard at high outside temperatures, the needle may move higher on the gauge. This is not a cause for concern as long as the warning light in the instrument cluster display does not illuminate. If the warning light in the instrument cluster display flashes, this can mean one of two things: either the coolant *temperature* is too high, or the coolant *level* is too low

⇨ *page 15* ▶

WARNING

- Always observe the warning in ⇨ *page 193*, before opening the hood and checking the engine coolant level.
- Never open the engine hood if you see or hear steam, or if you see engine coolant dripping from the engine compartment. You could burn yourself. Let the engine cool off first so that you cannot hear or see any steam or engine coolant.

Note

- Mounting additional lights or accessories in front of the air inlets reduces the cooling effect of the radiator. At high outside temperatures or high engine load, the engine could overheat.
- The front spoiler has been designed to properly distribute the cooling air when the vehicle is moving. If the spoiler is damaged, this could reduce the cooling effect and the engine could then overheat. Ask your authorized Audi dealer for assistance.

Tachometer (engine rev counter)

The tachometer indicates the engine RPM (revolutions per minutes).

If engine RPM drops below 1,500, you should downshift to the next lower gear. The red area at the end of the scale indicates maximum permissible engine RPM after the break-in period. Before reaching this area, move the selector lever to position D/S or ease your foot off the accelerator pedal.

Note

The tachometer needle ② ⇨ *page 8, fig. 3* should only briefly be in the red zone: you could damage your engine! The beginning of the red zone varies depending on the engine.

For the sake of the environment

Upshifting early saves fuel and reduces engine noise.

SET button



Fig. 4 SET button in the instrument cluster

The SET button performs the following functions:

Switching on time, date, temperature display and odometer

The display appears for approximately 30 seconds when you press the SET button ⇨ *fig. 4* with the ignition off.

Starting the Auto-Check sequence

The Auto-Check system constantly monitors certain individual functions and components of the vehicle when the ignition is turned on and when the vehicle is moving.

With the ignition turned on, you can start the "Auto-Check sequence" by pressing the SET button. You can perform an Auto-Check sequence when the vehicle is stationary and the ignition is turned on or when the vehicle is moving slower than 3 mph (5 km/h).

In addition, the number of keys initialised for your vehicle is displayed. **L2 3/3** means that three keys have been initialised. This feature enables used car buyers to make sure they have received all of the keys.

If you are given only two keys, for instance, you should take the vehicle and the existing keys to an authorized Audi dealer to have the missing key disabled. It is also important to notify your insurance company about the loss.

Setting the speed warning

By pressing the SET button briefly, you can set threshold 1 of the speed warning while you are driving ⇨ *page 78*. By maintaining pressure on ▶

the SET button, you delete the warning threshold.

Digital clock with date display and Odometer

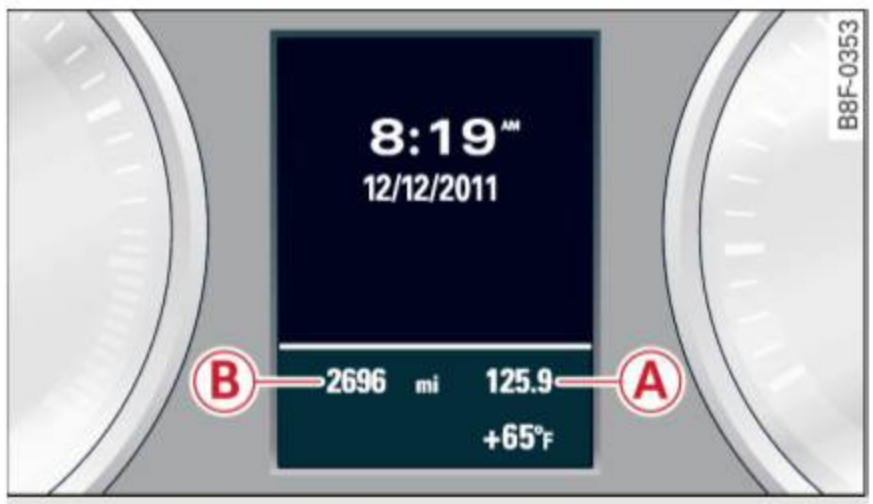


Fig. 5 Instrument cluster: odometer



Fig. 6 Instrument cluster: reset button

Digital clock/GPS controlled clock*

Depending on the vehicle equipment level, you may choose between the quartz clock or the GPS controlled clock* in the radio or in the MMI*. You can learn more about this in the MMI manual or in the radio user's manual.

Odometer/trip odometer

The display of distance driven is shown in kilometers “km” or in miles “mi”.

– USA models – Miles
– Canada models – Kilometers

The units of measure (kilometers/miles) can be changed in the radio or MMI*. You can learn more about this in the MMI manual or in the radio user's manual.

The odometer (B) shows the total number of kilometers or miles that have been driven on the vehicle.

The trip odometer (A) shows the distance driven since it was last reset. It can be used to measure short distances. The last digit shows distances of 100 meters or 1/10 of a mile.

The trip odometer can be reset to zero by pressing the reset button 0.0 ⇨ *fig. 6*.

Malfunction message

If there is a malfunction somewhere in the instrument cluster, **DEF** will appear in the trip odometer and will stay on. Contact your authorized Audi dealer to have the problem corrected.

Immobilizer

When the ignition is switched on, the data on the ignition key are scanned automatically.

If an unauthorized key was used, **SAFE** is displayed permanently in the odometer display field. The vehicle cannot be operated ⇨ *page 28*.

Tips

– When you switch off the ignition or open the driver door, the time, date, odometer and temperature are displayed for an additional 30 seconds.
– You can also call up the display with the SET button ⇨ *page 9* while the ignition is switched off.

Fuel gauge

The fuel gauge works only when the ignition is on.

When the needle reaches the red area, the warning light in the instrument cluster will illuminate ⇨ *page 18*. **Time to refuel!**

The total tank capacity of your vehicle is listed in ⇨ *page 244*.

Note

Never run the tank completely dry! An irregular supply of fuel can cause engine misfiring and fuel could enter into the exhaust system. The catalytic converter could then overheat and be damaged.

Indicator lights

Description

The indicator lights in the instrument cluster blink or turn on. They indicate functions or malfunctions ⇨ ⚠.

Messages may appear with some indicator lights. A warning signal will sound at the same time. The messages disappear again after a short time. To display a message again, press the SET button ⇨ *page 9*. If several malfunctions occur, each of the indicator/warning lamps will be displayed in succession for about two seconds at a time.

Some indicators lights in the display can turn on in several colors.

⚠ WARNING

- Failure to heed warning lights and other important vehicle information may result in serious personal injury or vehicle damage.
- Whenever stalled or stopped for repair, move the vehicle a safe distance off the road, stop the engine, and turn on the emergency flasher ⇨ *page 50*.
- The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a potentially hazardous area. Before you check anything in the engine compartment, stop the engine and let it cool down. Always exercise extreme caution when working under the hood ⇨ *page 193*.

Overview

Some indicator lights turn on briefly to check the function of that system when you switch the ignition on. These systems are marked with a ✓ in the following tables. If one of these indicator lights does not turn on, there is a malfunction in that system.

Red indicator lights	
BRAKE	**USA models:** Brake system ✓ ⇨ *page 13*
(!)	**Canada models:** Brake system ✓ ⇨ *page 13*
PARK BRAKE	**USA models:** Electromechanical parking brake ⇨ *page 14*
(P)	**Canada models:** Electromechanical parking brake ⇨ *page 14*
	Safety belts ⇨ *page 14*
	Electromechanical steering ✓ ⇨ *page 171*
	Battery ⇨ *page 14*
	Engine oil pressure ⇨ *page 15*
MIN	Engine oil level ⇨ *page 15*
	Engine cooling system ⇨ *page 15*
	Steering column lock ⇨ *page 16*
	Ignition lock ⇨ *page 16*
MPH	**USA models:** Speed warning system ⇨ *page 78*
Km/h	**Canada models:** Speed warning system ⇨ *page 78*
	Adaptive cruise control ✓ ⇨ *page 90*

Yellow indicator lights	
	Power top operation ⇨ *page 40*
	Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC) ✓ ⇨ *page 16*
OFF	Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC) ✓ ⇨ *page 16*
ESC OFF	Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC) ⇨ *page 167*

ABS	**USA models:** Anti-lock braking system (ABS) defective ✓ ⇨ *page 17*
(ABS)	**Canada models:** Anti-lock braking system (ABS) defective ✓ ⇨ *page 17*
AIR BAG	**USA models:** Safety systems ✓ ⇨ *page 17*
	Canada models: Safety systems ✓ ⇨ *page 17*
	Worn brake pads ⇨ *page 18*
(P)	Electromechanical parking brake ⇨ *page 14*
(!)	Tire pressure monitoring system ✓ ⇨ *page 225*
TPMS	Tire pressure monitoring system ⇨ *page 225*
EPC	Electronic power control ✓ ⇨ *page 18*
	Malfunction indicator Lamp (MIL) ✓ ⇨ *page 18*
	Engine speed limitation ⇨ *page 18*
MIN	Engine oil level ⇨ *page 15*
SENSOR	Engine oil sensor ⇨ *page 18*
	Battery ⇨ *page 14*
	Tank system ⇨ *page 18*
	Warm up engine* ⇨ *page 189*
	Windshield washer fluid level ⇨ *page 19*
	Windshield wipers ⇨ *page 19*

?	Remote control key ⇨ *page 73*
	Battery in remote control key ⇨ *page 29*
	Defective light bulb warning ⇨ *page 19*
	Fog lights ⇨ *page 19*
	Rear fog light(s)* ⇨ *page 19*
(!)	Headlight range control* ⇨ *page 19*
	Adaptive light* ⇨ *page 19*
	Light-/rain sensor* ⇨ *page 19*
	Adaptive dampers* ⇨ *page 20*
	Sport differential* ⇨ *page 20*
	Ignition lock ⇨ *page 20*
	Steering column lock ⇨ *page 16*
(!)	Electromechanical steering, dynamic steering* ✓ ⇨ *page 171*
(!)	Transmission - multitronic, tiptronic ⇨ *page 86* - S tronic ⇨ *page 86*
R	Transmission - S tronic ⇨ *page 86*

Other indicator lights

	Turn signals ⇨ *page 20*
CRUISE	**USA models:** Cruise control ⇨ *page 79*
	Canada models: Cruise control ⇨ *page 79* ▶

	Adaptive cruise control* ⇨ *page 90*
	Adaptive cruise control* ⇨ *page 90*
	High beam ⇨ *page 49*

BRAKE / Brake system

The light illuminates when the ignition is switched on. It goes out after the engine has been started. This indicates that the brake warning light is functioning properly.

If the brake warning light does not light up when the engine is cranking, there may be a malfunction in the electrical system. In this case, contact your authorized Audi dealer.

If the brake system warning/indicator light turns on, there is a brake system malfunction.

BRAKE (USA models)/ (Canada models) Stop vehicle and check brake fluid level

If the indicator light turns on and the message appears, proceed as follows:

- ▸ Pull off the road.
- ▸ Stop the vehicle.
- ▸ Turn off the engine.
- ▸ Check the brake fluid level ⇨ *page 202*.
- ▸ Contact your nearest authorized repair facility if necessary.

Warning! Fault in brake system. Contact dealer

If the ABS indicator light ABS (USA models)/ (Canada models), the ESC indicator light and the brake system indicator light BRAKE (USA models)/ (Canada models) turn on and the message appears, the ABS, ESC and braking distribution are not working ⇨ ⚠.

Carefully drive to your authorized Audi dealer immediately to have the malfunction corrected ⇨ ⚠.

BRAKE (USA models)/ (Canada models) Parking brake system fault! See owner's manual

– If the indicator light and the message appear **when stationary or after switching the ignition on**, check if you can release the parking brake. After releasing the parking brake, carefully drive to your authorized Audi dealer immediately to have the malfunction corrected. If you cannot release the parking brake, seek professional assistance.

– If the indicator light and the message appear **while driving**, the emergency braking function may not be available. It may not be possible to set the parking brake or release it once it has been set. Seek professional assistance.

(USA models): If the warning light BRAKE and the warning light appear together, immediately contact your authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop to have all brake pads inspected ⇨ *page 18*.

When the light comes on, an audible warning signal is also given.

WARNING

- Always observe the warnings in ⇨ *page 193*, before opening the hood and checking the brake fluid.
- Driving with low brake fluid is a safety hazard. Stop the car and get professional assistance.
- If the BRAKE (USA models)/ (Canada models) brake system indicator light turns on together with the ABS and ESC indicator lights, the ABS/ESC regulating function may have failed. Functions that stabilize the vehicle are no longer available. This could cause the vehicle to swerve and increase the risk of sliding. Drive carefully to the nearest authorized Audi dealer or other qualified workshop and have the malfunction corrected.
- If the brake warning/indicator light does not go out after a few seconds and the parking brake is released, or lights up while you are driving, the fluid level in the brake fluid reservoir is too low. If you believe that it is safe to do so, proceed immediately at low speed to the nearest authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop and have the brake system inspected. ▶

– Always keep in mind that after several brake applications, you will need greater pressure on the brake pedal to stop your vehicle. Do not rely on strained brakes to respond with maximum stopping power in critical situations. You must allow for increased braking distances. The extra distance used up by fading brakes could lead to an accident.

PARK BRAKE/(P) Electromechanical parking brake

The warning/indicator light monitors the electromechanical parking brake.

If the indicator light PARK BRAKE (USA models) / (P) (Canada models) turns on, the parking brake was set.

The warning/indicator light will go out when the parking brake is released.

PARK BRAKE (USA models) / (P) (Canada models) Caution: Vehicle parked too steep

If the indicator light blinks and the message appears, there is not enough braking power to keep the vehicle from rolling. The brakes have overheated. The vehicle could roll away even on a small incline.

Press brake pedal to release parking brake

To release the parking brake, press the brake pedal and press the button (P) or start driving with starting assist at the same time ⇨ *page 77*.

Please release parking brake

To release the parking brake manually, press the brake pedal and press the button (P) at the same time. The parking brake only releases automatically if the driver's safety belt is fastened.

Parking brake!

If the indicator light turns on and this message appears, there is a parking brake malfunction. Drive to your authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Safety belts

This warning/indicator light reminds you to put on your safety belt.

The warning/indicator light illuminates when the ignition is switched on to remind the driver and (on USA models only) any front passenger to put on the safety belt. Additionally, an acoustic warning (gong) will also sound.

For more Information ⇨ *page 122, Safety belt warning light*.

Battery

The warning/indicator light illuminates when you switch on the ignition and must go out after the engine has started.

Alternator fault: Battery is not being charged

If the indicator light turns on and the message appears, there is a malfunction in the generator or vehicle electrical system.

Drive to your authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop immediately. Because the vehicle battery is discharging, turn off all unnecessary electrical equipment such as the radio. Seek professional assistance if the battery charge level is too low.

Low battery: Battery will be charged while driving

If the indicator light turns on and the message appears, there may be limited starting ability.

If this message turns off after a little while, the battery charged enough while driving.

If the message does not turn off, have your authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop correct the malfunction.

Engine oil pressure

The red engine oil pressure warning symbol requires immediate service or repair. Driving with a low-oil-pressure indication is likely to inflict severe damage to the engine.

Turn off engine! Oil pressure too low

If the indicator light turns on and the message appears, the oil pressure is too low.

- ▸ Pull off the road.
- ▸ Stop the vehicle.
- ▸ Turn off the engine.
- ▸ **Check the engine oil level** ⇨ *page 197*.
- ▸ If the engine oil level is too low, add engine oil ⇨ *page 197*. Make sure that the oil pressure warning symbol appears no longer in the display before you start driving again.
- ▸ If the engine oil level is correct and the indicator light still turns on, turn the engine off and do not continue driving. Seek professional assistance.

Tips

– The engine oil pressure symbol is not an indicator for a low engine oil level. Do not rely on it. Instead, check the oil level in your engine at regular intervals, preferably each time you refuel, and always before going on a long trip.

– The yellow oil level warning indication requires oil refill or workshop service without delay. Do not wait until the red oil pressure warning starts to flash before you respond to the low oil level warning . By then, your engine may already have suffered serious damage.

Engine oil level

WARNING: Please add oil immediately

If the indicator light and the message appear, add engine oil immediately ⇨ *page 195*.

Add oil, max XXXX l. You may cont. driv.

When the symbol and driver message appear, add the amount of oil appearing in the display at the next opportunity ⇨ *page 195*.

Engine cooling system

A malfunction in the engine cooling system must be repaired as soon as possible.

Turn off engine and check coolant level

If the indicator light turns on and the message appears, the coolant temperature is too high or the coolant level is too low.

- ▸ Pull off the road.
- ▸ Stop the vehicle.
- ▸ Turn off the engine.
- ▸ Check coolant level ⇨ *page 199*.
- ▸ Add coolant if necessary ⇨ *page 200*.
- ▸ Continue driving only after the engine coolant warning/indicator light goes out.
- ▸ Contact your authorized Audi dealer for assistance if necessary.

If the engine coolant level is correct, then the radiator fan may be the cause of the malfunction.

Coolant temperature! Let engine run with vehicle stationary

If the indicator light turns on and the message appears, let the engine run at idle for a few minutes to cool down.

WARNING

– If your vehicle should break down for mechanical or other reasons, park at a safe distance from moving traffic, turn off the engine and turn on the hazard warning lights ⇨ *page 50, Emergency flashers*.

– Never open the hood if you see or hear steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment - you risk being scalded. Wait until you can no longer see or hear steam or coolant escaping.

– The engine compartment of any vehicle is a dangerous area. Before you perform any work in the engine compartment, turn of the engine and allow it to cool. Follow the warning stickers ⇨ *page 193*.

Note

Do not continue driving if the symbol illuminates. There is a malfunction in the engine ▸

cooling system – you could damage your engine.

Steering column lock

Steering defective! Do not drive vehicle!

If the indicator light turns on and the message appears, there is an electronic steering column lock malfunction. You cannot switch the ignition on.

Do **not** tow your vehicle because it cannot be steered. Seek professional assistance.

Steering lock: Contact dealer!

If the indicator light turns on and the message appears, there is an electronic steering column lock malfunction.

Drive to your authorized Audi dealer immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

WARNING

Your vehicle must not be towed in the event of a malfunction in the electronic steering column lock because it cannot be steered due to the locked steering. If it is towed with the steering locked, there is the risk of an accident.

Ignition lock

Ignition lock defective. Contact dealer!

If the indicator light turns on and the message appears, do **not** switch the ignition off because you may not be able to switch it on again.

Drive to your authorized Audi dealer immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

On vehicles with convenience key*, the engine should not be switched off using the START ENGINE STOP button because the engine cannot be started again after the ignition has been switched off.

Tips

The symbol's appearance might be different in some models.

Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC)

If the indicator light blinks while driving, the ESC or ASR (Anti-Slip Regulation) is actively regulating.

If the indicator light turns on, the system has switched the ESC off. In this case, you can switch the ignition off and then on to switch the ESC on again. The indicator light turns off when the system is functioning fully.

If the indicator light turns on, ESC was restricted or switched off using the OFF button ⇨ *page 167*.

Stabilization control (ESC/ABS): Fault! See owner's manual

If the indicator light and the ABS indicator light ABS (USA models) / (Canada models) turn on and the message appears, the ABS or electronic differential lock is malfunctioning. This also causes the ESC to malfunction. The brakes still function with their normal power, but ABS is not active.

Drive to your authorized Audi dealer immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

For more information about the ESC ⇨ *page 167*.

WARNING

If the BRAKE (USA models)/ (Canada models) brake system indicator light turns on together with the ABS and ESC indicator lights, the ABS/ESC regulating function may have failed. Functions that stabilize the vehicle are no longer available. This could cause the vehicle to swerve and increase the risk of sliding. Drive carefully to the nearest authorized Audi dealer and have the malfunction corrected.

Tips

For additional information on ESC and ABS, refer to ⇨ *page 167*.

ABS /(ABS) Anti-lock braking system (ABS)

This warning/indicator light monitors the ABS and the electronic differential lock (EDL).

The warning/indicator light ABS (USA models)/ (ABS) (Canada models) will come on for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on. The light will go out after an automatic check sequence is completed.

There is a malfunction in the ABS when:

– The warning/indicator light does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on.
– The warning/indicator light does not go out after a few seconds.
– The warning/indicator light illuminates while driving.

The ESC indicator light also illuminates if there is a malfunction in the ABS. The message **Stabilization control (ESC): Fault! See owner's manual** also appears in the instrument cluster display and a warning tone sounds.

The brake system will still respond even without the assistance of the ABS system. See your authorized Audi dealer as soon as possible to restore full braking performance. For more information regarding the ABS ⇨ *page 167*.

Malfunction in the brake system

If the brake warning light ⇨ *page 13* and the ABS warning illuminate *together* there may be a malfunction in the ABS, and there may also be a malfunction in the brake system itself ⇨ ⚠. **The ABS will not work and you will notice a change in braking response and performance.**

In the event of a **malfunction in the brake system** the warning/indicator light BRAKE (USA models)/ (Canada models) in the instrument cluster flashes ⇨ *page 13*.

Malfunction in the electronic differential lock (EDL)

The EDL works together with the ABS. The ABS warning light will come on if there is a malfunction in the EDL system ⇨ *page 167*. See your authorized Audi dealer as soon as possible.

WARNING

– If the ABS (USA models)/ (ABS) (Canada models) warning light does not go out, or if it comes on while driving, the ABS system is not working properly. The vehicle can then be stopped only with the standard brakes (without ABS). You will not have the protection ABS provides. Contact your authorized Audi dealer as soon as possible.
– *USA models:* If the BRAKE warning light and the ABS warning light come on together, the rear wheels could lock up first under hard braking. Rear wheel lock-up can cause loss of vehicle control and an accident. Have your vehicle repaired immediately by your authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop. Drive slowly and avoid sudden, hard brake applications.
– *Canada models:* If the brake warning light and the ABS warning light (ABS) come on together, the rear wheels could lock up first under hard braking. Rear wheel lock-up can cause loss of vehicle control and an accident. Have your vehicle repaired immediately by your authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop. Drive slowly and avoid sudden, hard brake applications.

AIR BAG / Safety systems

The AIR BAG (USA models)/ (Canada models) indicator light monitors the safety systems (e.g. airbags, pretensioners) and illuminates for a few seconds each time you switch the ignition on.

If the AIR BAG (USA models)/ (Canada models) indicator light does not go out, or if it illuminates while you are driving, or if it starts to blink, then there is a malfunction somewhere in the system. If the light does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, this also means there is a malfunction.

WARNING

If you have a malfunction in the safety systems, contact your authorized Audi dealer immediately. Otherwise the safety systems may not work properly in an accident.

Worn brake pads

Brake pads!

If the warning light illuminates, immediately contact your authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop to have all brake pads inspected. On USA models the warning light comes on together with the warning light BRAKE. Both sets of brake pads on an axle must always be replaced at the same time.

WARNING

Driving with bad brakes can cause a collision and serious personal injury.

– If the warning light and the warning light BRAKE[1] with the message **Brake pads!** comes on in the instrument cluster display, immediately contact your authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop to have all brake pads checked or replaced if necessary.

EPC Electronic power control

This warning/indicator light monitors the electronic power control.

The EPC warning/indicator light (Electronic Power Control) illuminates when you switch the ignition on as a function check.

Tips

If this warning/indicator light illuminates while you are driving, then there is a malfunction in the engine electronics. Have the malfunction corrected as soon as possible by your authorized Audi dealer or a qualified repair facility.

Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL)

The Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) is part of the On-Board Diagnostic (OBD II) system. The symbol lights up when the ignition is switched on and will turn off after the engine has started and has settled at a constant idle speed. This indicates that the MIL is working properly.

The warning light illuminates when there is a malfunction in the engine electronic system. Contact your authorized Audi dealer and have the malfunction corrected.

An improperly closed fuel filler cap may also cause the MIL light to illuminate ⇨ *page 190*.

For more information ⇨ *page 25*.

Engine speed limitation

Applies to: vehicles with engine speed limitation

Do not exceed max. engine speed of XXXX rpm

The symbol illuminates when there is an engine control malfunction. The EPC indicator light in the instrument cluster also illuminates. The engine speed is limited to the speed displayed in the driver information system. Keep in mind that the engine speed will not exceed the value displayed in the driver information system, for example when downshifting.

Drive to your authorized Audi dealer immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Engine oil sensor

Oil level! Sensor defective

If the symbol illuminates, contact your authorized Audi dealer and have the oil sensor inspected. Until you have this done, check the oil level each time you refuel just to be on the safe side ⇨ *page 197*.

Tank system

Please refuel

If the indicator light turns on for the first time and the message appears, there are about 2.1 - 2.4 gallons (7 - 9 liters) of fuel left in the tank. Time to refuel ⇨ *page 190*.

Fuel tank system malfunction! Contact dealer ▶

1) BRAKE: USA models only

If the indicator light turns on and this message appears, there is a malfunction in the tank system.

Drive to your authorized Audi dealer immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Windshield washer fluid level

Please refill washer fluid

If the symbol illuminates, add windshield washer fluid to the washer system and also to the headlight washer system* ⇨ *page 206*.

Windshield wipers

Windshield wiper defective

There is a malfunction with the windshield wipers.

Drive to your authorized Audi dealer immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Defective light bulb warning

If the indicator light turns on, a bulb has failed. The message indicates the location of the bulb.

– If the indicator light also turns on, then a fog light has failed. The position of the indicator light corresponds with the location on the vehicle.

– If the indicator light also turns on, then a rear fog* light has failed. The position of the indicator light corresponds with the location on the vehicle.

This warning can also occur if the light switch is in an unengaged position between two symbols.

Vehicle lights: System fault!

If the message appears, there is a malfunction in the headlights or light switch.

Drive to your authorized Audi dealer immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

WARNING

– Light bulbs are pressurized and could explode while they are being changed causing serious personal injury.
– Work with due care when handling the high-voltage section of gas discharge (xenon) lights*. Failure to do so could result in death or serious injury.

Tips

Have the bulb replaced or the connection repaired by your authorized Audi Service department.

Headlight range control

Applies to: vehicles with headlight range control

Headlight range control defective !

If the symbol illuminates, the dynamic headlight range control is no longer working properly. Have the system checked and repaired at your authorized Audi dealer.

Adaptive Light

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive light

Audi adaptive light: defective

If the indicator light turns on and this message appears, there is a malfunction in the adaptive light system. The headlights still function.

Go to an authorized dealership to have the headlights or the control unit for the adaptive light repaired.

Light/rain sensor

Applies to: vehicles with light/rain sensor

Automatic headlights / automatic wipers defective

If the indicator light turns on and this message appears, the light/rain sensor is not functioning correctly.

For safety reasons the low beams are turned on permanently with the switch in **AUTO**. However, ▶

you can continue to turn the lights on and off using the light switch. You can still control all functions that are independent of the rain sensor through the windshield wiper lever.

Contact your authorized Audi dealer as soon as possible to have the problem corrected.

Adaptive dampers

Applies to: vehicles with Audi drive select and adaptive dampers

Suspension: System fault!

If the symbol in the display comes on, there is a malfunction in the adaptive dampers. Please go to an authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop to have the malfunction repaired.

Sport differential

Applies to: vehicles with Audi drive select and sport differential

Sport differential: System fault!

There is a malfunction with the sport differential.

Drive to your authorized Audi dealer immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Sport differential: Overheating

The transmission temperature has increased significantly due to the sporty driving manner. Drive in a less sporty manner until the temperature returns to the normal range and the indicator light switches of.

WARNING

Contact your authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop if the sport differential is faulty or malfunctioning. The repair must be performed by trained personnel using the correct oil in order to ensure safety.

Ignition lock

Ignition lock defective

There is a malfunction in the electronic ignition lock. Please go to an authorized Audi dealer or other qualified workshop to have the malfunction repaired.

Turn signals

Whenever you use the left or the right turn signal, the indicator light blinks. When you use the emergency flashers, both indicator lights flash.

If one of the turn signal light bulbs burn out, the turn signal will blink twice as fast as normal. Carefully drive to your authorized Audi dealer immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Driver information system

Introduction

The Driver information display inside the instrument cluster provides you, the driver, with important information.



Fig. 7 Instrument cluster: center display



Fig. 8 Wiper lever: controls for the menu display

Center display

With the ignition on, the display in the Driver Information System shows the following information:

– CD* inserted or Radio* station set
– Outside temperature*: At temperatures below 41 °F (+5 °C), a snowflake symbol appears in front of the temperature display ⇨ ⚠.
– Warning if one of the doors, front lid or engine compartment lid is not closed.

Additional functions

You can open the following functions in the Driver Information System display by pressing the RESET button ⇨ *fig. 8* one or more times:

Digital speedometer*	
Tire pressure monitoring*	⇨ *page 224*
Trip computer	⇨ *page 22*
Efficiency program*	⇨ *page 24*
Service interval display	⇨ *page 25*
Speed warning	⇨ *page 78*
Gearshift selector positions Automatic transmission	⇨ *page 81*
Adaptive cruise control*	⇨ *page 88*

Auto Check Control

Some functions and vehicle components are scanned for their operating status when you switch the ignition on and while you are driving. Malfunctions or required service procedures are signaled audibly and indicated by red and yellow illuminated symbols and reminders in the display.

WARNING

– Never rely exclusively on the outside temperature display to determine if a road surface is icy or not. Keep in mind that road surfaces, especially bridges and overpasses, could be ice covered and slippery even at an outside temperature above 41 °F (+5 °C).
– Always remember, even if the “snowflake” symbol (ice warning) does not appear in the display, black ice could be on the road.
– Always reduce your speed and drive with special care in cold weather conditions when the chance of encountering icy road surfaces increases.

Tips

If the vehicle is stationary, or if you are driving at a very low speed, the temperature shown in the display might be slightly higher than the actual outside temperature. This is caused by the heat being radiated from the engine.

8F0012721BB

On-board computer

Introduction

The trip computer gives you information on current and average fuel mileage, average speed, fuel range and driving time.



Fig. 9 Trip computer display: Average fuel mileage

The following information is continuously evaluated by the trip computer and can be displayed sequentially in the instrument cluster display:

Fuel range

The estimated cruising range in miles (km) appears in the display. This tells you how far your vehicle will be able to travel on the current tank of fuel and with the same driving style. The display changes in increments of 5 miles (10 km).

The cruising range is calculated based on the fuel consumption for the last 18 miles (30 km). If you drive conservatively, the cruising range will increase.

Average fuel mileage

The average fuel economy in MPG (l/100 km) since you last cleared the memory appears in this display. You can use this display to adjust your driving technique to achieve a desired mileage.

Current fuel mileage

The instantaneous fuel consumption in miles per gallon (l/100 km) is shown in this display. You can use this display to adjust your driving technique to achieve a desired mileage.

Fuel consumption is recalculated at intervals of 33 yards (30 meters). This display switches to gallons/hour (liters/hour) when the vehicle is not moving.

Average speed

The average speed in mph (km/h) since you last reset the memory appears in the display.

Elapsed time

The length of time that you have been driving since you last reset the memory appears in this display.

Distance

The distance that has been covered since the last time the memory was cleared appears in the display.

Tips

- Fuel consumptions (average and current), range and speed are displayed in metric units on Canadian models.
- All stored values will be lost if the vehicle battery is disconnected.

Memories

The trip computer is equipped with two fully automatic memories as well as an efficiency program.*

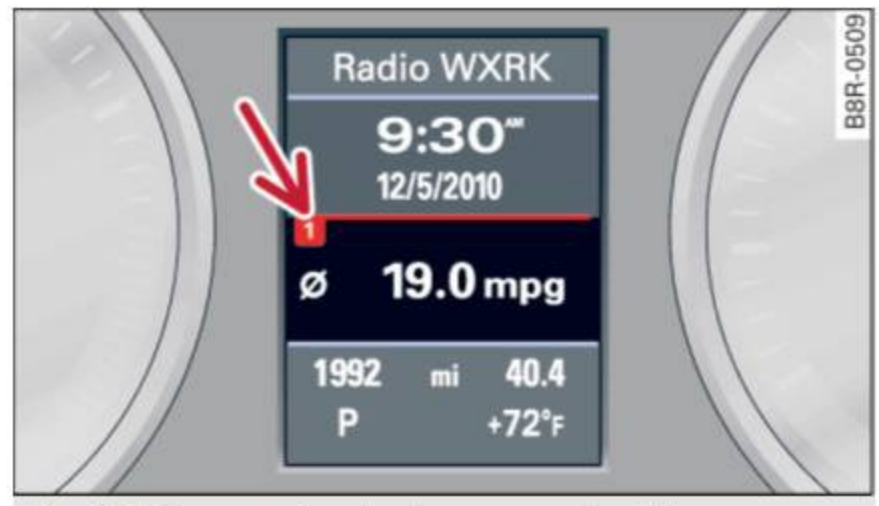


Fig. 10 Trip computer display: memory level 1

You can switch between the trip computer 1 and 2 and the efficiency program* by pressing the RESET button Ⓐ ⇨ *page 23, fig. 11*.

You can tell which memory level is currently active by the number or the sign in the display ⇨ *fig. 10*. The data from the single-trip memory (memory level 1) is being displayed if a 1 appears in the display. If a 2 is shown, then the data from the total-trip memory is being displayed ▶

(memory level 2). The fuel pump nozzle indicates the efficiency program* ⇨ *page 24*.

Single-trip memory (Trip computer 1)

The single-trip memory stores the trip information from the time the ignition is turned on until it is turned off. If the trip is continued **within 2 hours** from the time the ignition was turned off, the new data will be included in the calculation of the current trip information. If the trip is interrupted for **more than 2 hours** the memory is reset automatically.

Total-trip memory (Trip computer 2)

Unlike the single-trip memory, the total-trip memory is not reset automatically. This permits you to evaluate your driving data for the entire period between manual resets.

Efficiency program*

The efficiency program can help you to use less fuel ⇨ *page 24*.

Operation

The trip computer is controlled by two switches on the windshield wiper lever.

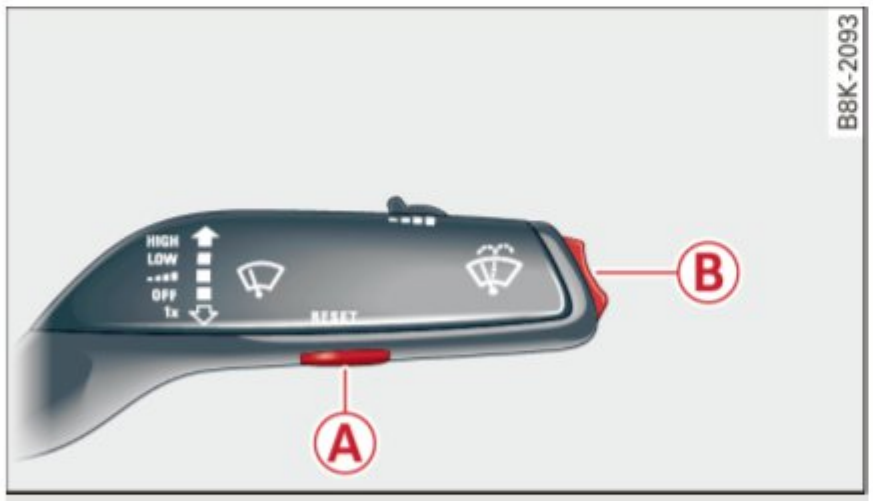


Fig. 11 Windshield wiper lever: controls for the trip computer

Operating

- To display the trip computer memory levels, press the RESET button Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 11* repeatedly until the desired memory level is shown in the display.
- To display trip information within a memory level, press the top or bottom part of the function selection switch Ⓑ.

The trip computer will not operate unless the ignition is on. When you turn on the ignition, the function that was in use when you last turned the ignition off will be displayed.

In addition to information about the trip computer (trip computer 1, 2 and the efficiency program*), information about other systems can also be shown in the display. To switch the display between the different information, tap the RESET button Ⓐ briefly.

Resetting values to zero

- Select a value in the desired trip computer or in the efficiency program*.
- Press and hold the RESET button Ⓐ for at least one second. All values in the selected trip computer or in the efficiency program* are reset to zero.

If the data in trip computer 1 are deleted, then the values in the efficiency program* will also be reset.

With some vehicle equipment levels, the values for the single trip or total trip memory can also be reset in the Infotainment system ⇨ *page 23*.

Tips

All stored values will be lost if the vehicle battery is disconnected.

Basic Settings for the trip computer

Applies to: vehicles with trip computer

The radio or MMI operating unit is used for setting the trip computer's basic settings.*

- Select: Function button CAR > **Instrument cluster** > **On-board computer 1** or **On-board computer 2**.

The values in the single-trip or the total-trip memory can all be reset to zero at the same time under **Reset** in the menu.

In addition, you can determine what information from the trip computer should be shown in the instrument cluster display. If one of the pieces of driver information is turned **Off**, that driver ▶

information will not be shown in the display. The information will continue to be calculated by the trip computer and can be turned back **On** at any time.

Tips

– This function is not available on all vehicles.
– The driving information in the efficiency program is also reset to zero with the single-trip memory.

Efficiency program

Description

Applies to: vehicles with trip computer with efficiency program

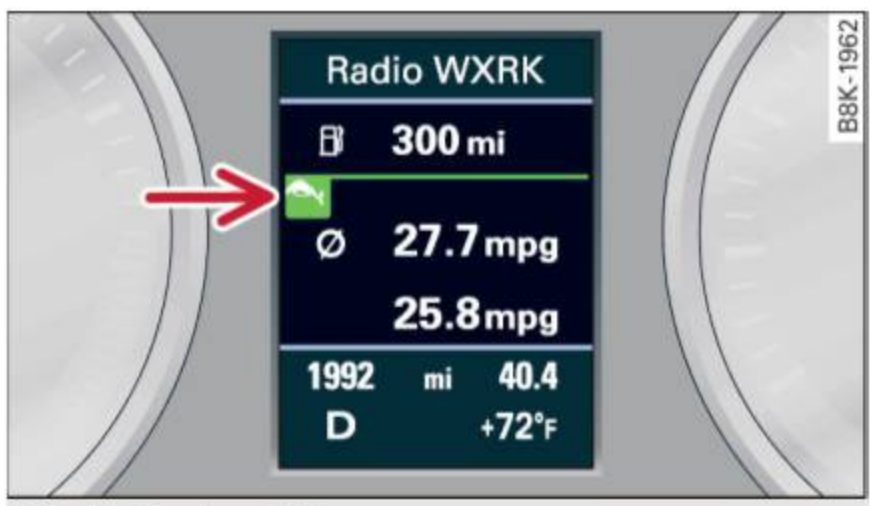


Fig. 12 Display: efficiency program

▸ Press the RESET button Ⓐ ⇨ *page 23, fig. 11* repeatedly until the efficiency program appears in the display.

The efficiency program can help you to use less fuel. It evaluates driving information in reference to fuel consumption and shows other equipment influencing consumption as well as shift recommendations. Fuel economy messages ⇨ *page 24* provide tips for efficient driving.

The efficiency program uses distance and consumption data from trip computer 1. If the data are deleted in the efficiency program, those values are also reset in trip computer 1.

Other equipment

Applies to: vehicles with trip computer with efficiency program

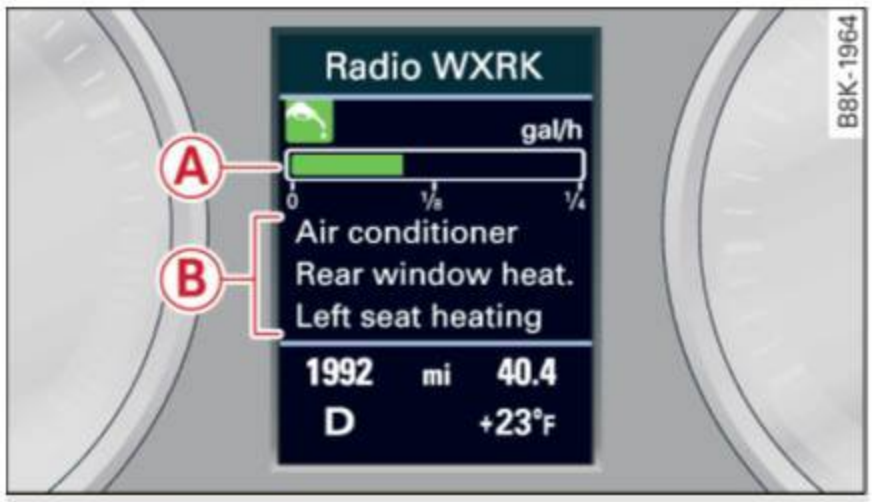


Fig. 13 Display: other equipment

▸ In the efficiency program, press the function selection switch ⇨ *page 23, fig. 11* Ⓑ repeatedly until the other equipment appears in the display.

Other equipment that is currently affecting fuel consumption is listed in the efficiency program. The display shows up to three other items of equipment Ⓑ. The equipment using the most fuel is listed first. If more than three items using fuel are switched on, the equipment that is currently using the most fuel is displayed.

A scale Ⓐ also shows the current total consumption of all other equipment.

Fuel economy messages

Applies to: vehicles with trip computer with efficiency program

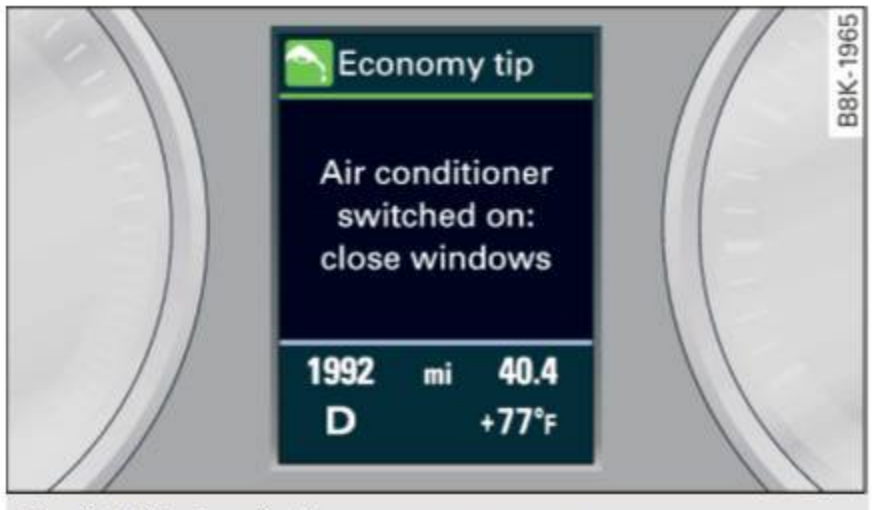


Fig. 14 Display: fuel economy message

Fuel economy messages are displayed when fuel consumption is increased by certain conditions. If you follow these fuel economy messages, you can reduce your vehicle's consumption of fuel. The ▶

messages appear automatically and are only displayed in the efficiency program. The fuel economy messages turn off automatically after a certain period of time.

- To turn a fuel economy message off immediately after it appears, press the RESET button ⇨ *page 23, fig. 11* Ⓐ, or
- Press the function selection switch ⇨ *page 23, fig. 11* Ⓑ.

Tips

– Once you have turned a fuel economy message off, it will only appear again after you turn the ignition on again.
– The fuel economy messages are not displayed in every instance, but rather in intervals over a period of time.

Service interval display

The service interval display reminds you when your next service is due.

The schedule for the next oil change or inspection is calculated automatically and displayed accordingly. The display works in two stages:

Service reminder

30 days before the next service is due, a service reminder appears in the display when you turn on the ignition.

After about 5 seconds the display switches back to normal. The distance and time remaining are updated each time the ignition is turned on until the date due for service is reached.

Service due

When the due date for service is reached, the message **Service due!** appears in the instrument cluster immediately after you turn on the ignition. Additionally, a warning tone sounds. After about 5 seconds the display switches back to normal.

Calling up the service schedules

If or when an oil change or inspection is due, can be shown in the radio or MMI* display by selecting the service interval display in the car menu.

Select CAR function button > **Service interval display** or CAR function button > **Car systems*** control button > **Servicing & checks**.

Resetting the service interval display

Your authorized Audi dealer will reset the corresponding service schedule after performing the appropriate service on your vehicle. You also have the possibility to reset the oil change schedule after having performed an oil change according to Audi specifications. Select CAR function button > **Service interval display** > **Reset oil change interval** or CAR function button > **Car systems*** control button > **Servicing & checks** > **Reset oil change interval**.

Note

– Only reset the oil change display when you have completed an oil change.
– If you disconnect the battery terminals, no calculations can be made for the service interval display during this time and no service reminder will appear. Remember that observing the proper service intervals is vitally important to extending the life of your vehicle, particularly the engine, and maintaining its value. Even if the mileage driven is low, the maximum period of one year from one service to the next must not be exceeded.

Tips

The information in the Service Reminder remains stored even when the vehicle battery is disconnected.

On Board Diagnostic System (OBD)

Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL)

The Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) in the instrument cluster is part of the On-Board Diagnostic (OBD II) system.

The warning/indicator light illuminates when the ignition is switched on and goes out after the engine starts and the idle has stabilized. This indicates that the MIL is working properly. ▶

If the light does not go out after the engine is started, or illuminates while you are driving, a malfunction may exist in the engine system. If the light illuminates, the catalytic converter could be damaged.

Continue driving **with reduced power** (avoiding sustained high speeds and/or rapid accelerations) and have the condition corrected. Contact your authorized Audi dealer.

If the light illuminates, the electronic speed limiter may also be malfunctioning. For more information ⇨ *page 26, Electronic speed limiter*.

An improperly closed fuel filler cap may also cause the MIL light to illuminate ⇨ *page 190*.

On-Board Diagnostics

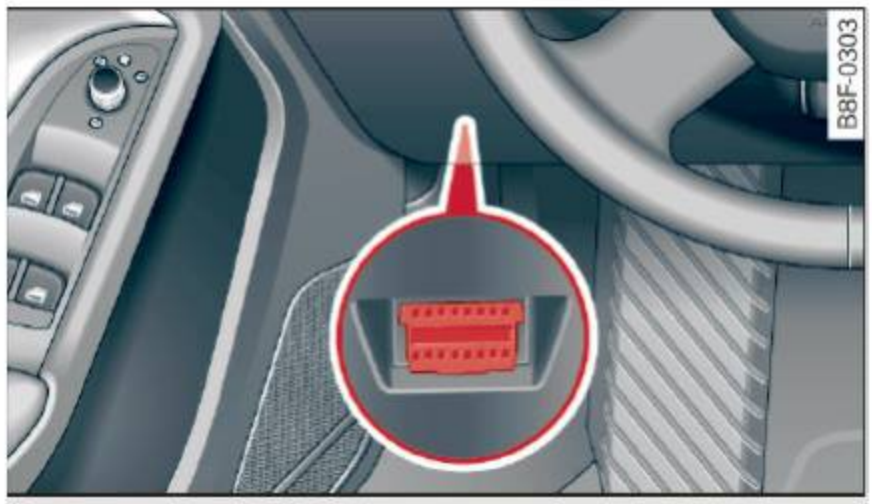


Fig. 15 Location of Data Link Connector (DLC)

On-Board Diagnostics monitors the components of your emission control system. Each monitored component in your engine system has been assigned a code. In case of a malfunction, the component will be identified and the fault stored as a code in the control module memory.

The MIL light may also illuminate if there is a leak in the on-board fuel vapor recovery system. If the light illuminates after a refueling, stop the vehicle and make sure the fuel filler cap is properly closed ⇨ *page 190*.

In order to make an accurate diagnosis, the stored data can only be displayed using special diagnostic equipment (generic scan tool for OBD).

In order to connect the special diagnostic equipment, push the plug into the Data Link Connector (DLC). The DLC is located to the right of the hood release ⇨ *fig. 15*.

Your authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop can interpret the code and perform the necessary repair.

WARNING

Do not use the diagnostic connector for personal use. Incorrect usage can cause malfunctions, which can increase the risk of a collision!

Electronic speed limiter

Your vehicle may be factory equipped with tires that are rated for a maximum speed of 130 mph (210 km/h). This is may be less than the maximum speed of your vehicle. To reduce the risk of sudden tire failure and loss of control if the vehicle is operated at excessive speeds, your vehicle has an electronic speed limiter. The electronic speed limiter prevents your vehicle from going faster than the tire speed rating. For more information ⇨ *page 207*.

If the engine control unit receives faulty vehicle roadspeed signals, the Malfunction Indicator Light (MIL) will illuminate. If this occurs, contact the nearest authorized Audi dealer for assistance.

WARNING

Always observe the posted speed limits and adjust your speed to suit prevailing road, traffic and weather conditions. Never drive your vehicle faster than the maximum speed rating of the tires installed.

Opening and closing

Central locking

General description

The power locking system locks or unlocks all doors and the rear lid simultaneously.

You can lock and unlock the vehicle centrally. You have the following choices:

– Remote master key ⇨ *page 30*,
– Door handles with convenience key* ⇨ *page 30*,
– Lock cylinder at the driver's door ⇨ *page 32*, or
– Power locking switch inside ⇨ *page 31*.

Automatic locking

The automatic locking feature locks all the vehicle doors and the rear lid when you drive faster than 9 mph (15 km/h).

The car is unlocked again once the ignition key is removed. In addition, the vehicle can be unlocked if the opening function in the power locking system switch or at one of the door levers is actuated. The Auto Lock function can be turned on and off in the radio or MMI* ⇨ *page 32*.

Additionally, in the event of a crash with airbag deployment the doors are automatically unlocked to allow access to the vehicle.

Selective unlocking

When you lock the vehicle, the power locking system will lock the doors and the rear lid. When unlocking, you can set in the radio or MMI* whether *only* the driver's door or the entire vehicle should be unlocked ⇨ *page 32*.

Anti-theft alarm warning system

If the anti-theft alarm warning system detects a break-in into the vehicle, acoustic and visual warning signals are triggered.

The anti-theft warning system is activated automatically when you lock the vehicle. It is deactivated when unlocking using the remote key, with the mechanical key, and when you switch on the ignition.

The alarm also turns off when the alarm cycle has expired.

Turn signals

When you unlock the vehicle, the turn signals flash twice, when you lock it once. If they do not flash, one of the doors, the luggage compartment lid or the hood is not locked or the ignition is still switched on.

Unintentionally locking yourself out

In the following cases there safeguards to prevent you locking your remote master key in the vehicle:

– The vehicle does not lock with the power locking switch ⇨ *page 31* if the driver's door is open.
– On vehicles with convenience key*, if the most recently used master key is in the luggage compartment, the rear lid is automatically unlocked again after it is closed.

Do not lock your vehicle with the remote master key or convenience key* until all doors and the rear lid are closed. In this way you avoid locking yourself out accidentally.

WARNING

– When you leave the vehicle, always remove the ignition key and take it with you. This will prevent passengers (children, for example) from accidentally being locked in the vehicle should they accidentally press the power locking switch in the front doors.
– Do not leave children inside the vehicle unsupervised. In an emergency it would be impossible to open the doors from the outside without the key.

Tips

– In the event of a crash with airbag deployment all locked doors will be automatically unlocked to give access to the vehicle occupants from the outside.
– If the power locking system should malfunction, you can lock the driver's door using the mechanical key ⇨ *page 32*.

– If the power locking system should fail, you can still open the fuel tank flap in an emergency ⇨ *page 192*.
– You are well advised not to keep valuables inside an unattended vehicle, visible or not. Even a properly locked vehicle cannot provide the security of a safe.
– If the LED in the upper edge of the driver's door panel comes on for about 30 seconds after the vehicle is locked, there is a malfunction in the power locking or the anti-theft warning system. Have the malfunction corrected by an authorized Audi dealership or qualified repair facility.

Key set



Fig. 16 Key set

Ⓐ Remote control key with mechanical key

You can centrally lock and unlock your vehicle and start the engine with the master key with remote control. A mechanical key is integrated in the master key ⇨ *page 29*.

Ⓑ Emergency key

The emergency key is not intended for constant use. It should only be used in an emergency, for example, in place of the ignition key ⇨ *page 72*. Keep it in a safe place and do not carry it on your key ring or store it in the vehicle.

Key replacement

If you lose a key, contact your authorized Audi dealer immediately to have the *lost* key disabled. Be sure to bring all your keys with you.

Number of keys

You can check the number of assigned keys to your vehicle ⇨ *page 9*. This allows you to make sure you have received all of the keys when you purchase a used vehicle.

Data in the master key

During driving, service and maintenance-relevant data is continuously stored on your master key. Your Audi service adviser can read out this data and tell you about the work your vehicle needs. This applies also to vehicles with convenience key*.

Personal comfort settings

If two people use one vehicle, it is recommended that each person always uses “their own” master key. When the ignition is turned off or when the vehicle is locked, personal convenience settings for the following systems are stored and assigned to the remote master key.

– Climate control
– Power locking system
– Seat memory*
– Parking system*
– Adaptive cruise control*
– Side assist*
– Drive select*

The stored settings are automatically recalled when you unlock the vehicle, when you open the doors or when you turn on the ignition.

WARNING

– Do not leave your vehicle unattended with the key in the ignition lock. Entry by unauthorized persons could endanger you or result in theft or damage the vehicle.
– Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle, especially with access to vehicle keys. Unguarded access to the keys provides children the opportunity to start the engine and/or activate vehicle systems such as the power windows etc. Unsupervised operation of any vehicle system by children can result in serious injury. ▶

– Do not remove the key from the ignition lock until the vehicle has come to a complete stop. Otherwise the steering column lock could suddenly engage - causing the risk of an accident.

Tips

– The operation of the remote control key can be temporarily disrupted by interference from transmitters in the vicinity of the vehicle working in the same frequency range (e.g. a cell phone, radio equipment).
– For security reasons, replacement keys are only available from authorized Audi dealer.
– For Declaration of Compliance to United States FCC and Industry Canada regulations ⇨ *page 249*.

Removing the mechanical key

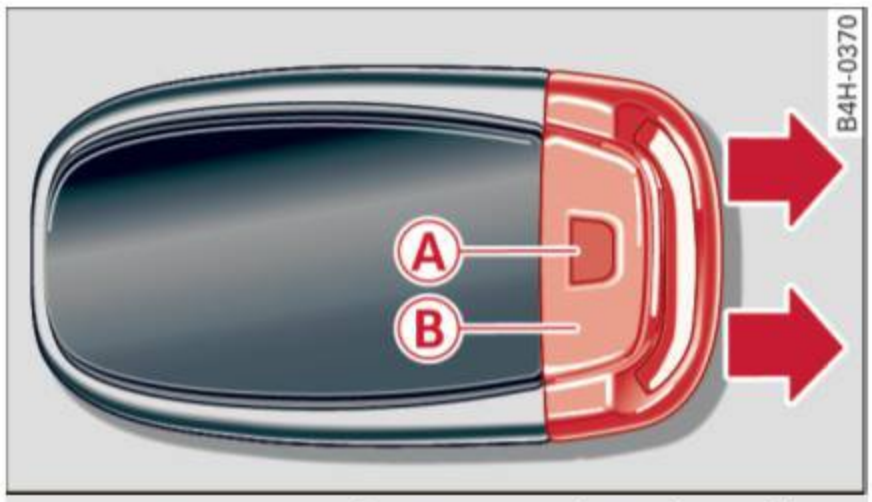


Fig. 17 Remote master key: removing the mechanical key

▸ Press the release button Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 17*.
▸ Pull the mechanical key Ⓑ out of the master key.

Using the mechanical key, you can:

– lock and unlock* the glove compartment on the passenger's side ⇨ *page 63*.
– lock and unlock the vehicle manually ⇨ *page 32* if this should not be possible with the master key.
– use the ignition key emergency release ⇨ *page 30*.

Check light and battery in the master key

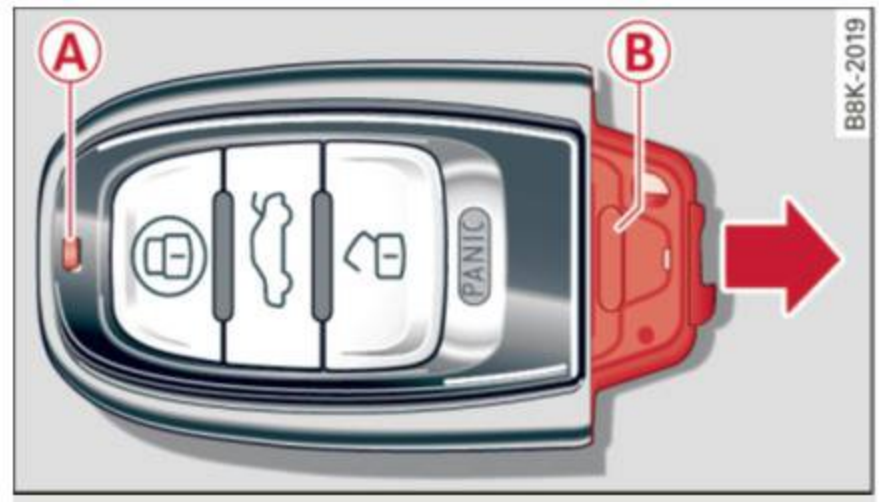


Fig. 18 Remote master key: removing the battery holder

Check light in the master key

The check light Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 18* in the master key provides information about different conditions.

▸ The check light turns on briefly once when a button is pressed, and during an "inquiry" by the convenience key system.
▸ If the check light does not come on, the battery is dead and has to be replaced. In addition, when the battery is dead the indicator light appears in the instrument cluster display as well as the message **Please change key battery**.

Master key battery replacement

▸ Remove the mechanical key ⇨ *page 29*.
▸ Press the release button Ⓑ ⇨ *fig. 18*on the battery holder and at the same time pull the battery holder out of the master key in the direction of the arrow.
▸ Install the new battery CR 2032 with the "+" sign facing down.
▸ Push the battery holder carefully into the master key.
▸ Install the mechanical key.

For the sake of the environment

Dispose of dead batteries properly so as not to pollute the environment.

Tips

The replacement battery must be the same specification as the original.

Emergency unlocking of the ignition key

In the event of malfunctions in the electrical system, it may happen that you cannot remove the ignition key.

- ▸ Remove the mechanical key ⇨ *page 29*.
- ▸ Lock the vehicle using the mechanical key ⇨ *page 32*.
- ▸ Have the electrical system inspected by an authorized Audi dealership.

Locking and unlocking the vehicle with the remote control



Fig. 19 Remote master key: function buttons

- ▸ Press button 🔓 to unlock the vehicle ⇨ *fig. 19*.
- ▸ Press button 🔒 to lock the vehicle ⇨ ⚠ *in General description on page 27*.
- ▸ Press button briefly to unlock the rear lid.
- ▸ Press the button for at least one second to open the rear lid.
- ▸ Push the red PANIC button to activate the panic function. The horn sounds and the turn signals flash. Push the red PANIC button again to deactivate the panic function.

If the vehicle is unlocked and no door, the rear lid or the hood is opened within 60 seconds, the vehicle locks itself again automatically. This feature prevents the vehicle from being accidentally left unlocked over a long period of time.

It depends on the settings in the radio or MMI* whether the entire vehicle is unlocked or only certain doors ⇨ *page 32*.

On vehicles with automatic transmission, the selector lever must be in the P position, otherwise the vehicle cannot be locked.

⚠ WARNING

Read and follow all WARNINGS ⇨ ⚠ *in General description on page 27*.

Tips

- – In order to make sure the locking function is working, you should always keep your eye on the vehicle to make sure it is properly locked.
- – Do not use the remote control if you are inside the car, otherwise you may unintentionally lock the vehicle, and then you would set off the anti-theft alarm when you try to start the engine or open a door. In case this happens anyhow, push the unlock button 🔓.
- – Use the panic function only if you are in an emergency situation.
- – Additional remote control key functions ⇨ *page 35*.

Locking and unlocking with convenience key

Applies to: vehicles with convenience key

The doors and the rear lid can be unlocked and locked without operating the master key.

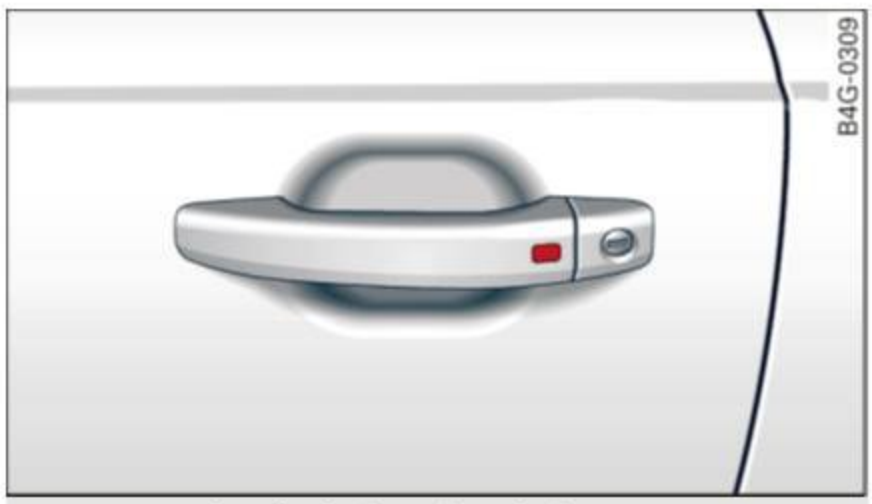


Fig. 20 Door handle: locking the vehicle

Unlocking vehicle

- ▸ Take hold of the door handle. The door is unlocked automatically.
- ▸ Pull the handle to open the door.

Locking vehicle

- ▸ Move the selector lever to the P position, otherwise the vehicle cannot be locked.
- ▸ To lock the vehicle, close the door and touch the sensor in the door handle **once** ⇨ *fig. 20* ▶

⇨ ⚠ *in General description on page 27*. Do not reach inside the door handle.

The vehicle can be locked and unlocked at any door. The remote control key cannot be more than 1.5 m away from the door handle. It makes no difference whether the master key is in your jacket pocket or in your brief case.

If you grip the door handle while locking, this can adversely affect the locking function.

It is not possible to re-open the door for a brief period directly after closing it. This allows you to ensure that the doors are properly locked.

It depends on the settings in the radio or MMI* whether the entire vehicle is unlocked or one of the doors ⇨ *page 32*.

⚠ WARNING

Read and follow all WARNINGS ⇨ ⚠ *in General description on page 27*.

Tips

If your vehicle has been standing for an extended period, please note the following:

– The proximity sensors are deactivated after a few days to save power. You then have to pull on the door handle once to unlock the vehicle and a second time to open the vehicle.
– To prevent the battery from being discharged and to preserve your vehicle's ability to start for as long as possible, the energy management system gradually switches off unnecessary convenience functions. It is possible that you will not be able to unlock your vehicle using these convenience functions.
– For Declaration of Compliance to United States FCC and Industry Canada regulations ⇨ *page 249*.

Locking and unlocking the vehicle from inside



Fig. 21 Driver's door: power locking switch

- ▸ Press the button 🔒 to lock the vehicle ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Press the button 🔓 to unlock the vehicle ⇨ *fig. 21*.

If you lock the vehicle using the power locking switch, please note the following:

– If a door is open, the vehicle cannot be locked using the power locking system switch.
– You cannot open the doors or the rear lid from the *outside* (increased security, for example when you are stopped at a red light).
– The diodes in the power locking switch illuminate when all the doors are closed and locked.
– You can unlock and open the doors from the inside by pulling on the door handle.
– If you have a crash and the airbag is activated, the doors automatically unlock.

⚠ WARNING

– The power locking switch works with the ignition off and automatically locks the entire vehicle when it is actuated.
– On a vehicle locked from the outside the power locking system switch is inoperative.
– Locked doors make it more difficult for emergency workers to get into the vehicle, which puts lives at risk. Do not leave anyone behind in the vehicle, especially children.

Tips

Your vehicle is locked automatically at a speed of 9 mph (15 km/h) (Auto Lock) ⇨ *page 27*. You can unlock the vehicle again ▶

using the opening function in the power locking system switch.

Setting power locking

In the radio/MMI, you can set which doors the central locking system will unlock.*

- ▸ Select: CAR function button > **Central locking**.
  Or
- ▸ Select: CAR function button > **Car systems*** control button > **Vehicle settings** > **(Central locking)***.

Single door unlocking/Unlock doors* - you can specify which doors unlock when you open the vehicle.

– Selecting **off/All** and pressing the button on the remote control key unlocks the entire vehicle.
– Selecting **on/Driver** and pressing the button on the remote control key once unlocks only the driver's door. In vehicles with a convenience key*, only the door whose handle you pull will unlock. If you press the button twice, the entire vehicle will unlock. If you press the button, the entire vehicle will always lock.

Luggage comp. lock/Lock exterior trunk handle - If you select **On**, you can no longer open the luggage compartment using the rear lid handle ⇨ *page 33, fig. 24*. In this case, the rear lid can be opened with the button on the master key ⇨ *page 30, fig. 19*.

Tone when locking - if you select **On**, a tone will sound when you lock the vehicle.

Auto Lock/Lock when driving - if you select **On**, the entire vehicle will lock automatically when the speed reaches 9 mph (15 km/h).

Emergency locking

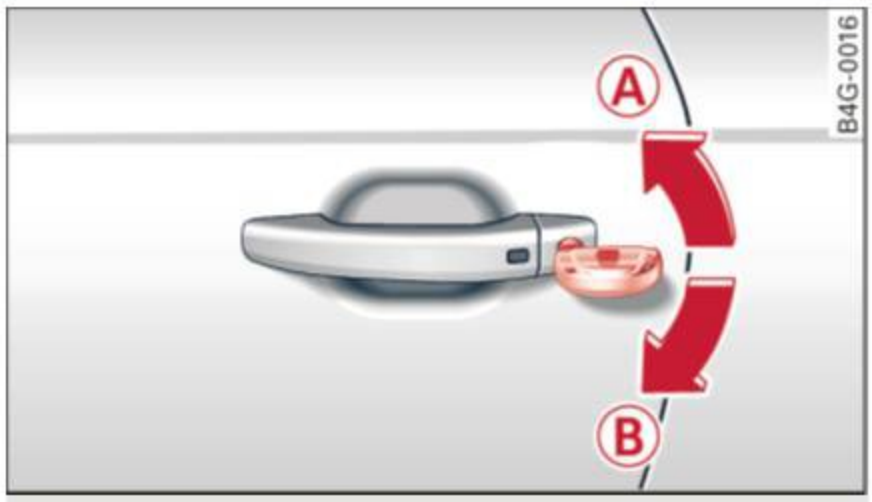


Fig. 22 Driver's door: lock cylinder



Fig. 23 Front passenger's door: emergency lock

If the central locking system malfunctions, you must unlock/lock the doors separately using the emergency key or the mechanical key.

Unlocking/locking the driver's door with the mechanical key

- ▸ Remove the mechanical key ⇨ *page 29*.
- ▸ To unlock the driver's door, turn the key to the open position Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 22*.
- ▸ To lock the driver's door, move the selector lever to the P position (automatic transmission) and turn the key **once** to the close position Ⓑ ⇨ ⚠ *in General description on page 27*.

Locking the front passenger's door with the mechanical key

The emergency lock is located on the rear side of the front passenger's door. It is only visible when the door is open.

- ▸ Remove the mechanical key ⇨ *page 29*.
- ▸ Pull the cover cap out of the opening ⇨ *fig. 23*.
- ▸ Insert the key in the inside slot and turn it all the way to the right. ▶

Once the front passenger's door has been closed, you cannot open it again from the outside. The door can be opened from the inside by pulling the door handle.

WARNING

Read and follow all WARNINGS ⇨ ⚠ *in General description on page 27*.

Tips

After the ignition is switched on, the power locking system switch is enabled.

Electronic immobilizer

The immobilizer prevents your vehicle from being started by unauthorized persons.

Inside the key there is a computer chip. This chip automatically activates/deactivates the electronic immobilizer.

Applies to vehicles with ignition lock:

The electronic immobilizer deactivates automatically when you insert the remote control key into the ignition lock. It activates again automatically when you remove the remote control key from the ignition lock.

Applies to vehicles with convenience key:

If the remote control key is located inside the vehicle and you press the START ENGINE STOP button, the electronic immobilizer deactivates automatically. If you switch the ignition off and remove the remote control key from the vehicle, the electronic immobilizer activates again automatically.

WARNING

Always take the key with you when you leave the vehicle. The key can disarm the electronic engine immobilizer and permit an unauthorized person to start the engine and enable operation of the vehicle systems such as power window or power sunroof leading to serious personal injury.

Tips

- The vehicle cannot be started if an unauthorized key is used. The vehicle may not start if another radio device such as a key for another vehicle or a transponder is located on the key ring.
- For Declaration of Compliance to United States FCC and Industry Canada regulations ⇨ *page 249*.

Luggage compartment lid

Opening/closing rear lid



Fig. 24 Rear lid: handle

Opening the rear lid

- ▸ Press the button on the remote control master key for at least one second. The rear lid unlocks and opens slightly. Or
- ▸ Press the handle on the rear lid ⇨ *fig. 24*.

Closing the rear lid

- ▸ Pull the rear lid down at the grip on the inside and allow it to drop gently to close it ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

- After closing the rear lid, always pull up on it to make sure that it is properly closed. Otherwise it could open suddenly when the vehicle is moving.
- To help prevent poisonous exhaust gas from being drawn into the vehicle, always keep the rear lid closed while driving. Never transport objects larger than those which fit completely into the luggage area, because then the rear lid cannot be fully closed. ▶

– Never leave your vehicle unattended especially with the rear lid left open. A child could crawl into the car through the luggage compartment and pull the lid shut, becoming trapped and unable to get out. To reduce the risk of personal injury, never let children play in or around your vehicle. Always keep the rear lid as well as the vehicle doors closed when not in use.
– Always ensure that no one is within range of the rear lid when it is moving, in particular close to the hinges - fingers or hands can be pinched.

Tips

When the vehicle is locked, the rear lid can be opened separately by pressing the button on the master key. When you close the rear lid again, it locks automatically.

Emergency unlocking of the luggage compartment lid

There is an emergency release for the rear lid.



Fig. 25 Rear lid: Lock cylinder

▸ Remove the mechanical key ⇨ *page 29*.
▸ Insert the key in the lock cylinder and turn it in the direction of the arrow.

Trunk escape handle

In case of an emergency, the luggage compartment lid can be opened from the inside using the trunk escape handle.



Fig. 26 Trunk escape handle: view from inside the closed rear lid

To open luggage compartment lid

▸ Pull the handle down towards the bumper ⇨ *fig. 26*.

The trunk escape handle inside the luggage compartment lid is made of fluorescent material to glow in the dark.

WARNING

The trunk escape handle is to be used only in an emergency.

Tips

The emergency release lever should *never* be used as a handle for closing the luggage compartment lid.

Power windows

Controls

The driver can control all power windows.

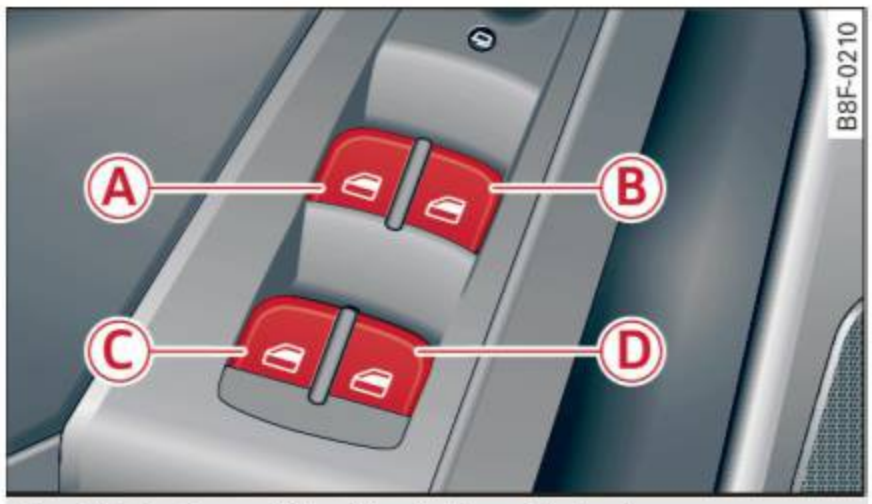


Fig. 27 Section of the driver's door: Controls



Fig. 28 Center console: central power window switch

All power window switches ⇨ *fig. 27* are provided with a **two-position function**:

Opening the windows

- ▸ Press the switch to the **first stop** and hold it until the window reaches the desired position.
- ▸ Press the switch briefly to the **second stop** to automatically open the window.

Closing the windows

- ▸ Pull the switch to the **first stop** and hold it until the window reaches the desired position.
- ▸ Pull the switch briefly to the **second stop** to automatically close the window.

Power window switches

Ⓐ Driver's door
Ⓑ Passenger's door
Ⓒ Left rear window
Ⓓ Right rear window

You can open or close all the windows with the switch ⇨ *fig. 28*.

WARNING

- – When you leave your vehicle - even if only briefly - always remove the ignition key. This applies particularly when children remain in the vehicle. Otherwise the children could start the engine or operate electrical equipment (e.g. power windows). The power windows are functional until the driver's door or passenger's door has been opened.
- – Pay close attention when closing the windows to prevent pinching of hands or limbs.
- – When locking the vehicle from outside, the vehicle must be unoccupied since the windows can no longer be opened in an emergency.

Tips

- – When you open the doors, the windows automatically lower about 10 mm.
- – After the ignition has been switched off, the windows can still be opened or closed for about 10 minutes. The window regulators are not switched until the driver's or passenger's door is opened.

Convenience opening/closing

The windows can be opened and closed with the mechanical key or the emergency key.

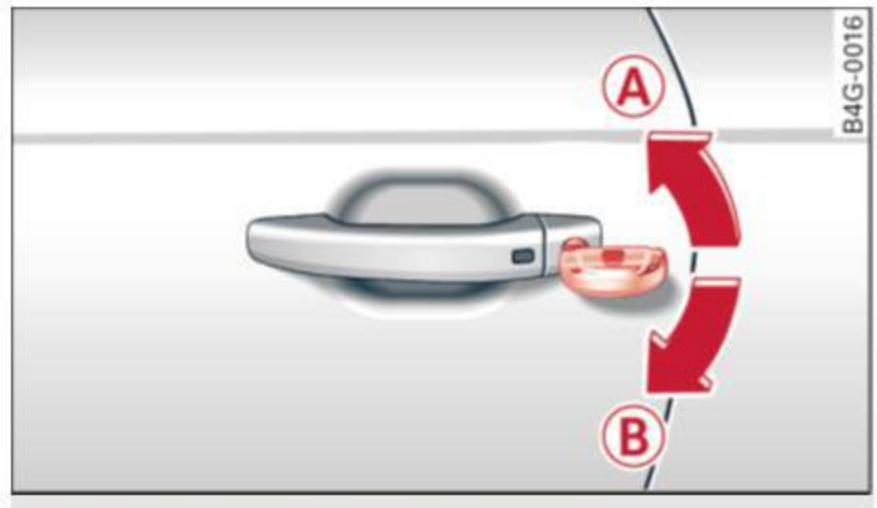


Fig. 29 Key turns for opening and closing

Convenience opening feature

- ▸ Use the emergency key or pull the mechanical key out of the master key ⇨ *page 29*.
- ▸ Insert the key into the lock of the driver's door. ▶

- ▸ Turn the key to position ⇨ *fig. 29* Ⓐ until all the windows have reached the desired position.

Convenience closing feature

- ▸ Use the emergency key or pull the mechanical key out of the master key ⇨ *page 29*.
- ▸ Turn the key in the lock of the driver's door to the lock position Ⓑ until the windows are closed ⇨ ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

- Never close the windows inattentively and without checking - there is risk of injury.
- You must always watch when the windows are being raised so that no one can be trapped. If you release the key, the closing action is immediately canceled.
- Always read and heed WARNING ⇨ ⚠ *in General description on page 27*.

Correcting window regulator malfunction

After disconnecting the vehicle battery, the one-touch up and down feature must be activated again.

- ▸ Pull and hold the power window switch until the window is completely closed.
- ▸ Release the switch and pull the switch again for one second.

Valet parking

Applies to: vehicles with valet parking function

The valet parking feature protects the luggage compartment from unauthorized access.

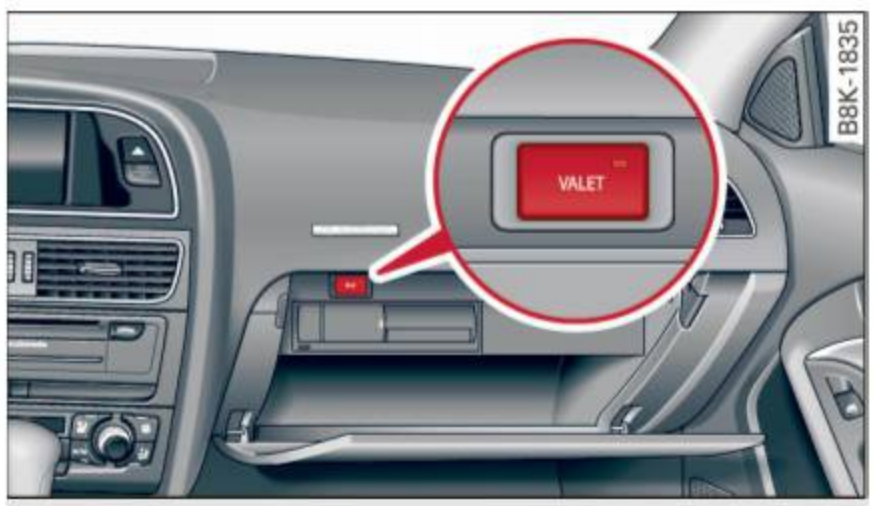


Fig. 30 Glove compartment: valet parking button

You can switch the "valet parking function" on when someone else is parking your vehicle. When the function is switched on, the vehicle can be driven, locked and unlocked using the master key, but access to the luggage compartment is not permitted.

- ▸ Take the mechanical key out of the master key ⇨ *page 29*.
- ▸ Open the glove compartment ⇨ *page 63*.
- ▸ Activate ⇨ *fig. 30* the "valet parking" feature by pressing the VALET button. The indicator light in the switch illuminates.
- ▸ Close the glove compartment and lock it with the mechanical key.
- ▸ Leave the master key with the service personnel for parking and keep the mechanical key with you.

The following buttons are deactivated when the valet parking function is switched on:

– button on the master key
– Handle in the rear lid

When the valet parking feature is activated, the message **Valet parking activated** appears in the instrument cluster display when you switch the ignition on.

Garage door opener (HomeLink)

Description

Applies to: vehicles with garage door opener (HomeLink)



Fig. 31 Garage door opener: examples of using with different systems

You can activate various systems such as garage doors, security systems and home lighting from inside your vehicle using the garage door opener ▶

(HomeLink). There are three buttons for this in the vehicle headliner that can be in used in place of up to three hand-held transmitters.

To operate systems using the garage door opener, the three buttons in the roof headliner must be programmed first.

WARNING

Make sure no people or objects are in the immediate vicinity of the equipment when using or programming the garage door opener. People can be injured and objects can be damaged if they are caught in the equipment.

Tips

- For security reasons, we recommend that you clear the programmed buttons before selling the vehicle.
- For additional information about HomeLink, visit www.homelink.com.
- For Declaration of Compliance to United States FCC and Industry Canada regulations ⇨ *page 249*.

Operation

Applies to: vehicles with garage door opener (HomeLink)

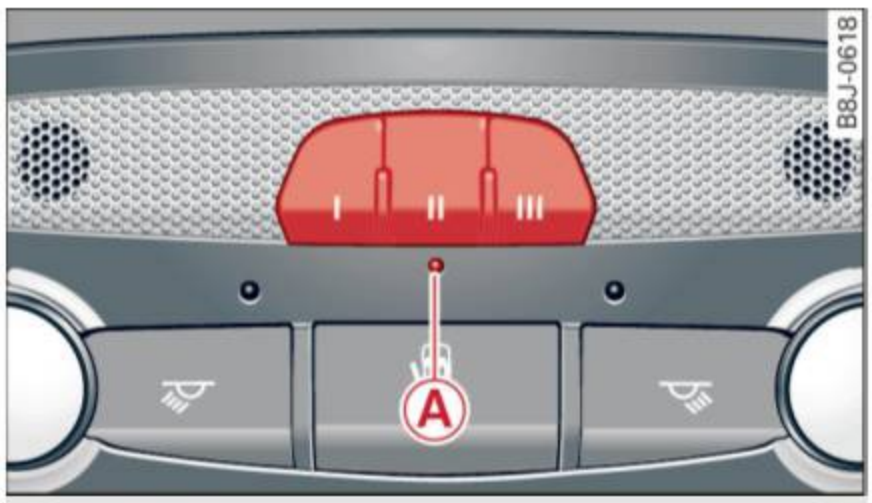


Fig. 32 Headliner: control unit

Requirement: The buttons in the roof headliner must be programmed ⇨ *page 37* or ⇨ *page 37* and the vehicle must be within range of the system, such as the garage door opener.

- ▸ Press the button to open the garage door. The LED Ⓐ blinks or turns on.
- ▸ Press the button again to close the garage door.

Tips

To open or close the garage door, press the button, but do not hold it for longer than 10 seconds or the garage door opener module will switch to programming mode.

Programming the buttons (version A)

Applies to: vehicles with garage door opener (HomeLink)

You can program both fixed code and rolling code systems using this procedure.

Programming or reprogramming buttons

- ▸ Switch the ignition on.
- ▸ Press and hold the button in the roof headliner ⇨ *page 37, fig. 32* that you would like to program for at least 10 seconds. Or
- ▸ Select: CAR function button > **Car systems*** control button > **Vehicle settings** > **Garage door opener** > **Program garage door opener**. If this path is not available, program the button as described in version B ⇨ *page 37*.
- ▸ Follow the instructions in the MMI.

Erasing button programming

The programmed buttons cannot be erased individually. They must all be erased together. Reprogram the buttons if necessary.

- ▸ Select: CAR function button > **Car systems*** control button > **Vehicle settings** > **Garage door opener** > **Clear program settings** > **Yes**.

Displaying the version/status/country code

- ▸ Select: CAR function button > **Car systems*** control button > **Vehicle settings** > **Garage door opener** > **Version information**.

Tips

- Programming through the MMI* is not possible with all infotainment systems. If this is the case, program the buttons as described in version B ⇨ *page 37*.
- The required distance between the hand transmitter and the HomeLink module in the radiator grille ⇨ *page 38, fig. 33* depends on the system that you are programming.

– Depending on the model of the system, you may need to release the button on the remote control during programming and press it again. Hold each position you try for at least 15 seconds before trying another position. Keep the turn signals on your vehicle in view when doing this.
– After programming the garage door opener, it may be necessary to synchronize the motor with the system. Refer to the manufacturer's instructions.

Programming the buttons (version B)

Applies to: vehicles with garage door opener (HomeLink)



Fig. 33 Distance between the radiator grille and the hand transmitter

Programming the button: Part 1 with the controls

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Press and hold both outer buttons in the roof headliner ⇨ *page 37, fig. 32* until the LED Ⓐ turns off completely (after about 20 seconds). This procedure clears the standard codes that were set at the factory and does **not** need to be repeated again to program the other buttons.
3. Briefly press the button on the roof headliner that you would like to program.
4. Wait until the LED Ⓐ begins to blink quickly. Programming mode is active for 5 minutes.
5. Move in front of your vehicle while holding the original remote control for the system that would like to program to a button in the roof headliner.

Programming the button: Part 2 at the radiator grille

6. Hold the remote control up to the radiator grille on your vehicle ⇨ *fig. 33*.
7. Press and hold the remote control until the turn signals on your vehicle blink. This may take up to 30 seconds.
8. If the emergency flashers blink three times, the programming was successful. If the emergency flashers only blink one time, the 5 minute time limit for the programming has ended or the programming was not successful. Repeat the programming from the third step, or try changing the distance to the radiator grille.
9. If the garage door or other system does not open using the buttons in the roof headliner even though the programming was successful, the system may use a rolling code instead of a fixed code. **Rolling code programming** must be performed ⇨ *page 39*.

The other two buttons in the roof headliner can be programmed according to the instructions above. Begin with the third step.

Erasing button programming

The programmed buttons cannot be erased individually. They must all be erased together. Reprogram the buttons if necessary.

▸ Switch the ignition on.
▸ Press and hold both outer buttons in the roof headliner until the LED Ⓐ turns off completely (after about 20 seconds).

Reprogramming the buttons

▸ Switch the ignition on.
▸ To reprogram an individual button, press and hold the button until the LED Ⓐ starts to flash quickly (after about 10 seconds). Release the button immediately. Programming mode is active for 5 minutes.
▸ Continue with the fifth step.

Tips

– Programming using the buttons in the roof headliner is not possible with all Infotainment systems. If this is the case, program ▶

the buttons as described in version A ⇨ *page 37*.
– The required distance between the hand transmitter and the HomeLink module in the radiator grille ⇨ *fig. 33* depends on the system that you are programming.
– Depending on the model of the system, you may need to release the button on the remote control during programming and press it again. Hold each position you try for at least 15 seconds before trying another position. Keep the turn signals on your vehicle in view when doing this.

Rolling code programming

Applies to: vehicles with garage door opener (HomeLink)

Rolling code programming is also needed for some systems.

Identifying a rolling code

▸ Press and hold the button in the roof headliner that was already programmed.
▸ Watch the LED Ⓐ ⇨ *page 37, fig. 32*. If the LED blinks quickly, the systems (such as a garage door) is equipped with a rolling code.
▸ Program the rolling code as follows:

Activating the motor unit in a system

▸ Locate the programming button on the system's motor unit. The exact location and color of the button may vary depending on the brand of the system.
▸ Press the programming button on the garage door opener motor unit (this will usually activate an “indicator” on the motor unit). You now have approximately **30 seconds** to program the button in the roof headliner.

Programming the button in the roof headliner

▸ Press and hold the previously programmed button in the roof headliner for 2 seconds.
▸ To end rolling code programming, press and hold the button again for 2 seconds.
▸ With some systems, the button may need to be pressed a third time to end the programming process.

After programming, the system should detect the signal and begin moving when the button in the roof headliner is pressed. Now you may program the other buttons as needed.

Tips

– The rolling code can be programmed more quickly and more easily with the help of a second person.
– If you have difficulty programming the rolling code, referring to the user guide for the system may help.

8F0012721BB

Power top

Automatic power top

General information

The power top opens and closes automatically. The entire power top is stored in the power top compartment. The power top may be opened or closed at speeds up to 30 mph (50 km/h).

Under normal conditions, the power top is wind and waterproof. In rare cases, small droplets of water may form under extreme weather conditions such as torrential or prolonged rain. That is normal and no cause for concern.

Follow the care instructions to keep the roof from leaking and to maintain its appearance over time ⇨ *page 182, Care and cleaning*. Also observe the following:

– Only open and store the power top when it is clean and dry. Sharp dirt particles can cause damage to the rear window and the power top. If the power top is stored when damp, dents can form. If left stored for a long period of time, mildew and other damage can develop.
– Do not leave the power top open for several weeks or the creases in it may become discolored.
– Remove ice and snow before opening the power top. Do not use any sharp edged objects to remove ice and snow or the power top could be scratched or damaged. The rear window may be cleared with a standard ice scraper.
– Do not open the power top when temperatures are below 32 °F (0 °C). The fabric used in the power top loses its elasticity when temperatures are below freezing.

Opening/closing the power top



Fig. 34 Center console: power top switch

▸ Switch the ignition on.
▸ To open/close the power top, pull/press and hold the button during the entire process.

The indicator light turns on.

– when the power top opens/closes or
– if the power top did not open/close completely.

The indicator light in the instrument cluster turns off when the power top is completely open/closed.

The light will blink if the power top cannot be opened/closed ⇨ *page 42*.

WARNING

– When operating the power top, make sure the function is not affected by wind or other factors and that it does not interfere with other drivers.
– Never drive when the power top is not locked correctly. The wind from driving could cause the power top to open. This can result in injuries and damage to the vehicle.
– Make sure no one will be injured by the power top supports and other moving parts when opening and closing the top.
– The head space in the rear is reduced when the power top opens and closes. Make sure the passengers in the rear are far enough away from the power top to reduce the risk of injury.
– When operating the power top, visibility to the rear is limited. Avoid operating the top while driving in reverse. ▸

Note

– To prevent damage to the power top:
  – do not store any objects in the power top compartment.
  – make sure there is enough space above the vehicle when opening or closing the power top.
– To reduce the risk of damage, make sure there are no fragile objects within the storage bay's range of motion.

Tips

– To prevent the battery from draining, do not open or close the power top repeatedly when the engine is switched off.
– A message will appear in the instrument cluster display if there is a power top malfunction ⇨ *page 42*.
– The power top can also be operated manually if there is a malfunction ⇨ *page 44, Power top emergency operation*. The cause of the malfunction should be corrected by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized repair facility as soon as possible.
– The vehicle is not protected from the weather or from unauthorized entry if the vehicle is left parked with the power top open. Lock any objects you are leaving in the vehicle in the luggage compartment. Close the power top before leaving the vehicle.
– The side windows lower slightly automatically when opening/closing the power top.

Power top convenience opening/closing

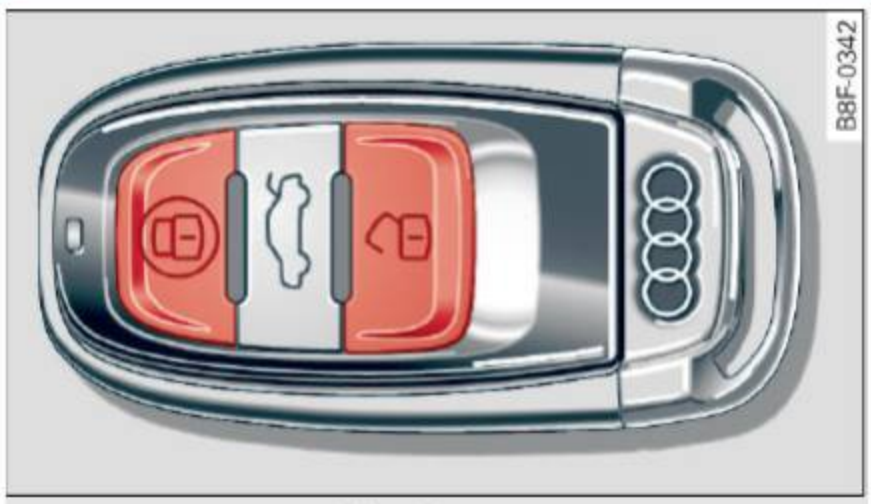


Fig. 35 Remote control key: buttons

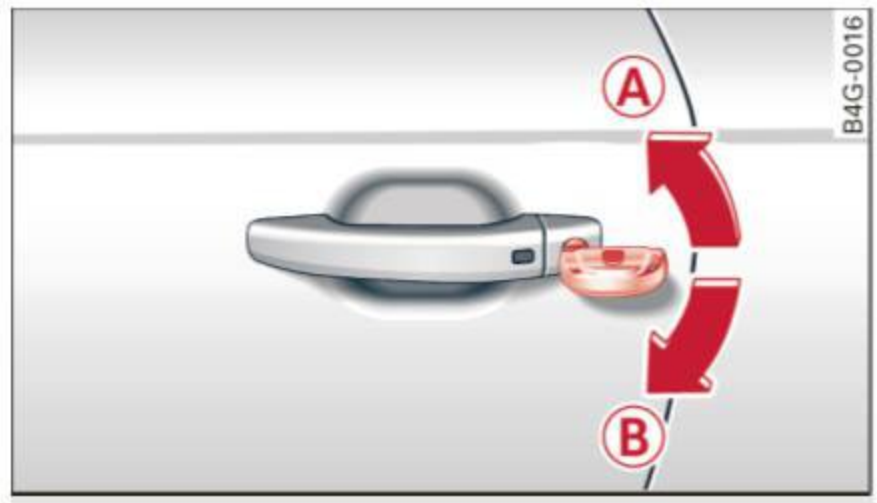


Fig. 36 Turning the key to open and close

Convenience opening with the driver's door lock

▸ Press the button on the remote control key to unlock the vehicle.
▸ Turn the key once in the driver's door lock to the opening position Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 36*.
▸ Turn the key to the opening position again **within two seconds** and hold it there until the power top opens completely.

Convenience closing with the driver's door lock

▸ Turn the key once in the driver's door lock to the closing position Ⓑ ⇨ *fig. 36*.
▸ Turn the key to the closing position again **within two seconds** and hold it there until the power top closes completely.

Releasing the key stops the opening or closing process **immediately**.

WARNING

Read and follow the important safety precautions ⇨ ⚠ *in Opening/closing the power top on page 40*.

Variable power top storage bay



Fig. 37 Luggage compartment: the variable power top storage bay is lowered

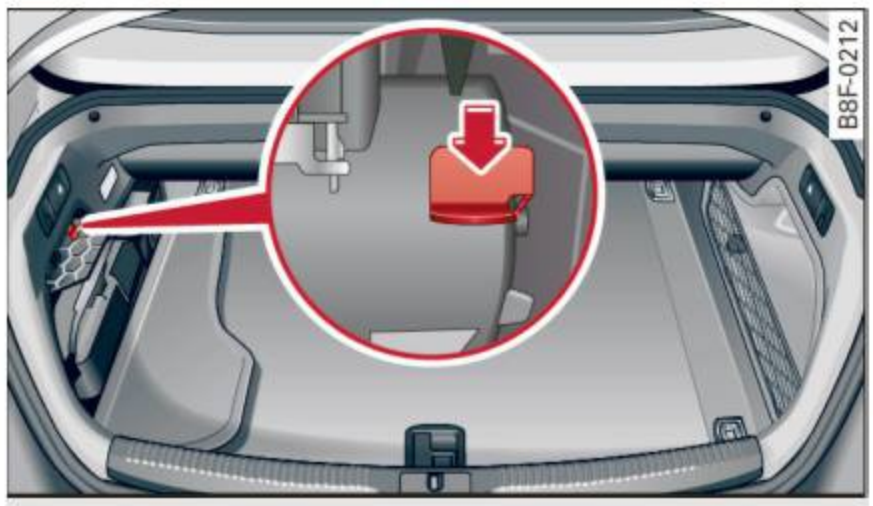


Fig. 38 Luggage compartment: emergency release lever for the variable power top storage bay

The variable power top storage bay lowers automatically when the power top opens. To reduce the risk of damage, make sure there are no fragile objects within the storage bay's range of motion.

Raising the power top storage bay

- ▸ Press the trim in the direction of the arrow to raise the variable power top storage bay ⇨ *fig. 37*.

Lowering the power top storage bay manually (emergency operation)

- ▸ Open the left side trim and press the release lever down to lower the variable power top storage bay ⇨ *fig. 38*.

The variable power top storage bay can be raised when the **power top is closed**. This provides more cargo space in the luggage compartment.

The **opened power top** is stored in the storage bay and protected. The power top bay cannot be raised when the power top is open. The cargo area in the luggage compartment is smaller when the power top is open than when it is closed.

Messages

Convertible top Please close trunk

This message appears in the instrument cluster display if the luggage compartment lid is not closed when operating the power top. Close the luggage compartment lid.

Convertible top storage box not lowered. Please remove obstacle

This message appears when the power top storage bay is not lowered when opening the power top. If the power top storage bay is blocked by objects in the luggage compartment, remove the objects that are in the way. If the power top storage bay is still not lowered automatically, you can lower it manually ⇨ *page 42*.

Convertible top Cannot be used

This message appears if the power top cannot open or close automatically because of safety reasons or if there is a malfunction. The following causes are possible:

- **Vehicle speed too high:** The automatic power top is deactivated for safety reasons if the vehicle speed is too high. Reduce the vehicle speed and try closing/opening the power top again.
- **Battery voltage too low:** The automatic power top is deactivated if the battery charge level is too low. You can open/close the power top again after starting the engine.
- **Rollover protection active:** If the power top runs continuously for a long period of time, the overload protection will activate for approximately 15 to 30 minutes. You can open/close the power top again after that ⇨ ⚠.
- **Malfunction:** Failure of system components is one possible cause for malfunction. The power top can be operated manually ⇨ *page 44*.

Convertible top not secure

This message appears and a warning tone sounds if the power top is not completely closed/open and the vehicle speed is above 50 km/h. Reduce ▸

the vehicle speed and try closing/opening the power top again.

WARNING

Never drive when the power top is not locked correctly. The wind from driving could cause the power top to open. This can result in injuries and damage to the vehicle.

Wind deflector

Applies to: vehicles with wind deflector

The wind deflector reduces turbulence in the passenger compartment and makes driving more comfortable.

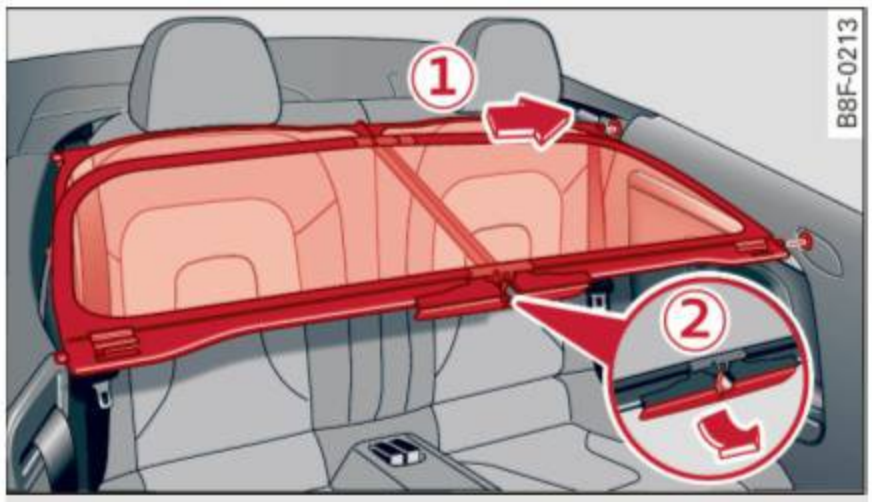


Fig. 39 Rear of the vehicle: inserting the wind deflector (1)

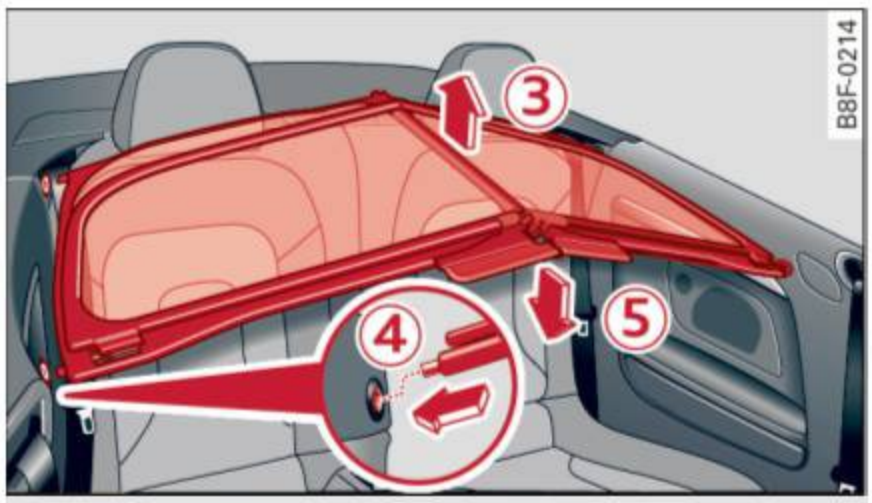


Fig. 40 Rear of the vehicle: inserting the wind deflector (2)

The wind deflector is located in the luggage compartment in a storage bag* or under the cargo floor cover.

Inserting and positioning the wind deflector

- ▸ Open the rear door on the passenger's side.
- ▸ Remove the wind deflector from the luggage compartment and fold it apart once. The wind deflector is installed in the correct position when the long side is toward the front and the wind deflector frame is at the top.
- ▸ Insert both pins on the wind deflector ① ⇨ *fig. 39* on the driver's side in the mounts in the side trim.
- ▸ Fold the handle ② upward and lift the center of the wind deflector up slightly ③ ⇨ *fig. 40*.
- ▸ Guide the wind deflector into the mounts on the passenger's side ④ and press lightly in the center of the wind deflector ⑤ until the handle locks in place.
- ▸ Raise the wind deflector completely.

Removing the wind deflector

- ▸ Fold the wind deflector frame back.
- ▸ Fold the handle ② ⇨ *fig. 39* upward and lift the center of the wind deflector up slightly ③ ⇨ *fig. 40*.
- ▸ Remove the wind deflector from the mounts in the side trim on the passenger side.
- ▸ Pull the wind deflector out of the mounts on the driver side and lift it out.
- ▸ Fold the wind deflector together and store it securely.

WARNING

– Do not use the wind deflector to secure cargo.
– Be careful when installing so you do not pinch your fingers.
– Pay attention to traffic when installing the wind deflector. Install the wind deflector from the side of the vehicle that is farthest from traffic.

Note

Do not lean against the vehicle when installing the wind deflector. Hard objects and decorations on clothing such as belt buckles can scratch the paint.

Tips

– The wind deflector works best when all of the windows are rolled up while driving.
– Only store the wind deflector in the storage bag* when it is dry.

Power top emergency operation

General information

The power top can be closed manually if there is a malfunction.

- ▸ Set the parking brake.
- ▸ Open the windows.
- ▸ Switch the ignition off.
- ▸ To reduce pressure in the power top hydraulics, pull the button for approximately 10 to 15 seconds ⇨ *page 40, fig. 34*.

Only close the power top manually in an emergency. Have a second person help you. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized repair facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

WARNING

– There is a risk of pinching your hands or injuring other people during all steps in the power top emergency operation process.
  – Make sure all windows are open during emergency operation.
  – Do not hold the power top supports or other moving parts.
– Never drive when the power top is not locked correctly. The wind from driving could cause the power top to open. This can result in injuries and damage to the vehicle.

Tips

The vehicle headliner is not clipped in and the power top compartment cover is not locked after using the power top emergency operation procedure. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized repair facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Step 1: Releasing the power top storage bay lid

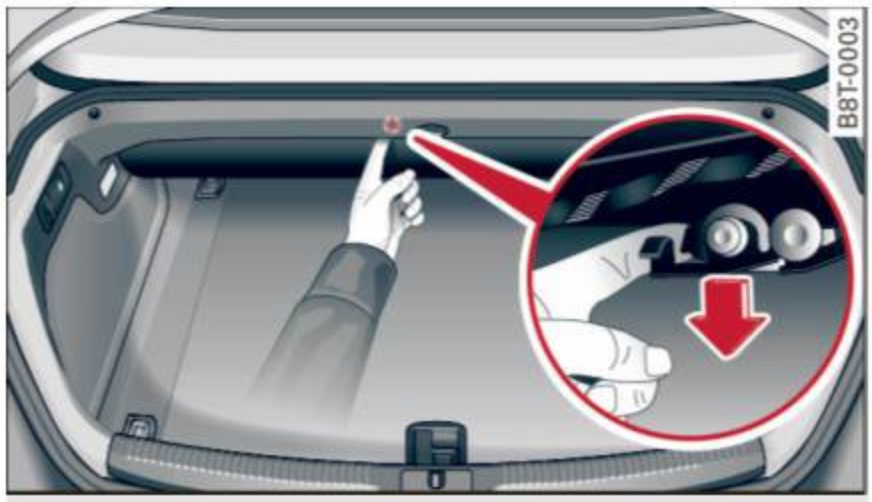


Fig. 41 Luggage compartment: release lever



Fig. 42 Luggage compartment: side trim

- ▸ Open the luggage compartment lid.
- ▸ Reach with your finger into the gap behind the trim near the center of the vehicle ⇨ *fig. 41*.
- ▸ Press the release lever down to release the power top compartment cover.
- ▸ Open the left side trim and press the yellow lever in the direction of the arrow ⇨ *fig. 42*.
- ▸ Remove the emergency release key (hex key) from the left side trim Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 42*.
- ▸ Open the right side trim and press the yellow lever in the direction of the arrow.

Step 2: Lifting the power top compartment cover out

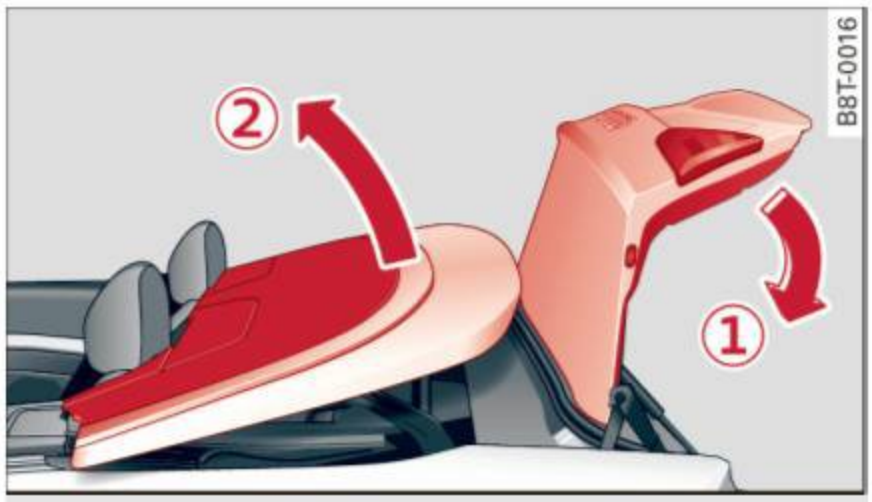


Fig. 43 Rear of vehicle: storage bay cover partially open



Fig. 44 Rear of vehicle: power top storage compartment cover completely open

- First press the luggage compartment lid lightly in the direction of the arrow ① ⇨ *fig. 43* ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 44*.
- Then raise the power top compartment cover out of the power top storage bay ② and hold it in place.
- Close the luggage compartment lid.
- Open the power top storage compartment cover completely ⇨ *fig. 44*.

Step 3: Opening the latch

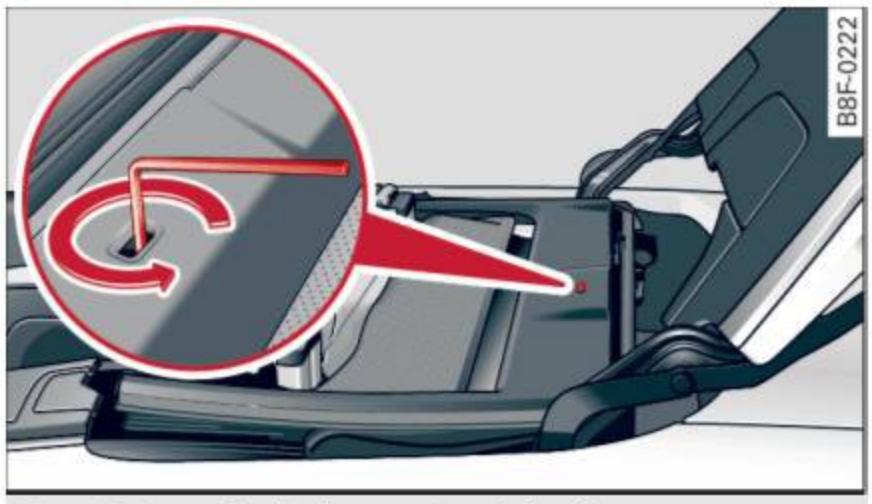


Fig. 45 Rear of vehicle: opening the latch

- Remove the cap from the trim and insert the emergency release key in the opening.
- Turn the emergency release key counter-clockwise until it stops to open the latch.
- Remove the emergency release key.

Step 4: Closing the power top

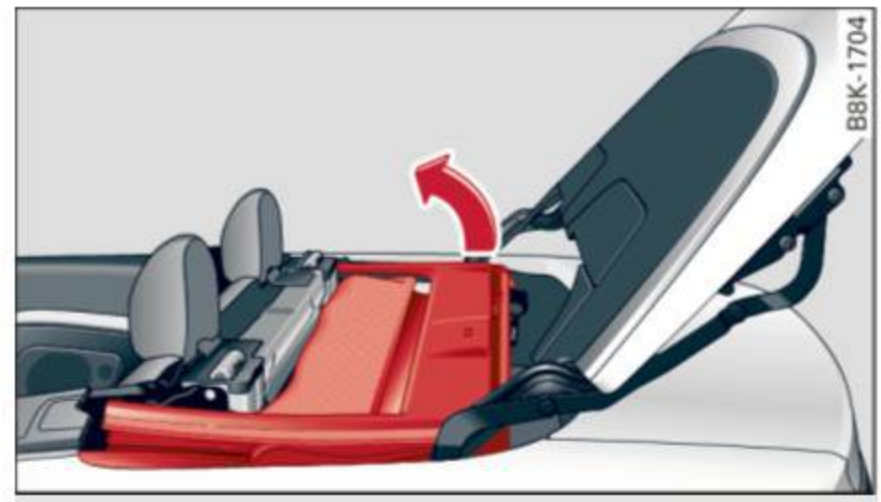


Fig. 46 Rear of vehicle: closing the power top

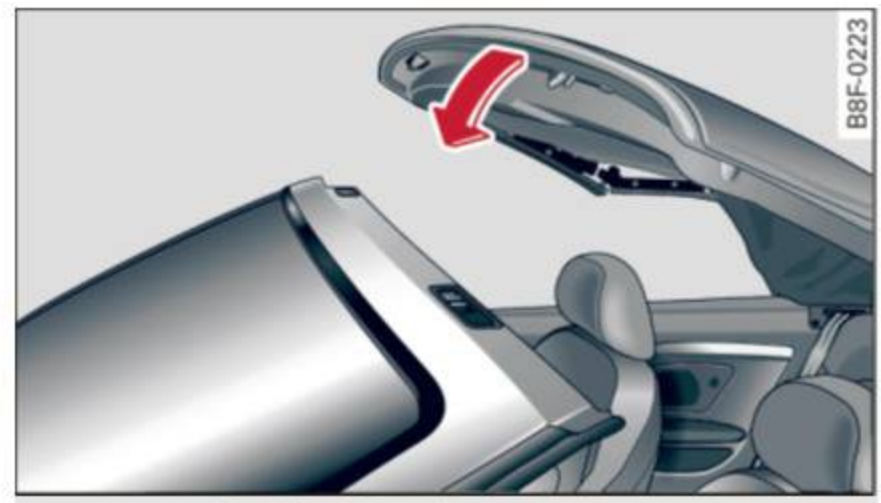


Fig. 47 Windshield: closing the power top

- Raise the power top out of the storage bay and pull it out completely ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 44*.
- Press the power top onto the windshield frame ⇨ *fig. 47*.
- Press the button ⇨ *page 40, fig. 34* to close the power top. If this does not work, proceed with ⇨ *page 46, Step 5: Retracting the power top compartment cover*.

Step 5: Retracting the power top compartment cover

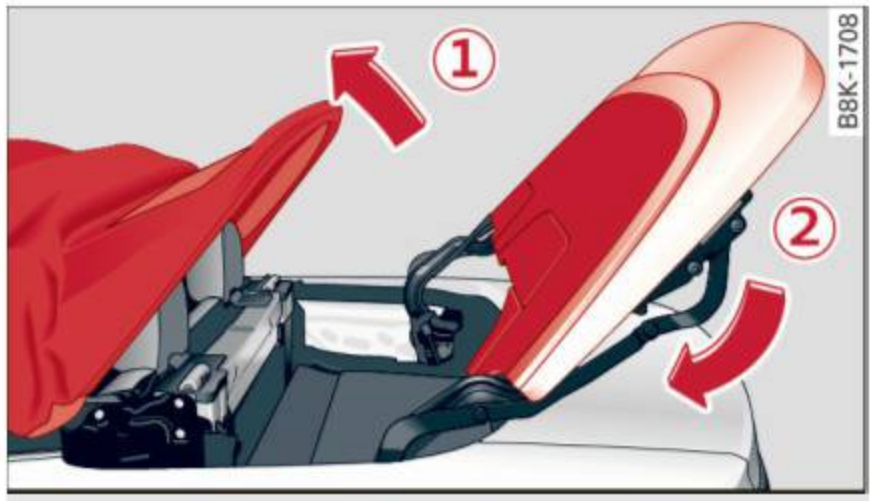


Fig. 48 Rear of vehicle: retracting the power top compartment cover

- Raise the rear of the power top and hold it in place ① ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 44*.
- Slide the power top compartment cover forward ② until it reaches the end position. Release the power top.

Step 6: Locking the power top

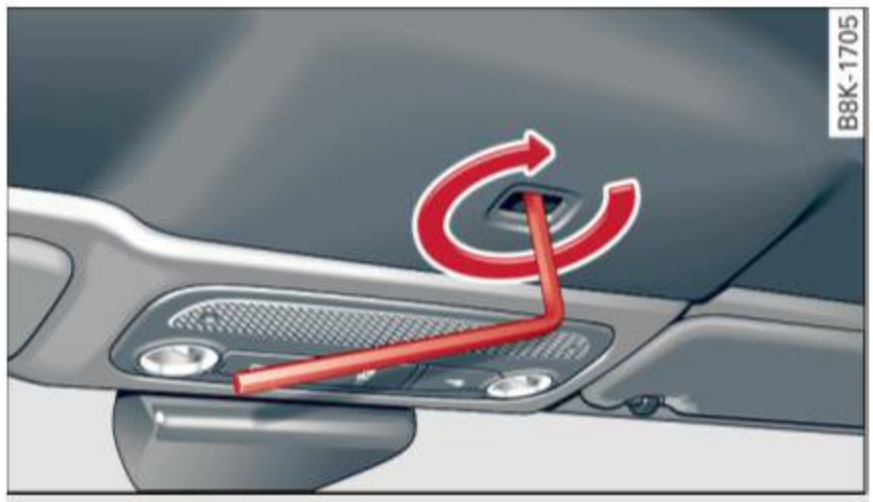


Fig. 49 Inside of the power top: locking the power top

- Insert the emergency release key into the opening ⇨ *page 45, fig. 45*.
- Turn the emergency release key clockwise until it stops to lock the power top.
- Remove the emergency release key and install the cap in the opening.

Tips

Make sure the locking mechanisms are locked securely.

Step 7: Loosening the headliner

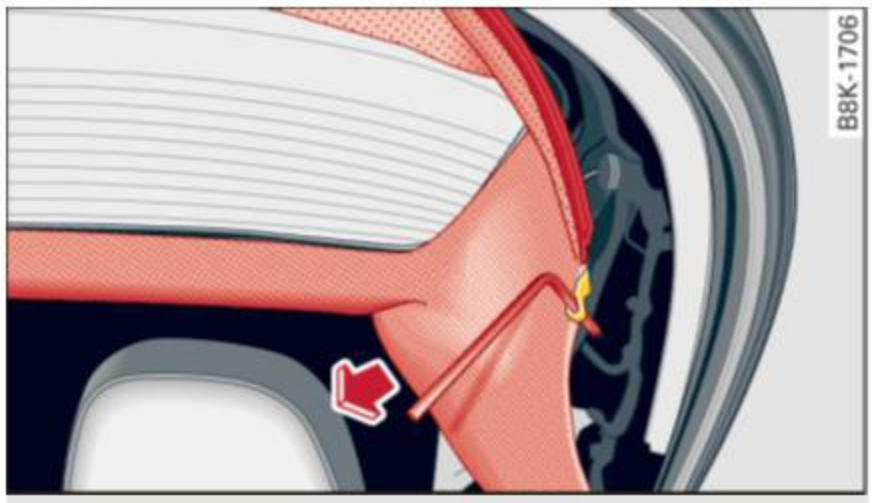


Fig. 50 Rear window: loosening the right side of the headliner

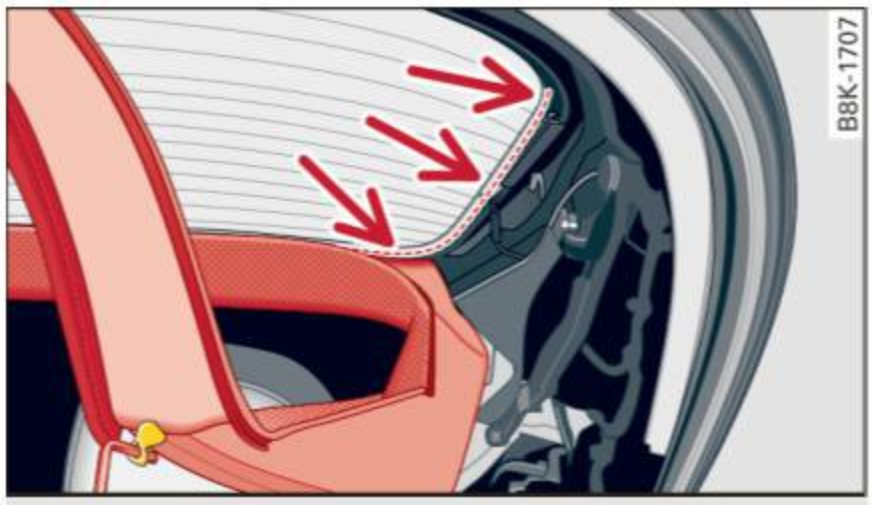


Fig. 51 Rear window: headliner partially loosened

Perform the following steps at the rear of the vehicle on both sides of the power top.

- To loosen the headliner, raise the rear of the power and pull on the yellow loop ⇨ *fig. 50* with the emergency release key.
- Continue pulling on the loop to loosen the headliner around the rear window (approximately 30 cm) ⇨ *fig. 51*.

Step 8: Securing the latch

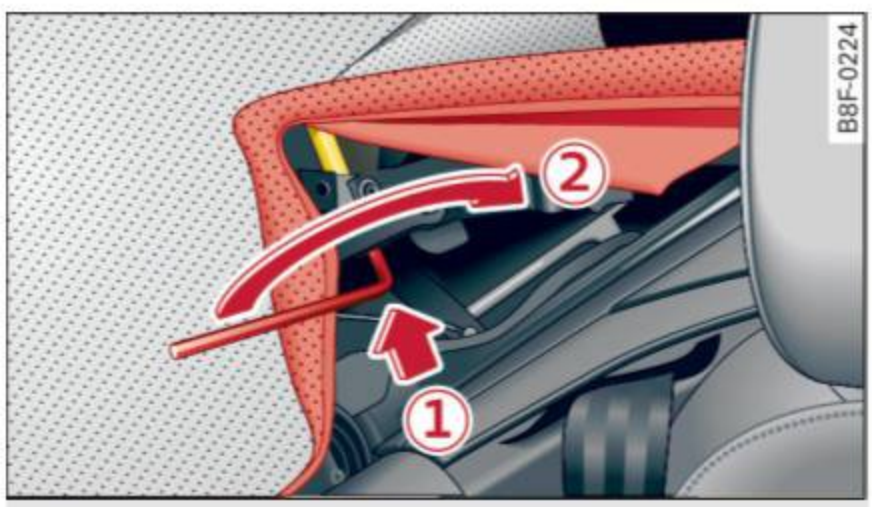


Fig. 52 Rear of the power top: securing the latch

Lock the latch on both sides of the vehicle. ▶

- ▸ Pull the power top headliner to the side in the area by the rear head restraints ⇨ *fig. 52*.
- ▸ Insert the short end of the emergency release lever in the yellow sleeve on the power top support ⇨ *fig. 52*.
- ▸ Turn the emergency release key in the direction of the arrow ② until the support is locked.
- ▸ Put the emergency release key away Ⓐ ⇨ *page 44, fig. 42*.

Lights and Vision

Exterior lighting

Switching the lights on and off



Fig. 53 Instrument panel: headlight control switch

Light switch

Turn the switch ⇨ *fig. 53* to the corresponding position. When the lights are switched on, the symbol turns on.

O - The lights are off or the daytime running lights are on:

– **USA models:** The daytime running lights are activated when the light switch ⇨ *fig. 53* is in the **O** position or the **AUTO** position (only in daylight conditions). The daytime running lights function can be turned on and off in the radio or MMI* menu **Exterior lighting** ⇨ *page 49*, ⇨ ⚠.
– **Canada models:** The daytime running lights are activated when the light switch ⇨ *fig. 53* is in the **O** position, position or the **AUTO** position (only in daylight conditions). The daytime running lights function cannot be turned off ⇨ ⚠.

AUTO* - Automatic headlights switch on and off depending on brightness, for example in twilight, during rain or in tunnels ⇨ ⚠.

- Side marker lights

- Low beam headlights

Fog lights/rear fog light(s)*

Press the appropriate button ⇨ *fig. 53*:

- Fog lights

- Rear fog light(s)

adaptive light*

When switched on, adaptive light adapts to curves in the road depending on the vehicle speed and the steering angle. This provides better lighting through the curve. The system operates at speeds between approximately 6 mph (10 km/h) and 68 mph (110 km/h).

Static cornering light* (vehicles with adaptive light) - the cornering light switches on at speeds up to approximately 25 mph (40 km/h) when a certain steering wheel angle is reached or when a turn signal is activated. The area to the side of the vehicle is illuminated better when turning.

The adaptive light and the cornering light only function when the switch is in the AUTO position (automatic headlights*).

WARNING

– Daytime running lights and automatic headlights* are only intended to assist the driver. They do not relieve the driver of his responsibility to check the headlights and to turn them on manually according to the current light and visibility conditions. For example, fog cannot be detected by the light sensors*. So always switch on the headlights under these weather conditions and when driving in the dark.
– Crashes can happen when you cannot see the road ahead and when you cannot be seen by other motorists. Always turn on the headlights so that you can see ahead and so that others can see your car from the back.
– Please obey all laws when using the lighting systems described here.

Note

The rear fog lights* should only be turned on in accordance with traffic regulation, as the lights are bright for following traffic.

Tips

– The light sensor* for headlight control is located in the rear view mirror mount. You should therefore not apply any stickers to ▶

the windshield in this area in order to prevent malfunctions or failures.
- Some exterior lighting functions can be adjusted ⇨ *page 49*.
- When you remove your key from the ignition while the vehicle's lights are turned on, a buzzer sounds as long as the driver's door is open.
- In cool or damp weather, the inside of the headlights, turn signals and tail lights can fog over due to the temperature difference between the inside and outside. They will clear shortly after switching them on. This does not affect the service life of the lighting.
- In the event of a light sensor malfunction, the driver is notified in the instrument cluster display ⇨ *page 19*.

Turn signals and high beam lever

The lever operates the turn signals, the high beams and the headlight flasher.

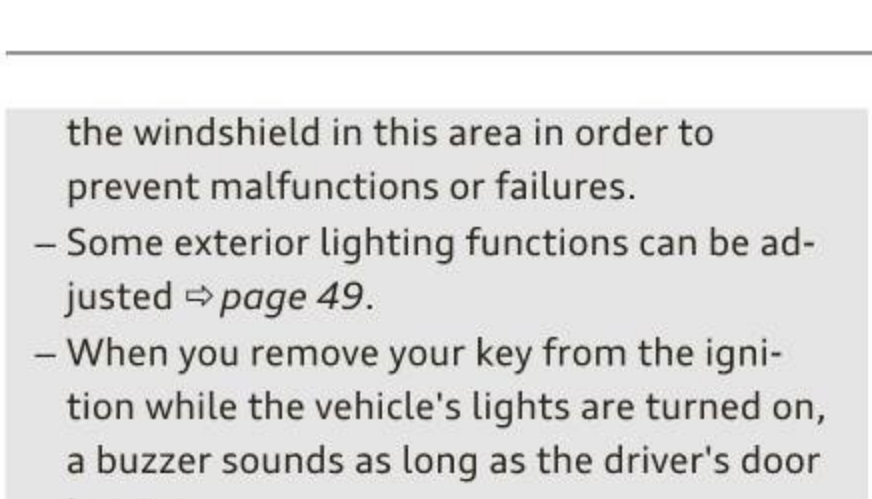


Fig. 54 Turn signal and high beam lever

Turn signals ⇦ ⇨

The turn signals activate when you move the lever into a turn signal position when the ignition is switched on.

① - right turn signal

② - left turn signal

The turn signal blinks three times if you just tap the lever.

High beams and headlight flasher

Move the lever to the corresponding position:

③ - high beams on

④ - high beams off or headlight flasher

The indicator light in the instrument cluster turns on.

Notes on these features

- The *turn signals* only work with the ignition turned on. The indicator lights ⇦ or ⇨ in the instrument cluster also blink.
- After you have turned a corner, the turn signal switches off automatically.
- The *high beam* works only when the headlights are on. The indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminates when the high beams are on.
- The *headlight flasher* works only as long as you hold the lever - even if there are no lights switched on. The indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminates when you use the headlight flasher.

⚠ WARNING

Do not use the high beam or headlight flasher if you know that these could blind oncoming traffic.

Adjusting exterior lighting

The functions are selected in the radio or MMI.*

- Select: CAR function button > **Exterior lighting**. Or
- Select: CAR function button > **Car systems*** control button > **Vehicle settings** > **Exterior lighting**.

Coming home (light when leaving car)*, Leaving home (light when unlocking car)*

The **coming home** function illuminates the area around the vehicle when the ignition is switched off and the driver's door is opened. Depending on vehicle equipment, the function can be switched on and off or the length of time the lights remain on* can be adjusted.

The **leaving home** function illuminates the area around the vehicle when unlocking it. This function can be switched on and off. ▶

The **coming home** and **leaving home** functions only operate when it is dark and the light switch is in the AUTO position ⇨ *page 48, fig. 53*.

Auto headlights*

When the light switch is in the AUTO ⇨ *page 48* position, the switch-on point of the lights can be changed in the automatic driving light function.

Daytime running lights

USA models: You can switch the daytime running lights **on** and **off**.

Canada models: The function cannot be turned off. It is activated automatically each time the ignition is switched on.

Travel mode*

The headlight beam is asymmetrical. This provides stronger illumination on the side of the road on which you are driving. If you are driving in a country that drives on the opposite side of the road from your own country, this will cause glare for oncoming drivers. To prevent glare:

– Travel mode must be selected in vehicles with Xenon headlights*.
– In vehicles with halogen headlights, certain areas of the headlight lenses must be covered with waterproof adhesive covers that prevent light from passing through. For more information, please see your authorized Audi dealer or authorized repair facility.

Tips

When travel mode is activated, a display in the driver information system indicates this each time you switch the ignition on.

Emergency flashers



Fig. 55 Center console: emergency flasher switch

The emergency flashers makes other motorists aware that you or your vehicle are in an emergency situation.

▸ Press the switch ⚠ ⇨ *fig. 55* to turn the emergency flashers on or off.

When the emergency flashers are on, all four turn signals blink at the same time. The turn signal indicator lights ⇦ ⇨ in the instrument cluster, as well as the light in the emergency flasher switch ⚠ blink likewise.

You can indicate a lane change or a turn when the emergency flashers are switched on by using the turn signal lever. The emergency flashers stop temporarily.

The emergency flashers also work when the ignition is turned off.

The emergency flashers will turn on automatically if you are in an accident where the airbag has deployed.

Tips

You should turn on the emergency flashers when:

– you are the last vehicle standing in a traffic jam so that any other vehicles coming can see you, or when
– your vehicle has broken down or you are in an emergency situation, or when
– your vehicle is being towed by a tow truck or if you are towing another vehicle behind you.

Interior lighting

Front/rear interior lights

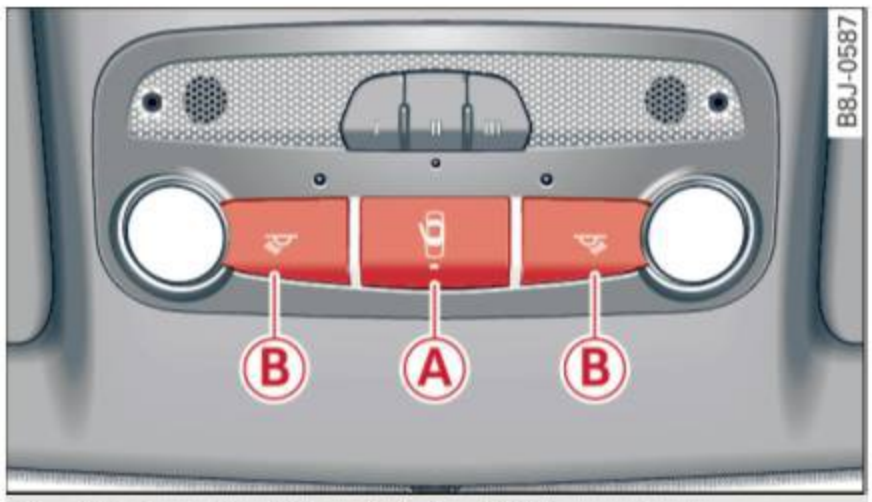


Fig. 56 Front headliner: interior lighting controls

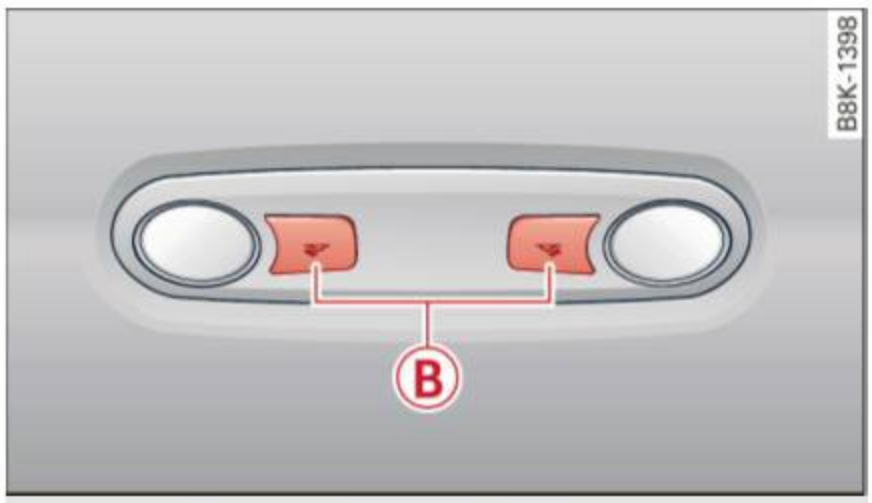


Fig. 57 Rear headliner: rear reading lights

Ⓐ Interior lights

Press the button Ⓐ. The LED in the button illuminates.

If the LED illuminates, the interior lighting is controlled automatically.

Ⓑ Front/rear reading lights

To turn a reading light on/off, press the button ⇨ *fig. 56* or ⇨ *fig. 57*.

Instrument illumination

The basic brightness of the illumination for the instruments, the center console and the display can be adjusted.



Fig. 58 Instrument illumination

- ▸ Press the knob to release it.
- ▸ Turn the knob toward "-" or "+" to reduce or increase the brightness.
- ▸ Press the knob again to return it to its original position.

Tips

The instrument illumination (for dials and needles) lights on when the ignition is switched on and the vehicle lights are turned off. As the daylight fades, the illumination of the dials likewise dims automatically and will go out completely when the outside light is very low. This feature is meant to remind you to switch on the headlights when outside light conditions become poor.

Vision

Adjusting the exterior mirrors



Fig. 59 Driver's door: knob for the exterior mirrors

Turn the knob to the desired position: ▸

- Adjusting the left/right exterior mirror. Move the knob in the desired direction.

- Heating the mirror glass depending on the outside temperature*.

- Folding exterior mirrors*. In the Infotainment system, you can select if the mirrors fold in automatically when you lock the vehicle ⇨ *page 32*.

Front passenger's exterior mirror tilt function*

To help you see the curb when backing into a parking space, the surface of the mirror tilts slightly. For this to happen, the knob must be in the position for the front passenger's outside mirror.

You can adjust the tilted mirror surface by turning the knob in the desired direction. When you move out of reverse and into another gear, the new mirror position is stored and assigned to the key you are using.

The mirror goes back into its original position once you drive forward faster than 9 mph (15 km/h) or turn the ignition off.

WARNING

Curved mirror surfaces (convex or spherical*) increase your field of view. Remember that vehicles or other objects will appear smaller and farther away than when seen in a flat mirror. If you use this mirror to estimate distances of following vehicles when changing lanes, you could estimate incorrectly and cause an accident.

Note

- If the mirror housing was moved by force (for example, by running into an object when maneuvering the vehicle), the mirror must be folded all the way in using the power folding function. The mirror housing must not be moved back into place by hand because this would impair the function of the mirror mechanism.
- If you wash the vehicle in an automatic car wash, you must fold the exterior mirrors in to reduce the risk of damage to the mirrors. Never fold power folding exterior mirrors* by hand. Only fold them in and out using the power controls.

Tips

- If the power adjusting function malfunctions, the glass in both mirrors can be adjusted by pressing on the edge of it by hand.
- The exterior mirror settings are stored with the memory function* ⇨ *page 61*.

Dimming the mirrors

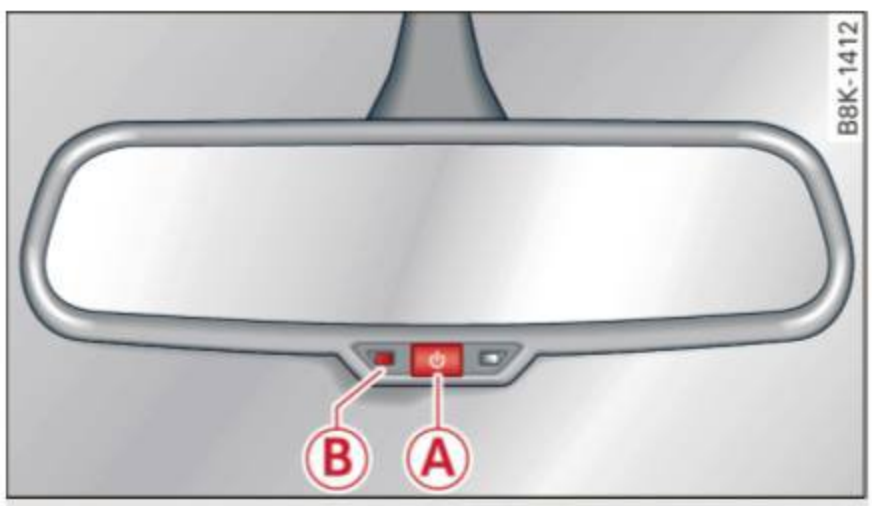


Fig. 60 Automatic dimming rearview mirror*

Manual dimming rearview mirror

▸ Pull the lever on the bottom of the mirror back.

Automatic dimming rearview mirror*

▸ Press the button Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 60*. The indicator light Ⓑ turns on. The rearview and exterior* mirrors dim automatically when light shines on them, for example from headlights on a vehicle to the rear.

WARNING

Electrolyte fluid can leak from automatic dimming mirrors if the glass is broken. Electrolyte fluid can irritate skin, eyes and respiratory system.

- Repeated or prolonged exposure to electrolyte can cause irritation to the respiratory system, especially among people with asthma or other respiratory conditions. Get fresh air immediately by leaving the vehicle or, if that is not possible, open windows and doors all the way.

▸

– If electrolyte gets into the eyes, flush them thoroughly with large amounts of clean water for at least 15 minutes; medical attention is recommended.
– If electrolyte contacts skin, flush affected area with clean water for at least 15 minutes and then wash affected area with soap and water; medical attention is recommended. Thoroughly wash affected clothing and shoes before reuse.
– If swallowed and person is conscious, rinse mouth with water for at least 15 minutes. Do not induce vomiting unless instructed to do so by medical professional. Get medical attention immediately.

Note

Liquid electrolyte leaking from broken mirror glass will damage any plastic surfaces it comes in contact with. Clean up spilled electrolyte immediately with clean water and a sponge.

Tips

– Switching off the dimming function of the inside rear view mirror also deactivates the automatic dimming function of the exterior mirrors.
– Automatic dimming for the mirror only operates properly if the light striking the inside mirror is not hindered by other objects.
– The automatic dimming mirrors do not dim when the interior lighting is turned on or the reverse gear is selected.

Sun visors



Fig. 61 Driver's side: sun visor

The sun visors for the driver and passenger can be pulled out of their brackets in the center of the vehicle and turned towards the doors ①.

The mirror light switches on when the cover over the vanity mirror ② opens.

Windshield wipers

Switching the windshield wipers on

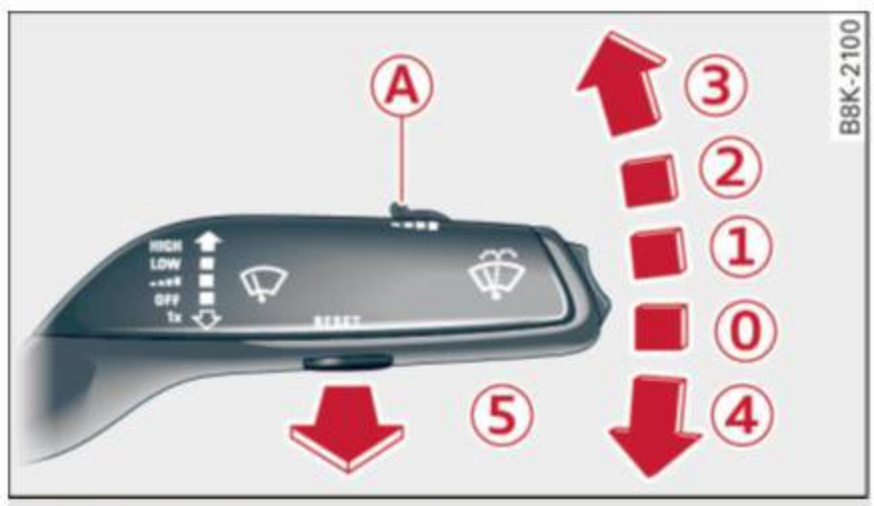


Fig. 62 Windshield wiper lever

Move the windshield wiper lever to the corresponding position:

⓪ - Windshield wiper off

① - Interval mode. To extend/shorten the wiper intervals, move the switch Ⓐ to the left/right. In vehicles with a rain sensor* the wipers turn on in the rain once the vehicle speed exceeds approximately 2 mph (4 km/h). The higher the sensitivity of the rain sensor* is set (switch Ⓐ to the right), the earlier the windshield wipers react to moisture on the windshield. In some models, you can switch rain sensor mode off and switch intermittent mode on in the MMI*. Select: CAR function button > **Car systems*** control button > **Driver assist** > **Rain sensor**. In intermittent mode, you can adjust the interval time using the Ⓐ switch.

② - Slow wiping

③ - Fast wiping

④ - Single wipe

⑤ - Clean the windshield. To eliminate water droplets, the windshield wiper performs one afterwipe operation after several seconds while driving. You can switch this function off by moving the lever to position ⑤ within 10 seconds of ▶

the afterwipe operation. The afterwipe function is reactivated the next time the ignition is switched on.

Cleaning the headlights*. The headlight washer system* operates only when the headlights are on. If you move the lever to position (5), the headlights are washed in intervals.

WARNING

- The rain sensor is only intended to assist the driver. The driver is still responsible for manually switching the wipers on according to the visibility conditions.
- The windshield may not be treated with water-repelling windshield coating agents. Unfavorable conditions, such as wetness, darkness, low sun, can result in increased glare. Wiper blade chatter is also possible.
- Properly functioning windshield wiper blades are required for a clear view and safe driving ⇨ *page 54, Replacing windshield wiper blades*.

Note

- In the case of frost, check whether the windshield wiper blades are frozen to the windshield. Switching on the windshield wipers can damage the wiper blades!
- Prior to using a car wash, the windshield wiper system must be switched off (lever in position (0)). This helps to prevent unintentional switching on and damage to the windshield wiper system.

Tips

- The windshield wipers are switched off when the ignition is turned off. Activate the windshield wipers after the ignition is switched back on by moving the windshield wiper lever to any position.
- Worn or dirty windshield wiper blades result in streaking. This can affect the rain sensor* function. Check your windshield wiper blades regularly.
- The washer fluid nozzles of the windshield washer system are heated at low temperatures when the ignition is on.
- When stopping temporarily, (e.g. at a traffic light) the set speed of the windshield wipers is automatically reduced by one speed.

Cleaning windshield wiper blades

Clean the windshield wiper blades when they begin to leave streaks. Use a soft cloth and glass cleaner to clean the windshield wiper blades.

- ▸ Place the windshield wiper arms in the service position. Refer to ⇨ *page 54*.
- ▸ Lift the wiper arm away from the front window.

WARNING

Dirty windshield wiper blades can impair your view. This can lead to accidents.

Replacing windshield wiper blades

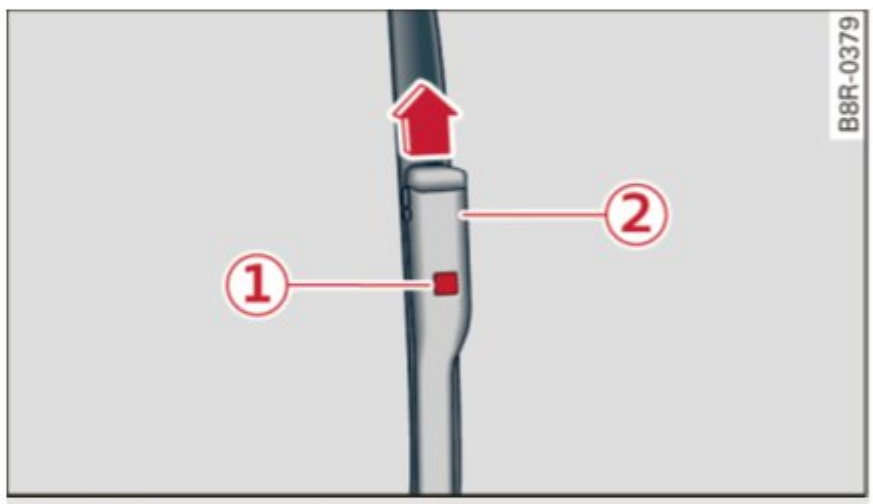


Fig. 63 Removing windshield wiper blade

Wiper service position/blade replacement position

- ▸ Switch the ignition off and move the windshield wiper lever to position (4) ⇨ *page 53, fig. 62*. The windshield wipers move into the service position.
- ▸ To bring the wipers back into the original position, switch the ignition on and press the windshield wiper lever.

You can also turn the service position on or off in the radio/MMI*:

- ▸ Switch the windshield wipers off (position (0) ⇨ *page 53, fig. 62*).
- ▸ Select: CAR function button > **Windshield wipers** > **Service position** > **on/off**. Or ▶

- Select: CAR function button > **Car systems*** control button > **Servicing & checks** > **Wiper service position** > **On/Off**.

Removing the wiper blade

- Lift the windshield wiper arm up from the windshield.
- Press the locking knob (1) ⇨ *fig. 63* on the wiper blade. Hold the wiper blade firmly.
- Remove the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow.

Attaching the wiper blade

- Install the new wiper blade in the retainer on the wiper arm (2) until you hear it click into place on the wiper arm.
- Place the wiper arm back on the windshield.
- Turn the service position off.

WARNING

For your safety, you should replace the wiper blades once or twice a year. See your authorized Audi dealer for replacement blades.

Note

- The windshield wiper blades must only be replaced when in the service position! Otherwise, you risk damaging the paint on the hood or the windshield wiper motor.
- You should not move your vehicle or press the windshield wiper lever when the wiper arms are folded away from the windshield. The windshield wipers would move back into their original position and could damage the hood and windshield.
- To help prevent damage to the wiper system, always loosen blades which are frozen to the windshield before operating wipers.
- To help prevent damage to wiper blades, do not use gasoline, kerosene, paint thinner, or other solvents on or near the wiper blades.
- To help prevent damage to the wiper arms or other components, do not attempt to move the wipers by hand.

Tips

- Commercial hot waxes applied by automatic car washes affect the how easily the glass surface can be cleaned.
- You can also use the service position, for example, if you want to protect the windshield from icing by using a cover.

Digital compass

Switching the compass on and off

Applies to: vehicles with digital compass

The compass direction is shown in the rearview mirror.

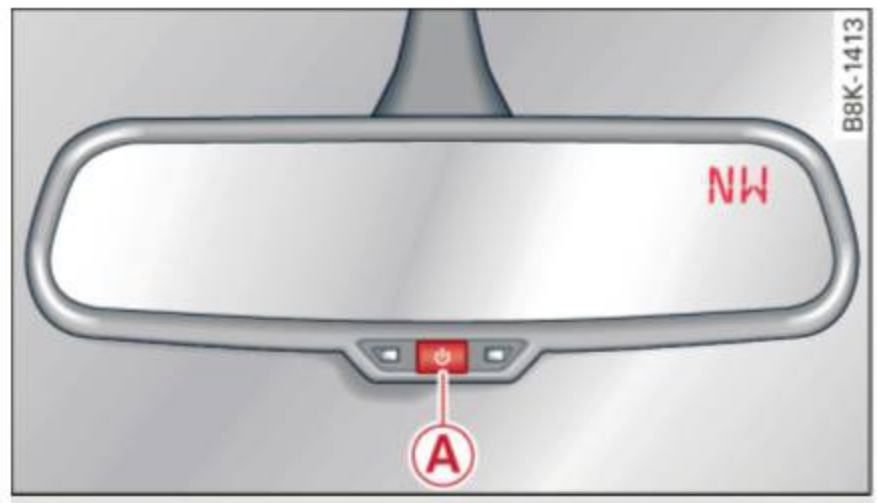


Fig. 64 Rearview mirror: Digital compass activated

- To switch the compass on or off, press and hold the button (A) until the compass display in the mirror ⇨ *fig. 64* appears or disappears.

The digital compass only works when the ignition is on. The directions are indicated with abbreviations: **N** (north), **NE** (northeast), **E** (east), **SE** (southeast), **S** (south), **SW** (southwest), **W** (west), **NW** (northwest).

Tips

To prevent inaccurate compass readings, do not bring any remote controls, electrical devices or metallic objects near the mirror.

Adjusting the magnetic zone

Applies to: vehicles with digital compass

The magnetic zone must be adjusted correctly for the compass to read accurately.

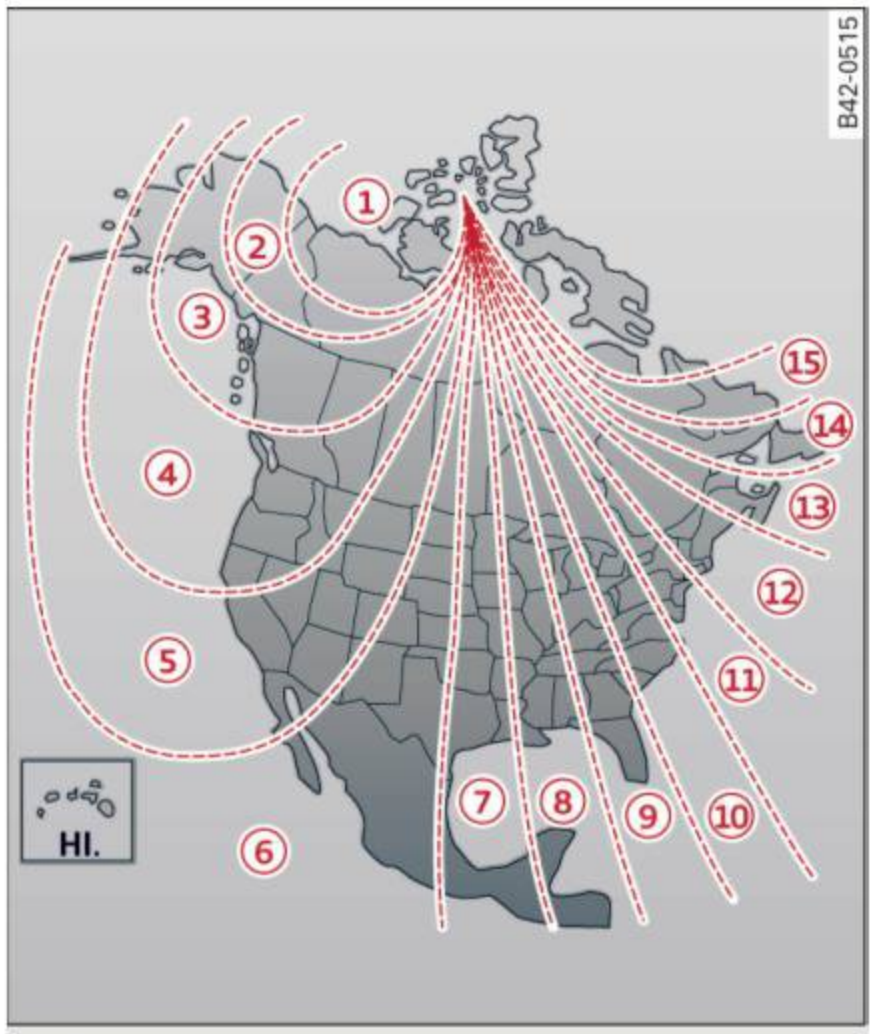


Fig. 65 North America: magnetic deflection zone boundaries

- ▸ Press and hold the button Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 65* until the number of the magnetic zone appears in the rearview mirror.
- ▸ Press the button Ⓐ repeatedly to select the correct magnetic zone. The selection mode turns off after a few seconds.

Calibrating the compass

Applies to: vehicles with digital compass

You must recalibrate the compass if it does not display the correct direction.

- ▸ Press and hold the button Ⓐ until a **C** appears in the rearview mirror.
- ▸ Drive in a circle at about 6 mph (10 km/h) until a direction is displayed in the rearview mirror.

WARNING

– To avoid endangering yourself and other drivers, calibrate the compass in an area where there is no traffic.

– The digital compass is to be used as a directional aid only. Even though you may want to look at it while you are driving, you must still pay attention to traffic, road and weather conditions as well as other possible hazards.

Seats and storage

General information

Why is your seat adjustment so important?

The safety belts and the airbag system can only provide maximum protection if the front seats are correctly adjusted.

There are various ways of adjusting the front seats to provide safe and comfortable support for the driver and the front passenger. Adjust your seat properly so that:

– you can easily and quickly reach all the switches and controls in the instrument panel
– your body is properly supported thus reducing physical stress and fatigue
– the safety belts and airbag system can offer maximum protection ⇨ *page 130*.

In the following sections, you will see exactly how you can best adjust your seats.

There are special regulations and instructions for installing a child safety seat on the front passenger's seat. Always follow the information regarding child safety provided in ⇨ *page 150, Child safety*.

WARNING

Refer to ⇨ *page 111, Driving safety* for important information, tips, suggestions and warnings that you should read and follow for your own safety and the safety of your passengers.

WARNING

Incorrect seating position of the driver and all other passengers can result in serious personal injury.

– Always keep your feet on the floor when the vehicle is in motion — never put your feet on top of the instrument panel, out of the window or on top of the seat cushion. This applies especially to the passengers. If your seating position is incorrect, you increase the risk of injury in the case of sudden braking or an accident. If the airbag inflates and the seating position is incorrect, this could result in personal injury or even death.
– It is important for both the driver and front passenger to keep a distance of at least 10 inches (25 cm) between themselves and the steering wheel and/or instrument panel. If you're sitting any closer than this, the airbag system cannot protect you properly. In addition, the front seats and head restraints must be adjusted to your body height so that they can give you maximum protection.
– Always try to keep as much distance as possible between yourself and the steering wheel or instrument panel.
– Do not adjust the driver's or front passenger's seat while the vehicle is moving. Your seat may move unexpectedly, causing sudden loss of vehicle control and personal injury. If you adjust your seat while the vehicle is moving, you are out of position.

Driver's seat

The correct seat position is important for safe and relaxed driving.

We recommend that you adjust the driver's seat in the following manner:

▸ Adjust the seat in fore and aft direction so that you can easily push the pedals to the floor while keeping your knees slightly bent ⇨ ⚠ *in Why is your seat adjustment so important? on page 57*.
▸ Adjust the seatback so that when you sit with your back against the seatback, you can still grasp the top of the steering wheel.
▸ Applies to vehicles with adjustable head restraints: Adjust the head restraint so the upper edge is as even as possible with the top of your head. If that is not possible, try to adjust the head restraint so that it is as close to this position as possible ⇨ *page 60*.

WARNING

Never place any objects in the driver's footwell. An object could get into the pedal area and interfere with pedal function. In case of ▶

sudden braking or an accident, you would not be able to brake or accelerate.

Front passenger's seat

Always move the front passenger seat into the rearmost position.

To avoid contact with the airbag while it is deploying, do not sit any closer to the instrument panel than necessary and always wear the three-point safety belt provided adjusted correctly. We recommend that you adjust the passenger's seat in the following manner:

- Bring the backrest up to an (almost) upright position. **Do not** ride with the seat reclined.
- Applies to vehicles with adjustable head restraints: Adjust the head restraint so the upper edge is as even as possible with the top of your head. If that is not possible, try to adjust the head restraint so that it is as close to this position as possible ⇨ *page 60*.
- Place your feet on the floor in front of the passenger's seat.

Front seats

Power seat adjustment

Applies to: vehicles with power adjustable seats

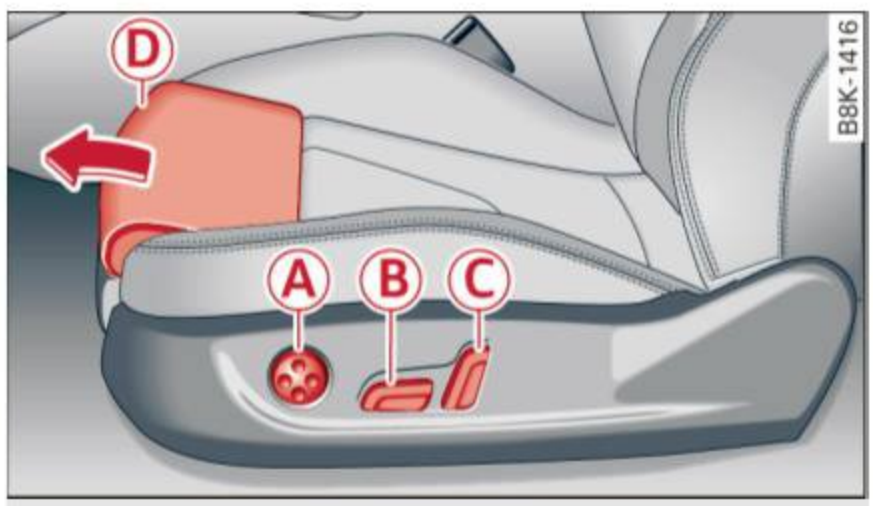


Fig. 66 Front seats: power seat adjustment

Controls

Ⓐ - Adjusting the lumbar support*: press the button in the corresponding position ⇨ ⚠.

Ⓑ - Moving the seat up/down: press the button up/down ⇨ ⚠.

Ⓑ - Moving the seat forward/back: press the button forward/back ⇨ ⚠.

Ⓒ - Adjusting the backrest angle: press the button forward/back ⇨ ⚠.

Ⓒ - Raising/lowering* the head restraints: press the button up/down ⇨ ⚠.

Ⓓ - Lengthening/shortening the upper thigh support*: lift the handle. A spring moves the front seat cushion forward ⇨ ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

- Never adjust the driver's or front passenger's seat while the vehicle is moving. If you do this while the vehicle is moving, you will be out of position. Always adjust the driver's or front passenger's seat when the vehicle is not moving.
- Be careful when adjusting the seat height. Check to see that no one is in the way, or serious injury could result!
- Because the seats can be electrically adjusted with the ignition off or with the ignition key removed, never leave children unattended in the vehicle. Unsupervised use of the electric seat adjustments may cause serious injury.
- To reduce the risk of injury in the case of sudden braking or accident, front passengers must never ride in a moving vehicle with the backrest reclined. Safety belts and the airbag system only offer maximum protection when the backrest is upright and the safety belts are properly positioned on the body. The more the backrest is reclined, the greater the risk of personal injury from an incorrect seating position and improperly positioned safety belts.

Power easy entry function

Applies to: vehicles with power adjustable seats

The easy entry function makes it easier for the rear passengers to enter and leave the vehicle.

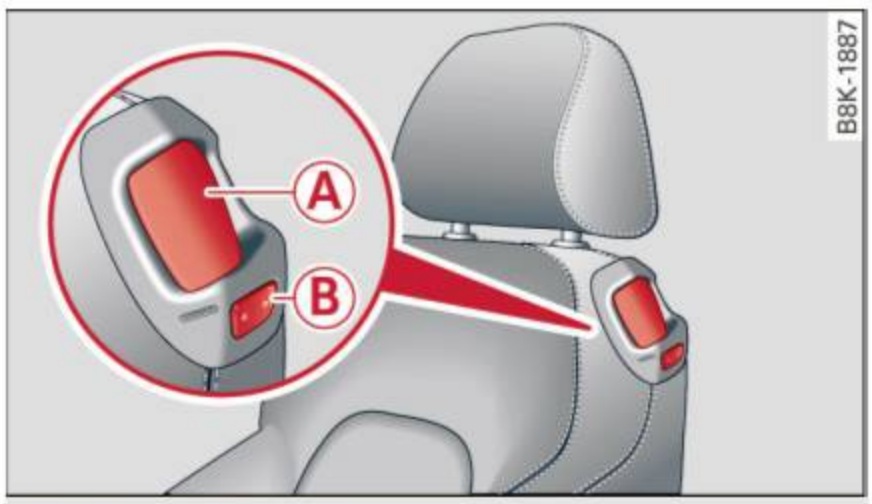


Fig. 67 Comfort seats*: easy entry controls

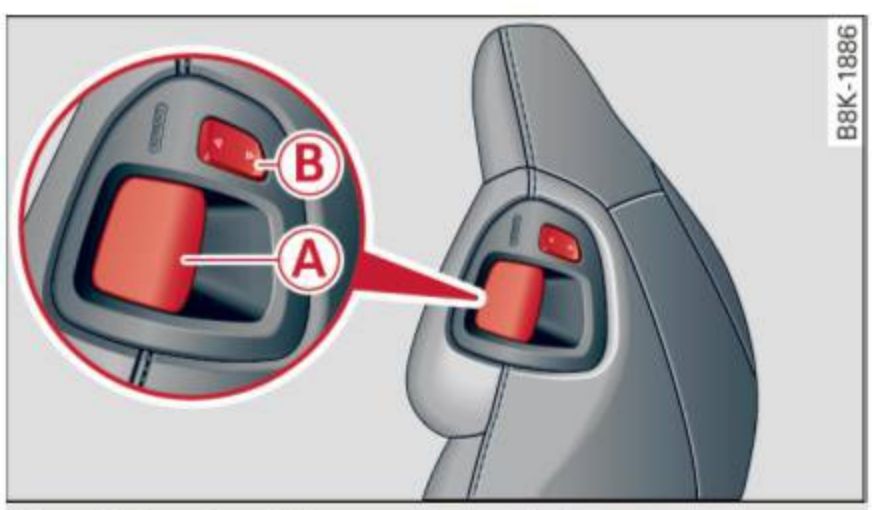


Fig. 68 Sport seats*: easy entry controls

- ▸ To fold the front seat backrests forward/back, lift the latch Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 67* or ⇨ *fig. 68* and fold the backrest forward.
- ▸ To move the front seats forward/back, press and hold the Ⓑ button until the seat has reached the desired position.

When the front seats are moved forward, their original position is stored. When it is moved back, the seat automatically stops in this position. To move the seat even further back, you have to release the switch Ⓑ and reactivate it.

Applies to vehicles with adjustable head restraints: The head restraints from the front seats, depending on the seat height that has been set, are automatically retracted when the seatbacks are folded down. They return to their original position again when the seatbacks for the front seats are raised.

Tips

With the driver's or passenger's door closed, the corresponding switch to move the seat is inoperative.

Seat adjustments in MMI

Applies to: vehicles with seat memory and MMI

The passenger's seat can be adjusted to various positions by the driver.

Convenience side view

- ▸ Select: CAR function button > **Seat adjustment** > **Passenger's seat** > **Convenience side view**. Or
- ▸ Select: CAR function button > **Car systems*** control button > **Vehicle settings** > **Seats** > **Passenger's seat** > **Convenience side view**.
- ▸ Continue to press the control knob until the adjustment process is complete.

Seat symmetry

- ▸ Select: Function button CAR > **Seat adjustment** > **Passenger's seat** > **Seat symmetry**. Or
- ▸ Select: CAR function button > **Car systems*** control button > **Vehicle settings** > **Seats** > **Passenger's seat** > **Align with driver's seat**.
- ▸ Continue to press the control knob until the adjustment process is complete.

Using the **Convenience side view** function, the passenger's seat is adjusted so that the driver has the best possible view to the right. When the Convenience side view is set, the specific position of the driver's seat is taken into consideration.

Using the **Seat symmetry** function, the passenger's seat can be moved to the same position as the driver's seat. The settings for the driver's seat are imported and set automatically.

Center armrest

The center armrest can be adjusted to several levels.

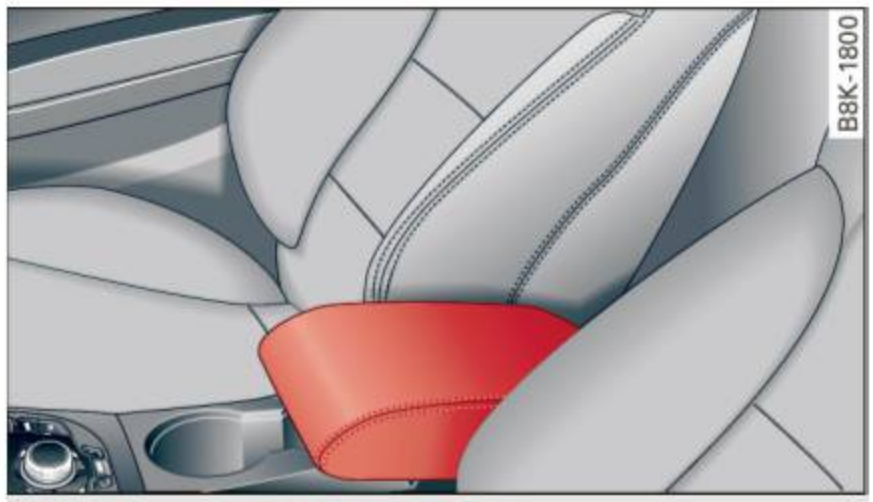


Fig. 69 Armrest between the driver's/front passenger's seats.

Adjusting the center armrest

- ▸ To adjust the angle, raise the armrest from the starting position ⇨ *fig. 69* detent by detent.
- ▸ To bring the armrest back into the starting position, raise it out of the top detent and fold it back down.

The armrest can slide forward and back.

Head restraints

Front head restraints

Applies to: vehicles with adjustable head restraints

Head restraints that are adjusted according to body size, along with the seat belt, offer effective protection.

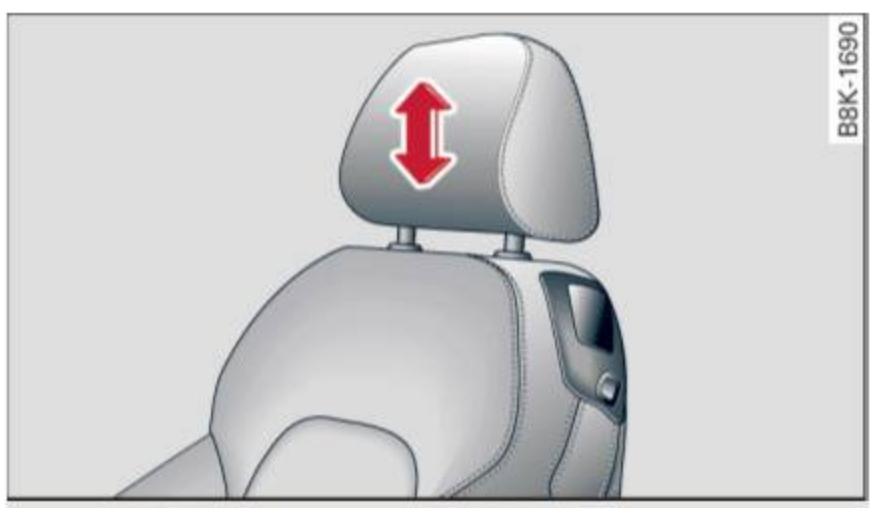


Fig. 70 Front seat: adjusting the manual head restraints

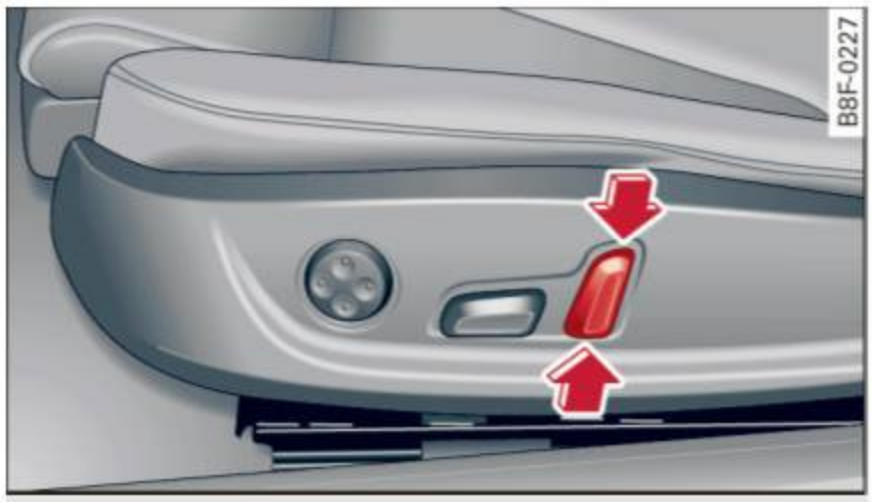


Fig. 71 Front seat: adjusting the power head restraint

Adjust the head restraint so the upper edge is as even as possible with the top of your head. If that is not possible, try to adjust the head restraint so that it is as close to this position as possible ⇨ *page 60*.

- ▸ To adjust the height of the manual head restraint*, grip the head restraint on the sides with both hands and slide it up/down until it locks into place ⇨ *fig. 70*.
- ▸ To adjust the height of the power head restraint*, press the button up/down ⇨ *fig. 71*.

Refer to ⇨ *page 114, Proper adjustment of head restraints* for guidelines on how to adjust the height of the front head restraints to suit the occupant's body size.

WARNING

- – Driving without head restraints or with head restraints that are not properly adjusted increases the risk of serious or fatal neck injury dramatically.
- – Read and heed all WARNINGS ⇨ *page 114, Proper adjustment of head restraints*.

Tips

- – To prevent the head restraints from running into the headliner, they retract automatically when moving the seat forward or upward.
- – Correctly adjusted head restraints and safety belts are an extremely effective combination of safety features.

Memory function

Description

Applies to: vehicles with memory function

The memory function allows you to quickly and easily store and recall personal seating profiles for the driver. The memory function is operated through the master key and the memory buttons in the driver's door.

The driver's seating profile is stored and assigned to the master key each time the vehicle is locked. When you open the door, the seat profile is automatically recalled. If two people use one vehicle, it is recommended that each person always uses "their own" master key.

Up to 2 seat profiles can be stored in the memory buttons in the driver's door. Once they are stored, these seat profiles can be selected at any time.

In addition to the driver's seat settings, you can also store and access the exterior mirror adjustment settings* using the remote control key or memory button.

Remote control key

Applies to: vehicles with seat memory

To assign the driver's seat settings to the remote control key when locking the vehicle, the function must be activated in the radio or MMI*

- Select: CAR function button > **Seat adjustment** > **Driver's seat** > **Remote control key** > **on**. Or
- Select: CAR function button > **Car systems*** control button > **Vehicle settings** > **Seats** > **Driver's seat** > **Remote control key** > **On**.

Tips

If you do not want another driver's settings to be assigned to the remote key, switch off the memory function using the radio or MMI* or the ON/OFF button ⇨ *page 61*.

Memory buttons

Applies to: vehicles with seat memory



Fig. 72 Driver's door: memory function buttons

The memory buttons are located in the driver's door.

Switching the memory function on/off

- Press the ON/OFF button to switch the memory function on/off. The word **OFF** lights up when the memory function is switched off. Seat profiles are neither stored nor recalled.

Storing a seat profile

- Press the SET button. When the word **SET** lights up, the memory is ready to store settings.
- Press a memory button (1 or 2) briefly. A tone confirms that the settings were stored.

Accessing a seat profile

- If the driver's door is open and the ignition is switched off, press the memory button.
- If the driver's door is closed or the ignition is switched on, press and hold the memory button until the seat adjustment is complete.

WARNING

– For safety reasons, the seat setting can only be recalled when the vehicle is stationary - otherwise you risk having an accident.
– In an emergency the recall procedure can be cancelled by pressing the ON/OFF switch or by tapping the memory buttons.

Ashtray



Fig. 73 Center console: ashtray

Opening/closing

- To open the ashtray, slide the cover up ⇨ *fig. 73*.
- To close the ashtray, press down on the cover.

Emptying the ashtray

- To remove the insert, slide the latch to the right ⇨ *fig. 73* -arrow-.
- To install the insert, press it down into the mount.

WARNING

Never put waste paper in the ashtray. Hot ashes or other hot objects in the ashtray could set waste paper on fire.

Cigarette lighter



Fig. 74 Front center console: cigarette lighter

- Press the cigarette lighter in.
- Remove the cigarette lighter when it pops out.

WARNING

The cigarette lighter only works when the ignition is switched on. Incorrect usage can lead to serious injuries or burns. For this reason, children should never be left unattended in the vehicle because this increases the risk of injury.

Note

The cigarette lighter can be damaged if you connect electrical accessories to it.

Storing

General overview

WARNING

– Always remove objects from the instrument panel. Any items not put away could slide around inside the vehicle while driving or when accelerating or when applying the brakes or when driving around a corner.
– When you are driving make sure that anything you may have placed in the center console or other storage locations cannot fall out into the footwells. In case of sudden braking you would not be able to brake or accelerate.

Cupholder



Fig. 75 Center console: front cupholder

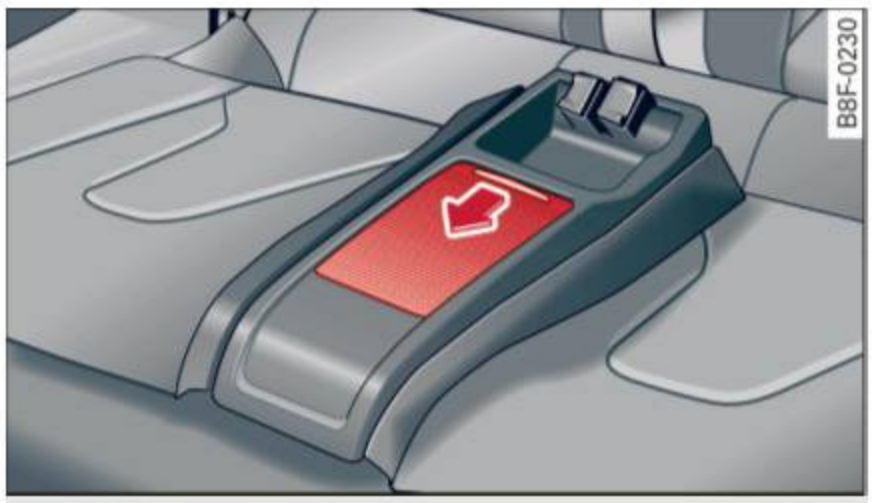


Fig. 76 Cupholder* in the rear

Front beverage holders

▸ You can accommodate two beverages in this storage ⇨ *fig. 75*.

A maximum of two beverages can be placed in the rear beverage holders*.

WARNING

Spilled hot liquid can cause an accident and personal injury.

– Never carry any beverage containers with hot liquids, such as hot coffee or hot tea, in the vehicle while it is moving. In case of an accident, sudden braking or other vehicle movement, hot liquid could spill, causing scalding burns. Spilled hot liquid can also cause an accident and personal injury.
– Use only soft cups in the cupholder. Hard cups and glasses can cause injury in an accident.
– Never use the cupholder or adapter as an ashtray - risk of fire.

Note

Only drink containers with lids should be carried in the cupholder. Liquid could spill out and damage your vehicle's electronic equipment or stain the upholstery, etc.

Glove compartment

The glove compartment is illuminated and can be locked.



Fig. 77 Glove compartment

▸ To open the glove compartment, pull the handle in the direction of the arrow ⇨ *fig. 77* and swing the cover down to open.
▸ To close the glove compartment, push the glove compartment lid upward until the lock engages.

The glove compartment can be locked using the mechanical key ⇨ *page 29*.

On the right side in the glove compartment is a holder with the key body into which the emergency key must be clipped to be able to start the vehicle.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of personal injury in an accident or sudden stop, always keep the glove compartment closed while driving.

Luggage compartment

General information

WARNING

Read and follow the important safety precautions on ⇨ *page 116, Storing cargo correctly*.

Enlarging the luggage compartment

The backrests can be folded forward either separately or together.

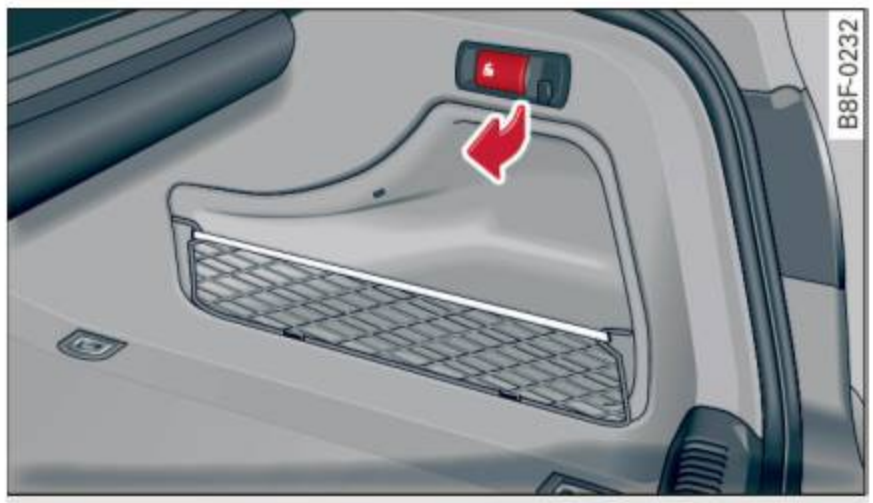


Fig. 78 Luggage compartment: release lever

Folding the backrest forward

- ▸ Pull the release lever in the direction of the arrow to fold the backrest forward.

Folding the backrest back into the upright position

- ▸ Fold the backrest back up again until it latches securely ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

- – The backrest must be securely latched in position so that no items contained in the luggage compartment can slide forward upon sudden braking.
- – Always check whether the latch is fully engaged by pulling the seatback forward.
- – Never allow safety belts to become damaged by being caught in door or seat hardware.
- – Torn or frayed safety belts can tear and damaged belt hardware can break in a crash. Inspect the belts periodically. Belts showing damage to webbing, bindings, buckles, or retractors must be replaced.

Note

Slide the belt guide on the outside safety belt all the way up before folding the backrest back forward. Make sure the seat belt is not pinched or damaged when the rear seat backrest if folded back. Other objects should be removed from the rear seat bench to protect the seatback from damage.

Tie-downs

The luggage compartment is equipped with four tie-down rings to secure luggage and other items.



Fig. 79 Luggage compartment: tie-downs

- ▸ Secure objects using elastic cords attached to the tie-downs ⇨ *fig. 79*.
- ▸ Read and heed all WARNINGS ⇨ *page 116, Storing cargo correctly*.

Securing the ski sack

Applies to: vehicles with ski sack

Long objects such as skis or snowboards can be transported in the ski sack.



Fig. 80 Luggage compartment: Securing the ski sack

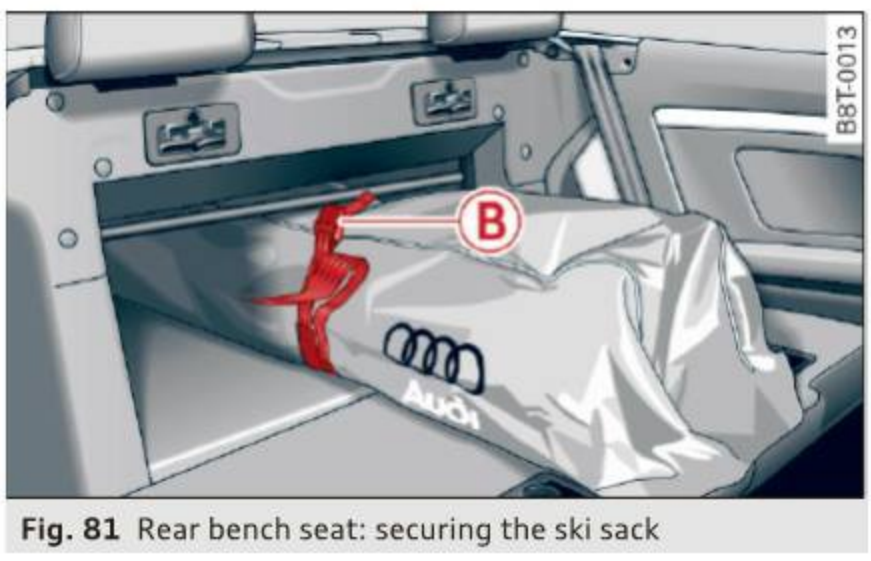


Fig. 81 Rear bench seat: securing the ski sack

- ▸ Fold both backrests forward ⇨ *page 64*.
- ▸ Slide the ski sack from the luggage compartment through the opening ⇨ ⚠ with the zipper at the rear.
- ▸ To secure the ski sack in the luggage compartment, hang the hooks Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 80* in the rear tie-downs.
- ▸ Tighten the strap Ⓑ ⇨ *fig. 81* on the ski sack to prevent the objects in the sack from sliding.

⚠ WARNING

- The ski sack is intended only for the transportation of skis and other light objects. To reduce the risk of serious personal injury, never transport heavy or pointed objects in the ski sack.
- When braking rapidly or during an accident, the load could be displaced and cause injury to occupants.
- Sharp edges on the load must be covered for protection. Always fasten the belt tightly around the sack and its contents ⇨ *fig. 81*.
- For safety reasons, do not transport more than two pairs of skis in the ski sack.
- You must secure the ski sack with the strap after loading.
- Make sure that all objects you are transporting with the backrests folded forward are secured. Otherwise they could slide around during sudden braking maneuvers and cause injuries.

Tips

- Never stow the ski sack away when it is still wet or damp (for example, snow melting from skis). Allow it to dry completely before stowing it away.
- When transporting skis or snowboards, tighten the securing strap between the bindings.
- Position skis in the ski sack with the pointed ends facing the front and ski poles with the pointed ends facing the rear.

Warm and cold

Climate control system

Description

The climate control system warms, cools and adds humidity to the air in the vehicle interior. It is the most effective when the windows and power top are closed. If there is a build-up of heat inside the vehicle, ventilation can help to speed up the cooling process.

In all heating mode functions except *defrost*, the blower only switches to a higher speed once the engine coolant has reached a certain temperature.

Condensation from the cooling system can drip and form a puddle of water under the vehicle. This is normal and does not mean there is a leak.

Pollutant filter

The pollutant filter removes pollutants such as dust and pollen from the air.

The air pollutants filter must be changed at the intervals specified in your Warranty & Maintenance booklet, so that the air conditioner can properly work.

If you drive your vehicle in an area with high air pollution, the filter may need to be changed more frequently than specified in your Audi Warranty & Maintenance booklet. If in doubt, ask your authorized Audi Service Advisor for advice.

Key coded settings

The climate control settings are automatically stored and assigned to the remote control key that is in use. These settings are different when the power top is open or closed.

WARNING

Reduced visibility is dangerous and can cause accidents.

- For safe driving it is very important that all windows be free of ice, snow and condensation.
- Completely familiarize yourself with the proper use and function of the heating and ventilation system and especially how to defog and defrost the windows.
- Never use the windshield wiper/washer system in freezing weather until you have warmed the windshield first, using the heating and ventilation system. The washer solution may freeze on the windshield and reduce visibility.

Note

- If you suspect that the air conditioner has been damaged, switch the system off to avoid further damage and have it inspected by a qualified dealership.
- Repairs to the Audi air conditioner require special technical knowledge and special tools. Contact an authorized Audi dealer for assistance.

For the sake of the environment

By reducing the amount of fuel you use, you also reduce the amount of pollutants emitted into the air.

Tips

- Keep the air intake slots (in front of the windshield) free from ice, snow and debris in order to maintain the proper function of the climate control system.
- The energy management system may switch the seat heating* or rear window defroster off temporarily. These systems are available again as soon as the energy balance has been restored.
- Air escapes through vents under the rear window. When placing items of clothing on the luggage compartment cover, ensure that the openings are not covered.

Operation

We recommend pressing the AUTO button and setting the temperature to 72 °F (22 °C).

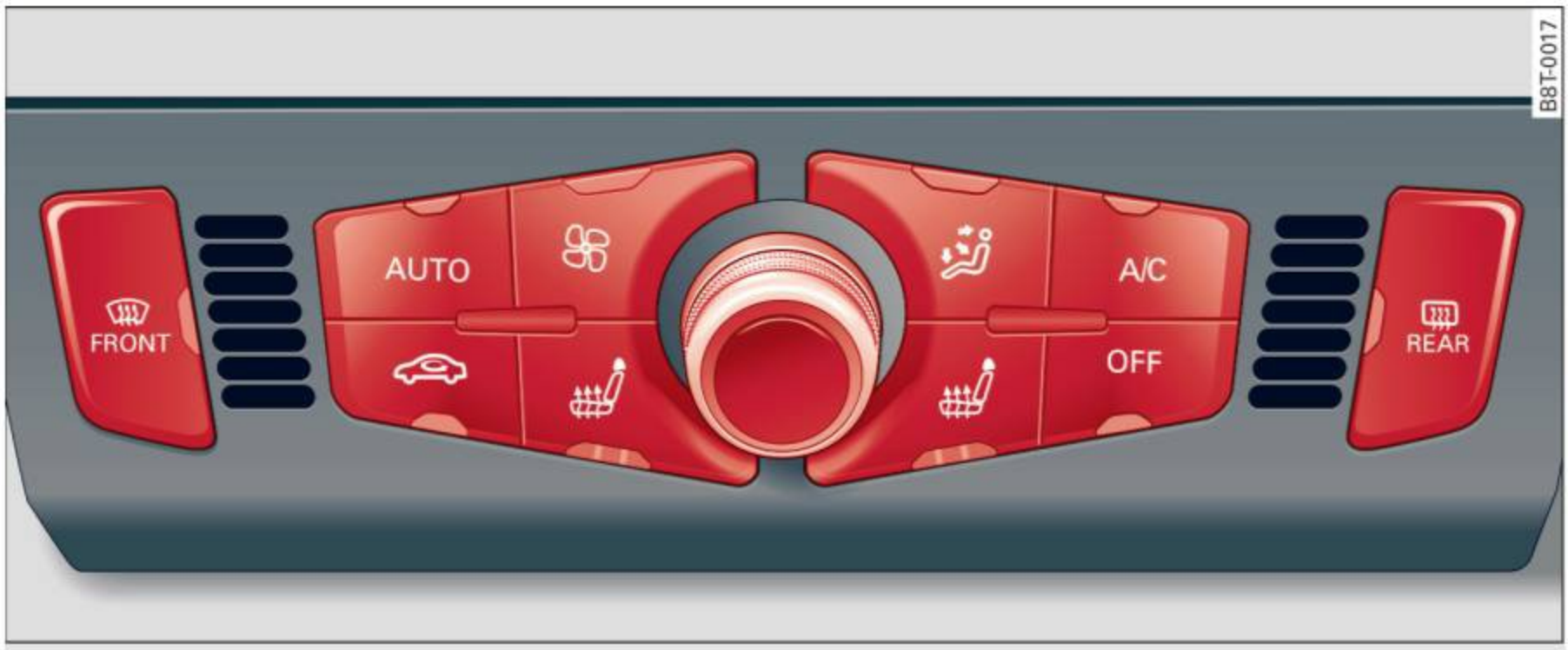


Fig. 82 Automatic climate control system: control



Fig. 83 3-zone deluxe automatic climate control*: controls

Press the buttons to turn the functions on or off. Use the dials to adjust the temperature, the blower speed and the air distribution. The LED in a button will light up when the function is switched on. The settings are displayed for a few seconds in the radio or MMI* display.

In vehicles with a 3-zone deluxe automatic climate control systems*, the driver and front passenger side can be adjusted separately. The settings are also displayed in the climate control system display.

OFF Switching the climate control system on/off

The OFF button switches the climate control system on or off. It also switches on when you press the knob. Airflow from outside is blocked when the climate control system is switched off.

A/C Switching cooling mode on/off

The air is not cooled and humidity is not removed when cooling mode is switched off. This can cause fog on the windows. The cooling mode is switched off automatically at low outside temperatures. ▶

Switching recirculation mode on/off

In recirculation mode, the air inside the vehicle is circulated and filtered. This prevents the unfiltered air outside the vehicle from entering the vehicle interior. We recommend switching recirculation mode on when driving through a tunnel or when sitting in traffic ⇨ ⚠.

The AUTO button or FRONT button switches recirculation mode off.

AUTO Switching automatic mode on

Automatic mode maintains a constant temperature inside the vehicle. Air temperature, airflow and air distribution are controlled automatically.

Adjusting the temperature

Temperatures between 60 °F (+16 °C) and 84 °F (+28 °C) can be set. Outside of this range, **LO** or **HI** will appear in the climate control system display. At both of these settings, the climate control system runs continuously at maximum cooling or heating power. There is no temperature regulation.

Adjusting the airflow

You can adjust the airflow manually to suit your needs. To have the airflow regulated automatically, press the AUTO button.

Adjusting the air distribution

You can manually select the vents where the air will flow. To have the air distribution regulated automatically, press the AUTO button.

Adjusting seat heating*

Pressing the button switches the seat heating on at the highest setting (level 3). The LEDs indicate the temperature level. To reduce the temperature, press the button again. To switch the seat heating off, press the button repeatedly until the LED turns off.

After 10 minutes, the seat heating automatically switches from level 3 to level 2.

Adjusting seat ventilation*

Pressing the button switches the seat ventilation on at the highest setting (level 3). The LEDs indicate the ventilation level. To reduce the ventilation level, press the button again. To switch the seat ventilation off, press the button repeatedly until the LED turns off.

FRONT Switch the defroster on/off

The windshield and side windows are defrosted or cleared of condensation as quickly as possible. The maximum amount of air flows mainly from the vents below the windshield. Recirculation mode switches off. The temperature should be set to 72 °F (22 °C) or higher. The temperature is controlled automatically.

The AUTO button switches the defroster off.

REAR Switching rear window heater on/off

The rear window heater only operates when the engine is running. It switches off automatically after a few minutes, depending on the outside temperature.

To prevent the rear window heater from switching off automatically, press and hold the REAR button for more than 2 seconds. This remains stored until the ignition is switched off.

Air vents

You can open and close the center and rear air vents using the thumbwheels. The levers adjust the direction of the airflow from the vents.

In vehicles with a 3-zone deluxe automatic climate control system*, you can adjust the air temperature in the rear by turning the thumbwheel toward the red side to make it warmer or toward the blue side to make it cooler.

⚠ WARNING

- Do not use the recirculation for extended periods of time. The windows could fog up since no fresh air can enter the vehicle. If the windows fog up, press the air recirculation button again immediately to switch off the air recirculation function or select defrost.
- Individuals with reduced sensitivity to pain or temperature could develop burns when using the seat heating function. To reduce ▶

the risk of injury, these individuals should not use seat heating.

Note

To avoid damage to the heating elements in the seats, do not kneel on the seats or place heavy loads on a small area of the seat.

Setup

The basic climate control settings can be adjusted in the radio or MMI.*

- Select: CAR function button > **A/C** control button. Or
- Select: CAR function button > **Car systems*** control button > **AC**.

Automatic recirculation*

When switched on, automatic recirculation controls the recirculation mode automatically. If the windows fog up, press the FRONT button.

Synchronization*

When synchronization is switched on, the same settings are applied to both the driver and front passenger, except for the seat heating/ventilation*. Synchronization switches off when you adjust the settings on the front passenger's side.

You can also switch synchronization on by pressing and holding the knob on the driver's side.

Supplementary heater

The supplementary heater warms the interior of vehicles with flexible fuel engines more quickly. The supplementary heater is controlled automatically in the **Auto** setting.

Upper cabin heating

Applies to: vehicles with upper cabin heating

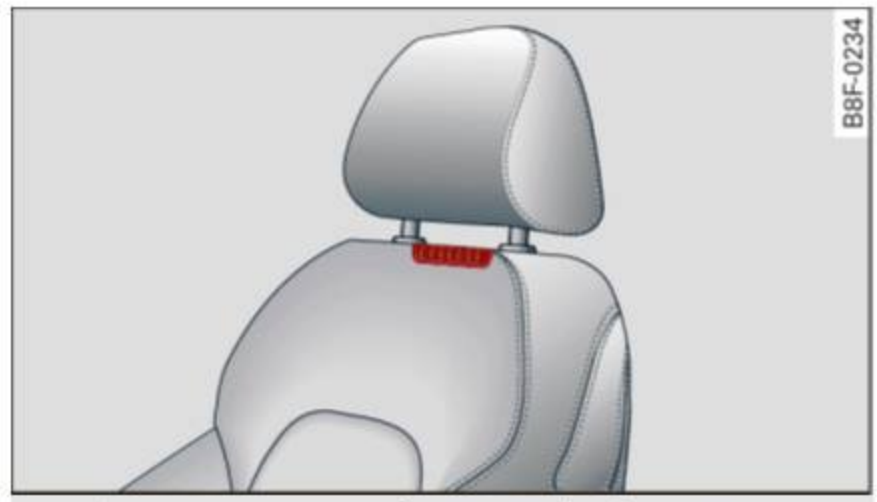


Fig. 84 Driver's seat: vent for upper cabin heating



Fig. 85 Driver's seat: upper cabin heating button

The upper cabin area of the front seats can be heated at three levels when the engine is running.

- Press the button to switch the upper cabin heating on. The LED illuminates.
- Press the button repeatedly until the LED goes out to switch the upper cabin heating off.

WARNING

- Individuals with reduced sensitivity to pain or temperature could develop burns when using the upper cabin heating. To reduce the risk of injury, these individuals should not use upper cabin heating.
- The output from the upper cabin heating system may be very hot temporarily if the air vents in the seats ⇨ *fig. 84* are covered by clothing or other objects when the system is switched on. This can cause burns on unprotected skin exposed directly to the vents.

Tips

– Upper cabin heating always switches on at the highest level. You can reduce the heat output with the button and increase it with the button as needed.
– Energy management ⇨ *page 173* may reduce the heat output if the battery voltage is too low.

Driving

Steering

Manually adjustable steering wheel

The steering wheel position is fully adjustable up and down and forward and back.



Fig. 86 Lever under the steering column

First, adjust the driver's seat correctly.

- ▸ Pull the lever ⇨ *fig. 86* ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Move the steering wheel to the desired position.
- ▸ Push the lever against the steering column until it locks.

There must be at least 10 inches (25 cm) between your chest and the center of the steering wheel. If you cannot sit more than 10 inches (25 cm) from the steering wheel, see if adaptive equipment is available to help you reach the pedals and increase the distance from the steering wheel.

For detailed information on how to adjust the driver's seat, see ⇨ *page 58*.

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of steering wheel adjustment and improper seating position can cause serious personal injury.

– Adjust the steering wheel column only when the vehicle is not moving to prevent loss of vehicle control.
– Adjust the driver's seat or steering wheel so that there is a minimum of 10 inches (25 cm) between your chest and the steering wheel ⇨ *page 112, fig. 128*. If you cannot maintain this minimum distance, the airbag system cannot protect you properly.
– If physical limitations prevent you from sitting 10 inches (25 cm) or more from the steering wheel, check with your authorized Audi dealer to see if adaptive equipment is available.
– If the steering wheel is aligned with your face, the supplemental driver's airbag cannot provide as much protection in an accident. Always make sure that the steering wheel is aligned with your chest.
– Always hold the steering wheel with your hands at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions to reduce the risk of personal injury if the driver's airbag deploys.
– Never hold the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position or with your hands inside the steering wheel rim or on the steering wheel hub. Holding the steering wheel the wrong way can cause serious injuries to the hands, arms and head if the driver's airbag deploys.

Ignition lock

Starting engine with the key

Applies to: vehicles with ignition lock

The ignition is switched on and the engine started with the ignition key.



Fig. 87 Ignition key

Starting the engine

- ▸ Insert the key into the ignition lock.
- ▸ Step on the brake pedal and move the selector lever to the P or N position.
- ▸ Press the key ⇨ *fig. 87* - the engine will start. ▶

Switching the ignition on/off

If you would like to switch the ignition on without starting the engine, follow these steps:

- ▸ Insert the key into the ignition lock.
- ▸ Press the key briefly **without** pressing the brake pedal.
- ▸ To switch the ignition off, press the key again.

When starting the engine, major electrical loads are switched off temporarily.

You can only remove the key with the ignition switched off.

If the engine should not start immediately, the starting process is automatically stopped after a short time. Repeat starting procedure.

WARNING

- – Never allow the engine to run in confined spaces - danger of asphyxiation.
- – Never remove the ignition key from the ignition look while the vehicle is moving. Otherwise, the steering lock could suddenly engage and you would not be able to steer the vehicle.
- – Always take the key with you whenever you leave your vehicle. Otherwise, the engine could be started or electrical equipment such as the power windows could be operated. This can lead to serious injury.
- – Never leave children or persons requiring assistance unattended in the vehicle. The doors can be locked using the remote transmitter, preventing people from escaping from the vehicle on their own in the event of an emergency. Depending on the time of year, people inside the vehicle can be exposed to very high or very low temperatures.

Note

Avoid high engine rpm, full throttle and heavy engine loads until the engine has reached operating temperature - otherwise you risk engine damage.

For the sake of the environment

Do not let the engine run while parked to warm up. Begin driving immediately. This reduces unnecessary emissions.

Tips

- – If the key cannot be removed from the ignition lock, you have to pull the mechanical key out of the master key in order to be able to lock the vehicle ⇨ *page 30*.
- – Some noise after starting the engine is normal and is no cause for concern.
- – If you leave the vehicle with the ignition switched on, the ignition will switch off after a certain period of time. Please note that electrical equipment such as exterior lights will switch off as well when that happens.

Starting the vehicle with the emergency key

Applies to: vehicles with ignition lock

You can use the emergency key as an ignition key in an emergency.

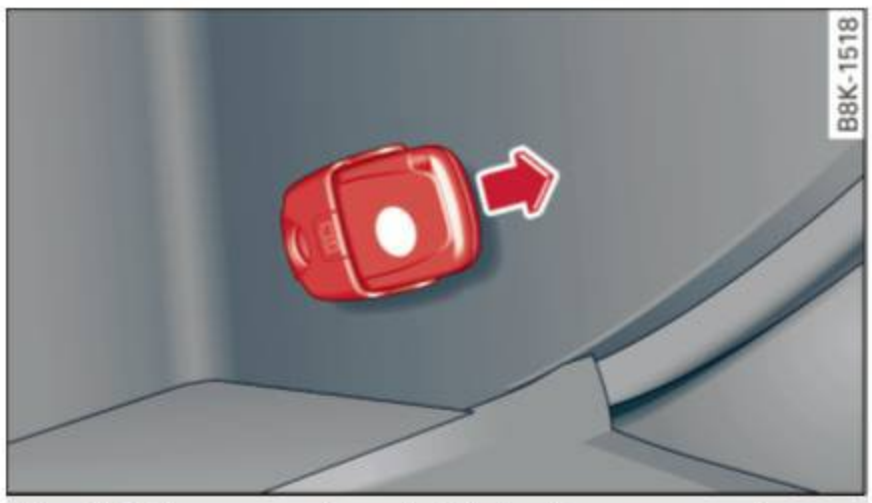


Fig. 88 Glove compartment: Adapter for emergency key

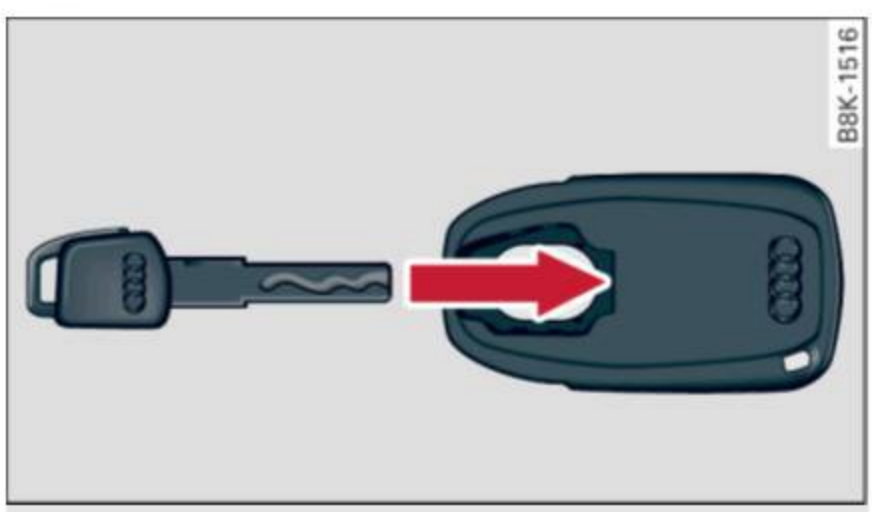


Fig. 89 Insert emergency key into the adapter

- ▸ Take the adapter for the emergency key out of the glove compartment ⇨ *fig. 88*. ▶

- ▸ Push the emergency key ⇨ *fig. 89* fully into the adapter. Make sure that the Audi rings are facing up.
- ▸ Press the emergency key in the adapter down until it latches audibly.
- ▸ Insert the adapter with the emergency key forward into the ignition switch. The engine can now be started as usual.

Tips

The emergency key should not be stored inside the vehicle.

Stopping the engine

Applies to: vehicles with ignition lock

- ▸ Bring the vehicle to a full stop.
- ▸ *Automatic transmission:* Move the selector lever to the P or N position.
- ▸ Press on the ignition key. The engine is turned off.
- ▸ You can now remove the key.

Steering lock

The steering locks when you remove the ignition key. The locked steering helps prevent vehicle theft.

Emergency off

If it is necessary in unusual circumstances, the engine can be switched off while the vehicle is moving. The engine will be switched off if you press on the key for an extended period.

WARNING

- Never turn off the engine before the vehicle has come to a complete stop. The full function of the brake booster and the power steering is not guaranteed. You must use more force to turn or brake if necessary. Because you cannot steer and brake as you usually would, this could lead to crashes and serious injuries.
- For safety reasons, you should always park your vehicle with the selector lever in P. Otherwise, the vehicle could inadvertently roll away.
- The radiator fan can continue to run for up to 10 minutes even after you have turned off the engine and removed the ignition key. The radiator fan can also turn on again if the engine coolant heats up because of intense sunlight or heat build-up in the engine compartment.
- Always take the key with you whenever you leave your vehicle. Otherwise, the engine could be started or electrical equipment such as the power windows could be operated. This can lead to serious injury.
- Never leave children or persons requiring assistance unattended in the vehicle. The doors can be locked using the remote transmitter, preventing people from escaping from the vehicle on their own in the event of an emergency. Depending on the time of year, people inside the vehicle can be exposed to very high or very low temperatures.

Note

If the engine has been under heavy load for an extended period, heat builds up in the engine compartment after the engine is switched off - there is a risk of damaging the engine. Allow the engine to run at idle for about two minutes before switching it off.

Convenience key

Starting the engine

Applies to: vehicles with convenience key

The START ENGINE STOP *button switches the ignition on and starts the engine.*



Fig. 90 Center console: START ENGINE STOP button ▶

Starting the engine

- ▸ Step on the brake pedal and move the selector lever to P or N ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Press on the START ENGINE STOP button ⇨ *fig. 90* - the engine will start.

Switching the ignition on/off

If you would like to switch the ignition on without starting the engine, follow these steps:

- ▸ Press the START ENGINE STOP button **without** pressing the brake pedal.
- ▸ To switch the ignition off, press the button again.

If the engine should not start immediately, the starting process is automatically stopped after a short time. Repeat starting procedure.

When starting the engine, major electrical loads are switched off temporarily.

After a cold engine is started, there may be a brief period of increased noise because oil pressure must first build up in the hydraulic valve adjusters. This is normal and not a cause for concern.

⚠ WARNING

- Never allow the engine to run in confined spaces - danger of asphyxiation.
- Never turn off the engine until the vehicle has come to a complete stop.
- Always take the key with you whenever you leave your vehicle. Otherwise, the engine could be started or electrical equipment such as the power windows could be operated. This can lead to serious injury.
- Never leave children or persons requiring assistance unattended in the vehicle. The doors can be locked using the remote transmitter, preventing people from escaping from the vehicle on their own in the event of an emergency. Depending on the time of year, people inside the vehicle can be exposed to very high or very low temperatures.

Note

Avoid high engine rpm, full throttle and heavy engine loads until the engine has reached operating temperature - otherwise you risk engine damage.

For the sake of the environment

Do not let the engine run while parked to warm up. Begin driving immediately. This reduces unnecessary emissions.

Tips

- After starting a cold engine, there may be a brief period of increased noise because the oil pressure must first build up in the hydraulic valve adjusters. This is normal and not a cause for concern.
- If you leave the vehicle with the ignition switched on, the ignition will switch off after a certain period of time. Please note that electrical equipment such as exterior lights will switch off as well when that happens.

Switching engine off

Applies to: vehicles with convenience key

- ▸ Bring your vehicle to a complete stop.
- ▸ Move the selector lever to the P or N position.
- ▸ Press the START ENGINE STOP button ⇨ *page 73, fig. 90*.

Steering lock

The steering locks when you turn the engine off using the START ENGINE STOP button and open the driver's door. The locked steering helps prevent vehicle theft.

Emergency off

If necessary, the engine can be switched off with the selector lever in the R or D/S positions. The engine stops if you press and hold the START ENGINE STOP button at speeds below 6 mph (10 km/h) and press the brake pedal. ▸

WARNING

- Never turn off the engine before the vehicle has come to a complete stop. The full function of the brake booster and the power steering is not guaranteed. You must use more force to turn or brake if necessary. Because you cannot steer and brake as you usually would, this could lead to crashes and serious injuries.
- For safety reasons, you should always park your vehicle with the selector lever in P. Otherwise, the vehicle could inadvertently roll away.
- The radiator fan can continue to run for up to 10 minutes even after you have turned off the engine and removed the ignition key. The radiator fan can also turn on again if the engine coolant heats up because of intense sunlight or heat build-up in the engine compartment.
- Always take the key with you whenever you leave your vehicle. Otherwise, the engine could be started or electrical equipment such as the power windows could be operated. This can lead to serious injury.

Note

If the engine has been under heavy load for an extended period, heat builds up in the engine compartment after the engine is switched off - there is a risk of damaging the engine. Allow the engine to run at idle for about two minutes before switching it off.

Driver messages

Ignition is on

This message appears and a warning tone sounds if you open the driver's door when the ignition is switched on.

No key identified

This message appears when the START ENGINE STOP button is pressed if there is no master key inside the vehicle or if the system does not recognize it. For example, the master key cannot be recognized if it is covered by an object (e.g. aluminum brief case) which *screens* the radio signal. Electronic devices such as cell phones can also interfere with the radio signal.

Press brake pedal to start engine

This message appears if you do not press the brake pedal to start the engine.

Shift to N or P to start engine

This message appears when attempting to start the engine if the selector lever for the automatic transmission is not in the P or N position. The engine can only be started with the selector in these positions.

Is the key in the vehicle?

This message appears if the master key is removed from the vehicle with the engine running. If the master key is no longer in the vehicle, you cannot switch on the ignition after stopping the engine and you also cannot start the engine again. Moreover, you cannot lock the vehicle from the outside with the key.

Shift to P otherwise vehicle can roll away. Doors do not lock if lever is not in P.

This message appears for safety reasons along with a warning signal. It appears if the selector lever for the automatic transmission is not in the P position when switching off the ignition. Move the selector lever to the P position, otherwise the vehicle is not secured against rolling away. You also cannot lock the vehicle using the locking button* on the door handle or using the remote key.

Convenience key defective! Use ignition lock

This message appears if the engine must be started or stopped using the ignition key and not the START ENGINE STOP button.

Electromechanical parking brake

Operation

The electromechanical parking brake replaces the hand brake.

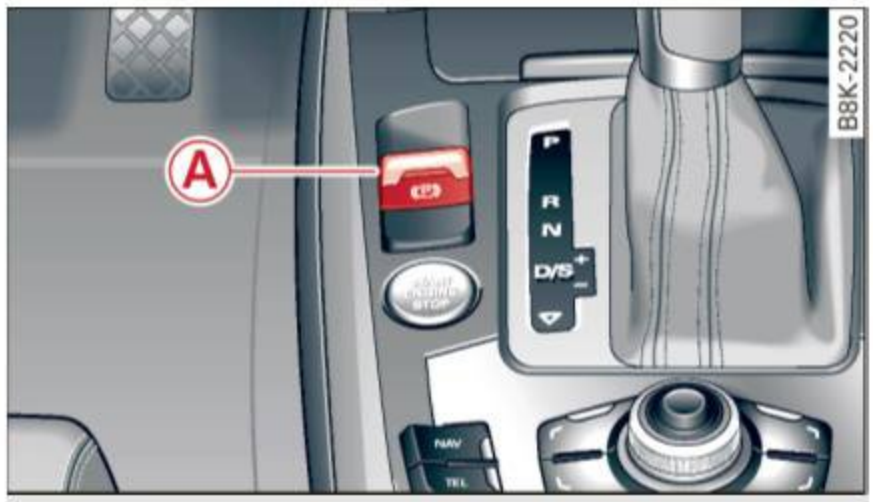


Fig. 91 Center console: Parking brake

- ▸ Pull on the switch Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 91* to apply the parking brake. The indicator lights in the switch and PARK BRAKE (USA models)/Ⓟ (Canada models) in the instrument cluster illuminate.
- ▸ With the ignition switched on, step on the brake pedal or the accelerator pedal and press the switch Ⓐ at the same time to release the parking brake. The indicator lights in the switch and PARK BRAKE (USA models)/Ⓟ (Canada models) in the instrument cluster go out.

Your vehicle is equipped with an electromechanical parking brake. The parking brake is designed to prevent the vehicle from rolling unintentionally and replaces the hand brake.

In addition to the normal functions of a traditional hand brake, the electromechanical parking brake provides various convenience and safety functions.

When starting from rest

– The integral starting assist helps you when driving by automatically releasing the parking brake ⇨ *page 77, Starting from rest*.
– When starting on inclines, the starting assist prevents the vehicle from unintentionally rolling back. The braking force of the parking brake is not released until sufficient driving force has been built up at the wheels.

Emergency brake function

An emergency brake ensures that the vehicle can be slowed down even if the *normal* brakes fail ⇨ *page 77, Emergency braking*.

WARNING

If a drive range is engaged with the vehicle stationary and the engine running, you must in no instance accelerate carelessly. Otherwise the vehicle will start to move immediately - risk of an accident.

Tips

– If the parking brake is applied with the ignition switched off, the indicator lights in the switch and PARK (USA models)/Ⓟ (Canada models) in the instrument cluster will go out after a certain period of time.
– Occasional noises when the parking brake is applied and released are normal and are not a cause for concern.
– When the vehicle is parked, the parking brake goes through a self-test cycle at regular intervals. Any associated noises are normal.

Parking

- ▸ Press the brake pedal to stop the vehicle.
- ▸ Pull the switch Ⓐ ⇨ *page 76, fig. 91* to set the parking brake.
- ▸ Move the selector lever to P.
- ▸ Turn the engine off ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ When on inclines or declines, turn the steering wheel so that the vehicle will roll into the curb if it begins to move.

WARNING

– When you leave your vehicle - even if only briefly - always remove the ignition key. This applies particularly when children remain in the vehicle. Otherwise the children could start the engine, release the parking brake or operate electrical equipment (e.g. power windows). There is the risk of an accident. ▶

– When the vehicle is locked, no one - particularly not children should remain in the vehicle. Locked doors make it more difficult for emergency workers to get into the vehicle - putting lives at risk.

Starting from rest

The starting assist function ensures that the parking brake is released automatically upon starting.

Stopping and applying parking brake

▸ Pull the switch Ⓐ ⇨ *page 76, fig. 91* to apply the parking brake.

Starting and automatically releasing the parking brake

▸ When you start to drive as usual, the parking brake is automatically released and your vehicle begins to move.

When stopping at a traffic signal or stopping in city traffic on vehicles with an automatic transmission, the parking brake can be applied. The vehicle does not have to be held with the footbrake. The parking brake eliminates the tendency to creep with a drive range engaged. As soon as you drive off as usual, the parking brake is released automatically and the vehicle starts to move.

Starting on slopes

When starting on inclines, the starting assist prevents the vehicle from unintentionally rolling back. The braking force of the parking brake is not released until sufficient driving force has been built up at the wheels.

Tips

For safety reasons, the parking brake is released automatically only when the driver's safety belt is engaged in the buckle.

Starting off with a trailer

To prevent rolling back unintentionally on an incline, do the following:

▸ Keep the switch Ⓐ ⇨ *page 76, fig. 91* pulled and depress the accelerator. The parking brake stays applied and prevents the vehicle from rolling backward.
▸ You can release the switch Ⓐ once you are sure that you are developing enough driving force at the wheels by depressing the accelerator.

Depending on the weight of the rig (vehicle and trailer) and the severity of the incline, you may roll backwards as you start. You can prevent rolling backwards by holding the parking brake switch Ⓐ pulled out and accelerating - just as you would when starting on a hill with a conventional hand brake.

Emergency braking

In the event that the conventional brake system fails or locks.

▸ In an emergency, pull the switch Ⓐ ⇨ *page 76, fig. 91* and continue to pull it to slow your vehicle down with the parking brake.
▸ As soon as you release the switch Ⓐ or accelerate, the braking process stops.

If you pull the switch Ⓐ and hold it above a speed of about 5 mph (8 km/h), the emergency braking function is initiated. The vehicle is braked at all four wheels by activating the hydraulic brake system. The brake performance is similar to making an emergency stop ⇨ ⚠.

In order not to activate the emergency braking by mistake, an audible warning tone (buzzer) sounds when the switch Ⓐ is pulled. As soon as the switch Ⓐ is released, or the accelerator pedal is depressed, emergency braking stops.

WARNING

Emergency braking should only be used in an emergency, when the normal foot brake has failed or the brake pedal is obstructed. Using the parking brake to perform emergency braking will slow your vehicle down as if you ▶

had made a full brake application. The laws of physics cannot be suspended even with ESC and its associated components (ABS, ASR, EDS). In corners and when road or weather conditions are bad, a full brake application can cause the vehicle to skid or the rear end to break away - risking an accident.

Speed warning system

Overview

The speed warning system helps you to keep your driving speed below a set speed limit.

The speed warning system warns if the driver exceeds a previously stored maximum speed. A warning tone will sound as soon as the vehicle speed exceeds the set speed by about 3 mph (3 km/h). At the same time, a warning symbol appears in the display. The symbol's appearance might be different in some models.

The speed warning system has two warning thresholds that function independently of each other and that have somewhat different purposes:

Speed warning 1

You can use speed warning 1 to set the maximum speed while you are driving. This setting will remain in effect until you turn off the ignition, assuming that you have not changed or reset the setting.

The (USA models) / (Canada models) speed warning symbol in the warning 1 display appears when you exceed the maximum speed. It goes out when the speed falls below the stored maximum speed.

The speed warning symbol will also go out if the speed *exceeds* the stored maximum speed by more than about 25 mph (40 km/h) for at least 10 seconds. The stored maximum speed is deleted.

Speed warning 2

Storing warning 2 is recommended if you *always* want to be reminded of a certain speed, for example when you are traveling in a country that has a general maximum speed limit, or if you do not want to exceed a specified speed for winter tires.

The (USA models) / (Canada models) speed warning 2 symbol appears in the display when you exceed the stored speed limit. Unlike warning 1, it will not go out until the vehicle speed drops below the stored speed limit.

Setting speed warning 2 ⇨ *page 79*.

Tips

Even though your vehicle is equipped with a speed warning system, you should still watch the speedometer to make sure you are not driving faster than the speed limit.

Speed warning 1: setting a speed limit

Warning threshold 1 is set by the SET button.



Fig. 92 SET button in the instrument cluster

Storing the maximum speed

- ▸ Drive at the desired maximum speed.
- ▸ Press the SET button in the instrument panel display ⇨ *fig. 92* for 1 second.

Resetting the maximum speed

- ▸ Drive the vehicle at a speed of at least 3 mph (5 km/h)
- ▸ Press the SET button for more than 2 seconds.

The (USA models) / (Canada models) speed warning symbol will appear briefly in the display when you release the SET button to indicate that the maximum speed has been stored successfully. ▶

The maximum speed remains stored until it is changed by pressing the SET button again briefly or until it is deleted by a lengthy push on the button.

Speed warning 2: setting a speed limit

The radio or MMI control unit is used to set, change or delete warning threshold 2.*

- Select: CAR function button > **Instrument cluster** > **Speed warning**. Or
- Select: CAR function button > **Car systems*** control button > **Driver assist** > **Speed warning**.

Warning threshold 2 can be set in the speed range starting from 20 mph to 150 mph (30 km/h to 240 km/h). Settings can each be adjusted in intervals of 5 mph (10 km/h).

Cruise control system

Switching on

The cruise control system makes it possible to drive at a constant speed starting at 20 mph (30 km/h).

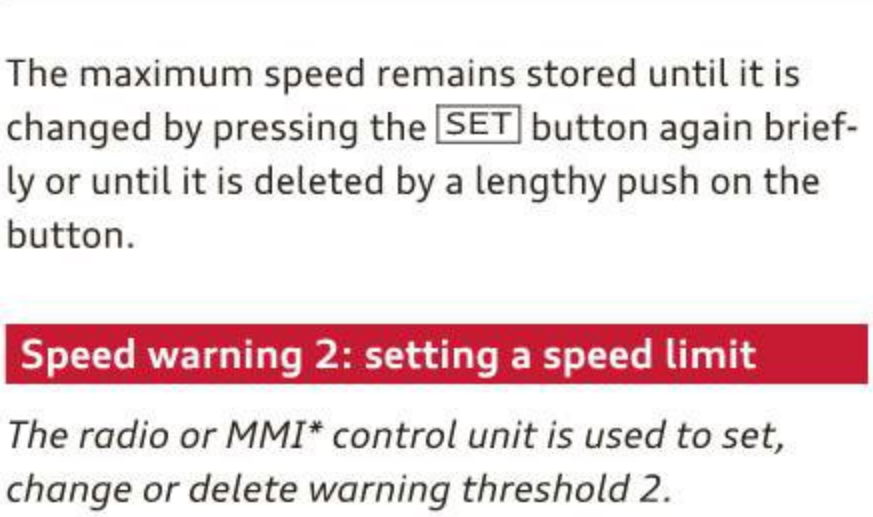


Fig. 93 Control lever with push-button



Fig. 94 Display: Selected speed

- Pull the lever to position (1) ⇨ *fig. 93* to switch the system on.
- Drive at the speed to be controlled.
- Press button (A) to set that speed.

The stored speed and the green symbol CRUISE (US model) / (Canadian model) are shown in the display ⇨ *fig. 94*. The display may vary, depending on the type of display in your vehicle.

The speed is kept constant by modifying engine power or through an active brake intervention.

WARNING

- Always pay attention to the traffic around you when the cruise control is in operation. You are always responsible for your speed and the distance between your vehicle and other vehicles.
- For reasons of safety, cruise control should not be used in the city, in stop-and-go traffic, on twisting roads and when road conditions are poor (such as ice, fog, gravel, heavy rain and hydroplaning) - risk of accident.
- Turn off the cruise control temporarily when entering turn lanes, highway exit lanes or in construction zones.
- Please note that inadvertently “resting” your foot on the accelerator pedal causes the cruise control not to brake. This is because the cruise control is overridden by the driver's acceleration.
- If a brake system malfunction such as overheating occurs when the cruise control system is switched on, the braking function in the system may be switched off. The other cruise control functions remain active as long as the indicator light CRUISE (US models) / (Canadian models) is on.

Tips

The brake lights illuminate as soon as the brakes apply automatically.

Changing speed

- ▸ To increase/decrease the speed in increments, tap the lever in the ⊕/⊖ direction ⇨ *page 79, fig. 93*.
- ▸ To increase/decrease the speed quickly, hold the lever in the ⊕/⊖ direction until the desired speed is displayed.

You can also press the accelerator pedal down to increase your speed, e.g. if you want to pass someone. The speed you saved earlier will resume as soon as you let off of the accelerator pedal.

If, however, you exceed your saved speed by 6 mph (10 km/h) for longer than 5 minutes, the cruise control will be turned off temporarily. The green symbol in the display turns white. The saved speed remains the same.

Presetting your speed

You can preset your desired speed while the vehicle is not moving.

- ▸ Switch on the ignition.
- ▸ Pull lever into position ① ⇨ *page 79, fig. 93*.
- ▸ Press the lever in the ⊕ or ⊖ direction to increase or decrease your speed.
- ▸ Release the lever to save that speed.

This function makes it possible, for example, to save the speed you want before driving on the highway. Once on the highway, activate the cruise control by pulling the lever toward ①.

Switching off

Temporary deactivation

- ▸ Press the brake pedal, or
- ▸ Press the lever into position ② (not clicked into place) ⇨ *page 79, fig. 93*, or
- ▸ Drive for longer than 5 minutes at more than 6 mph (10 km/h) above the stored speed.

Switching off completely

- ▸ Press lever into position ② (clicked into place), or
- ▸ Switch the ignition off.

The speed you saved will be retained if the cruise control has been switched off temporarily. To resume the saved speed, let up on the brake and pull the lever to position ①.

Switching the ignition off erases the saved speed.

⚠ WARNING

You should only return to the saved speed if it is not too fast for the current traffic conditions - risk of an accident!

Automatic transmission

multitronic, S tronic, tiptronic

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with multitronic/S tronic/tiptronic

The automatic transmission is controlled electronically. The transmission upshifts or downshifts automatically depending on which drive program is selected.

When a **moderate driving style** is used, the transmission selects the most economical driving mode. It will then change up early and delay the downshifts to give better fuel economy.

The transmission switches to a sporty mode after a kick-down or when the driver uses a **sporty driving style** characterized by quick accelerator pedal movements, heavy acceleration, frequent changes in speed and traveling at the maximum speed.

If desired, the driver can also select the gears *manually* **(tiptronic mode)** ⇨ *page 81*.

Various automatic transmissions may be installed, depending on the model:

multitronic transmission

The multitronic transmission is a continuously variable transmission. Power is transferred using a multidisk clutch. In contrast to conventional automatic transmissions using shifting operations, the transmission ratio in the continuously variable transmission is changed continuously. This optimizes the comfort level and conserves fuel.

S tronic transmission

The S tronic is a dual-clutch transmission. Power is transferred using two clutches that work independently from one another. They replace the torque converter used in conventional automatic transmissions and allow the vehicle to accelerate without a noticeable interruption in traction.

tiptronic transmission

In the tiptronic transmission, power is transferred by a torque converter.

Selector lever positions

Applies to: vehicles with multitronic/S tronic/tiptronic



Fig. 95 Display in the instrument cluster: selector lever in position P

The selector lever position engaged appears next to the selector lever as well as in the instrument cluster display.

P - Park

In this selector lever position the transmission is mechanically locked. Engage P only when the vehicle is *completely stopped* ⇨ ⚠ *in Driving the automatic transmission on page 84*.

To shift in or out of position P, you must *first* press and hold the brake pedal *and then* press the release button in the selector lever handle while moving the selector lever to or from P. You can shift out of this position only with the ignition on.

R - Reverse

Select R only when the vehicle is at a *full stop* and the engine is running at idle speed ⇨ ⚠ *in Driving the automatic transmission on page 84*.

Before you move the selector lever to R, press *both* the release button in the handle of the selector lever *and* the brake pedal at the same time.

When the ignition is on, the backup lights illuminate when the selector lever is moved into R.

N - Neutral

The transmission is in neutral in this position. Shift to this position for standing with the brakes applied ⇨ ⚠ *in Driving the automatic transmission on page 84*. ▶

When the vehicle is stationary or at speeds below 1 mph (2 km/h), you must always apply the footbrake before and while moving the lever out of N.

D/S - Normal position for driving forward

In the D/S position, the transmission can be operated either in the normal mode D or in the sport mode S. To select the sport mode S, pull the selector lever back briefly. Pulling the lever back again will select the normal mode D. The instrument cluster display shows the selected driving mode.

In the **normal mode** D, the transmission automatically selects the suitable gear ratio. It depends on engine load, vehicle speed and driving style.

Select the **sport mode** S for sporty driving. The vehicle makes full use of the engine's power. Shifting may become noticeable when accelerating.

When the vehicle is stationary or at speeds below 1 mph (2 km/h), you must always apply the foot brake before and while moving the lever to D/S out of N.

WARNING

Read and follow all WARNINGS ⇨ ⚠ *in Driving the automatic transmission on page 84*.

Note

Coasting downhill with the transmission in N and the engine not running will result in damage to the automatic transmission and possibly the catalytic converter.

Tips

- On vehicles with drive select*, you can adjust the sporty shift characteristics in the **Dynamic** driving mode. S will appear in the instrument cluster display instead of D.
- If you accidentally select N while driving, take your foot off the accelerator pedal immediately and wait for the engine to slow down to idle before selecting D/S.
- If there is a power failure, the selector lever will not move out of the P position. The emergency release can be used if this happens ⇨ *page 87*.

Automatic Shift Lock (ASL)

Applies to: vehicles with multitronic/S tronic/tiptronic

The Automatic Shift Lock safeguards you against accidentally shifting into a forward or the reverse gear and causing the vehicle to move unintentionally.



Fig. 96 Shift gate: selector lever lock positions and release button highlighted

The selector lever lock is released as follows:

- ▸ Turn the ignition on.
- ▸ Step on the brake pedal. *At the same time* press and hold the release button on the side of the gear selector knob ⇨ *fig. 96* with your thumb until you have moved the selector lever to the desired position.

Automatic selector lever lock

The selector lever is locked in the P and N positions when the ignition is turned on. You must press the brake pedal and the release button to select another position. As a reminder to the driver, the following warning appears in the instrument cluster display when the selector is in P and N:

When stationary apply brake pedal while selecting gear

The Automatic Shift Lock only functions when the vehicle is stationary or at speeds below 1 mph (2 km/h). ▶

At speeds above about 1 mph (2 km/h) the Automatic Shift Lock is automatically deactivated in the N position.

A time delay element prevents the selector lever from locking when it is moved through the N position (going from R to D/S). The locking element will lock the selector lever if the lever is left in N (Neutral) for more than approximately 2 seconds, without the brake pedal being pressed.

Release button

The release button on the selector lever prevents the lever from being accidentally shifted into certain positions. Depending on the direction of the shift, the selector lever locks at different positions. The positions are highlighted in the illustration ⇨ *fig. 96*.

Ignition key safety interlock

The key cannot be removed from the ignition unless the selector lever is in the P park position. When the ignition key is removed, the selector lever will be locked in the P position.

Driving the automatic transmission

Applies to: vehicles with multitronic/S tronic/tiptronic



Fig. 97 Shift gate on the center console: selector lever with release button

Starting the engine

- The selector lever must be in P or N.

Starting off

- Press and hold the brake pedal.
- Press and hold the release button in the selector lever handle, select the desired selector lever position such as D/S and release the button.
- Wait briefly until the transmission has shifted (you will feel a slight movement).
- Remove your foot from the brake pedal and accelerate.

Stopping temporarily

- Keep the vehicle stationary using the braking pedal, for example at traffic lights.
- Do not press the accelerator pedal when doing this.
- To prevent the vehicle from rolling when you start driving, set the parking brake when stopping on steep inclines ⇨ ⚠.
- The parking brake will release automatically and the vehicle will start moving once you press the accelerator pedal.

Stopping/parking

If the selector lever is not in the P position when you open the driver's door, the vehicle could roll. The message **Transmission: Car may roll! Shift to park!** appears.

- Press and hold the brake pedal until the vehicle has come to a complete stop.
- Apply the parking brake ⇨ *page 76, Parking*.
- Select the P selector lever position ⇨ ⚠.

Stopping on an incline

- *Always* press the brake pedal to hold the vehicle in place and prevent it from "rolling back" ⇨ ⚠. Do **not** try to prevent the vehicle from "rolling back" when a gear is engaged by increasing the engine speed ⇨ (!).

Starting on an incline

- Activate the parking brake.
- With the driving gear selected, press the accelerator pedal carefully. The parking brake will release automatically if your seat belt is fastened.

Under certain circumstances, such as driving in the mountains, it may be useful to switch temporarily to the manual shift program in order to adjust the gears to the driving conditions by hand ⇨ *page 85*.

On slopes, activate the parking brake first and then move the selector lever to the P position. ▶

This prevents too much stress from being placed on the locking mechanism.

Vehicles with multitronic transmission: Your vehicle is equipped with **hill hold assist** allowing you to start while on an incline. The system is activated when the brake pedal is pressed down and held **for a few seconds**. The brake pressure will hold for *a moment* after the brake pedal loosens to prevent the vehicle from rolling backwards while starting up.

WARNING

- The vehicle can also roll when the engine is stopped.
- Unintended vehicle movement can cause serious injury.
- Never leave your vehicle with the engine running while in gear. If you must leave your vehicle when the engine is running, activate the parking brake and move the selector lever to P.
- Power is still transmitted to the wheels when the engine is running at idle. To prevent the vehicle from "creeping", you must keep your foot on the brake when the engine is running and the selector lever is in D/S or R or "tiptronic" mode is selected.
- Do not press the accelerator pedal when changing the selector lever position while the vehicle is stationary and the engine is running.
- Never shift into R or P while driving.
- Before driving down a steep slope, reduce your speed and shift into a lower gear with "tiptronic".
- Do not ride the brakes or press the brake pedal too often or too long when driving down a hill. Constant braking causes the brakes to overheat and substantially reduces braking performance, increases braking distance or causes complete failure of the brake system.
- To prevent the vehicle from rolling back when stopping on inclines, always hold it in place with the brake pedal or parking brake.
- Never hold the vehicle on an incline with a slipping clutch. The clutch opens automatically when it becomes too hot from the overload. An indicator lamp illuminates and a driver message appears ⇨ *page 86* when the clutch is overloaded.
- If the engine must remain running, never have any driving position engaged when checking under the hood. Make sure the selector lever has securely engaged and is locked in P with the parking brake set ⇨ *page 193*. Otherwise, any increase in engine speed may set the vehicle in motion, even with the parking brake applied.

Note

- S tronic- and tiptronic transmission: When stopping on an incline, do not try to hold the vehicle in place by pressing the accelerator pedal while a driving gear is selected. This can cause the transmission to overheat and can damage it. Activate the parking brake or press the brake pedal to prevent the vehicle from rolling.
- S tronic- and tiptronic transmission: Allowing the vehicle to roll when the engine is stopped and the selector lever is in N will damage the transmission because it is not lubricated under those circumstances.

Tips

For safety reasons, the parking brake is released automatically only when the driver's safety belt is engaged in the buckle.

Hill descent control

Applies to: vehicles with multitronic/S tronic/tiptronic

The hill descent control system assists the driver when driving down declines.

Hill descent control is activated when the selector lever is in D/S and you press the brake pedal. The transmission automatically selects a gear that is suitable for the incline. Hill descent control tries to maintain the speed achieved at the time of braking, within physical and technical limitations. It may still be necessary to adjust the speed with the brakes. ▶

Hill descent control switches off once the decline levels out or you press the accelerator pedal.

On vehicles with the cruise control system* ⇨ *page 79*, hill descent control is also activated when the speed is set.

WARNING

Hill descent control cannot overcome physical limitations, so it may not be able to maintain a constant speed under all conditions. Always be ready to apply the brakes.

Manual shift program

Applies to: vehicles with multitronic/S tronic/tiptronic

Using the manual shift program you can manually select gears.



Fig. 98 Center console: shifting the gears manually



Fig. 99 Steering wheel: shift paddles*

Gear selection with selector lever

The tiptronic mode can be selected either with the vehicle stationary or on the move.

- ▸ Push the selector lever to the right from D/S. An M appears in the instrument cluster display as soon as the transmission has shifted.
- ▸ To upshift, push the selector lever forward to the plus position ⊕ ⇨ *fig. 98*.
- ▸ To downshift, push the lever to the minus position ⊖.

Gear selection with shift paddles*

The shift paddles are activated when the selector lever is in D/S or the tiptronic manual shift program.

- ▸ To upshift, touch the shift paddle on the right ⊕ ⇨ *fig. 99*.
- ▸ To downshift, touch the shift paddle on the left ⊖.
- ▸ If you do not press a shift paddle within a short time while in the D/S position, the transmission will return to automatic mode. To keep shifting using the shift paddles, move the selector lever to the right out of the D/S position.

The transmission automatically shifts up or down before critical engine speed is reached.

The transmission only allows manual shifting when the engine speed is within the permitted range.

Tips

– When you shift into the next lower gear, the transmission will downshift only when there is no possibility of over-revving the engine.
– When the kick-down comes on, the transmission will shift down to a lower gear, depending on vehicle and engine speeds.
– Tiptronic is inoperative when the transmission is in the fail-safe mode.

Kick-down

Applies to: vehicles with multitronic/S tronic/tiptronic

Kick-down enables maximum acceleration.

Applies to vehicles with a multitronic transmission

When you depress the accelerator pedal beyond the resistance point, the transmission downshifts into a lower gear ratio depending on the vehicle speed and engine speed. As long as the accelerator pedal is depressed, the engine speed is automatically regulated for maximum acceleration. ▸

Applies to vehicles with a S tronic-/ tiptronic transmission

When you depress the accelerator pedal beyond the resistance point, the automatic transmission downshifts into a lower gear, depending on vehicle speed and engine speed. The upshift into the next higher gear takes place once the maximum specified engine speed is reached.

WARNING

Please note that the drive wheels can spin if kick-down is used on a smooth slippery road - there is a risk of skidding.

Launch Control Program

Applies to: vehicles with S tronic

The Launch Control Program provides the best acceleration possible when starting from a stop.

Requirement: The engine must be at operating temperature and the steering wheel must not be turned.

- ▸ Press the OFF button ⇨ *page 168* while the engine is running. The indicator light illuminates in the instrument cluster and **Stabilization control (ESC): Sport. Warning! Restricted stability** appears in the driver information system display.
- ▸ Move the selector lever to the D/S position to select sport mode (S) or select the **dynamic** driving mode in drive select* ⇨ *page 102*.
- ▸ Press the brake pedal strongly with your left foot and hold it down for at least 1 second.
- ▸ At the same time, press the accelerator pedal down completely with your right foot until the engine reaches and maintains a high RPM.
- ▸ Remove your foot from the brake pedal within 5 seconds ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

- Always adapt your driving to the traffic flow.
- Only use the Launch Control Program when road and traffic conditions allow it and other drivers will not be endangered or annoyed by your driving and the vehicle's acceleration.
- Please note that the driving wheels can spin and the vehicle can break away when sport mode is switched on, especially when the road is slippery.
- Once you have accelerated, you should switch sport mode off by pressing the OFF button.

Tips

- The transmission temperature may increase significantly after using the Launch Control Program. If that happens, the program may not be available for a few minutes. It will be available again after a cool-down period.
- When accelerating using the Launch Control program, all vehicle parts are subject to heavy loads. This can result in increased wear.

Transmission malfunction

Applies to: vehicles with multitronic/S tronic/tiptronic

Transmission: Press brake pedal and select gear again.

Press the brake pedal and select the desired selector lever position again. You can then continue driving.

Transmission overheating: Please drive conservatively.

The transmission temperature has increased significantly due to the sporty driving manner. Drive in a less sporty manner until the temperature returns to the normal range and the indicator light switches of.

Transmission malfunction: You can continue driving

There is a system malfunction in the transmission. You may continue driving. Drive to your authorized Audi dealer or qualified repair facility soon to have the malfunction corrected.

Transmission malfunction: Limited driving functionality

There is a system malfunction in the transmission. The transmission is switching to emergency mode. This mode only shifts into certain gears or ▸

will no longer shift at all. The engine may stall. Drive to your authorized Audi dealer or qualified repair facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Transmission malfunction: No reverse
You can continue driving

S tronic transmission: There is a system malfunction in the transmission. The transmission is switching to emergency mode. This mode only shifts into certain gears or will no longer shift at all. The engine may stall. You cannot engage the reverse gear. Drive to your authorized Audi dealer or qualified repair facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Transmission malfunction: Stop vehicle and shift to park.

Do not continue driving. Select the P selector lever position and see your authorized Audi dealer or qualified repair facility for assistance.

Note

If the transmission switches to emergency mode, you should take the vehicle to an authorized Audi dealership as soon as possible to have the condition corrected.

Selector lever emergency release

Applies to: vehicles with multitronic/S tronic/tiptronic

If the vehicle's power supply fails, the selector lever can be released in an emergency.

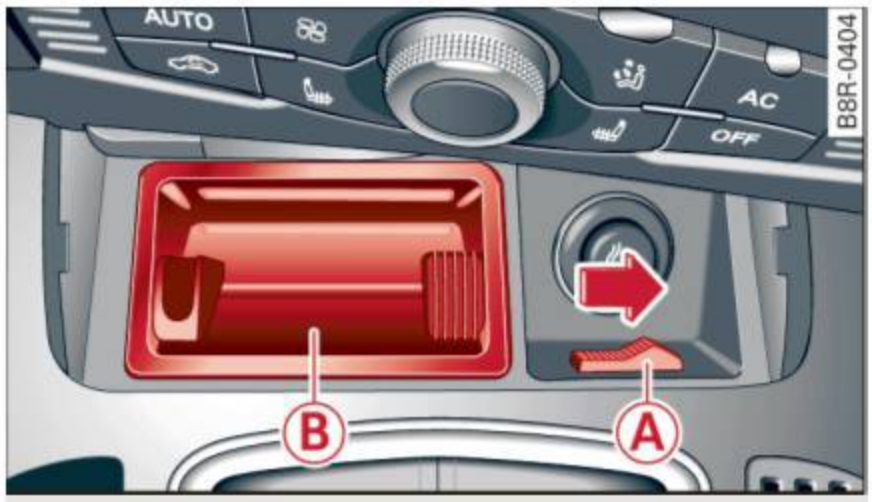


Fig. 100 Front center console: Removing the ashtray insert



Fig. 101 Selector lever emergency release

- To access the emergency release mechanism, remove the ashtray insert (B) using the release switch (A) ⇨ *fig. 100*.
- Loosen and remove the cap in the ashtray mount.
- You now have access to a pin. Using a screwdriver or similar object, press the pin down and hold it in that position ⇨ *fig. 101*.
- Now press the release button and move the selector lever to the N position.

The selector lever can only be moved from the P position if the key is in the lock and the ignition is switched on. If the power supply fails (for example, the battery is discharged) and the vehicle must be pushed or towed, move the selector lever to the N position first using the emergency release.

Audi adaptive cruise control and braking guard

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive cruise control

The adaptive cruise control system assists the driver by regulating vehicle speed and helping to maintain a set distance to the vehicle ahead, within the limits of the system. If the system detects a moving vehicle up ahead, adaptive cruise control can brake and then accelerate your vehicle. This helps to make driving more comfortable on long highway stretches.

The braking guard system can warn you about an impending collision and initiate braking maneuvers ⇨ *page 94*.

Adaptive cruise control and braking guard have technical limitations that you must know, so please read this section carefully, understand how the system works and use them properly at all times.

General information

General information

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive cruise control



Fig. 102 Front of the vehicle: Position of radar sensor

The area that contains the radar sensor ⇨ *fig. 102* must never be covered by stickers or other objects or obstructed with dirt, insects, snow or ice that will interfere with the adaptive cruise control system and braking guard. For information on cleaning, refer to ⇨ *page 182*. The same applies for any modifications made in the front area.

The function of the adaptive cruise control system and braking guard is limited under some conditions:

– Objects can only be detected when they are within sensor range ⇨ *page 90, fig. 105*.
– The system has a limited ability to detect objects that are a short distance ahead, off to the side of your vehicle or moving into your lane.
– Some kinds of vehicles are hard to detect; for example motorcycles, vehicles with high ground clearance or overhanging loads may be detected when it is too late or they may not be detected at all.
– When driving through curves ⇨ *page 89*.
– Stationary objects ⇨ *page 89*.

WARNING

Always pay attention to traffic when adaptive cruise control is switched on and braking guard is active. As the driver, you are still responsible for starting and for maintaining speed and distance to other objects. Braking guard is used to assist you. The driver must always take action to avoid a collision. The driver is always responsible for braking at the correct time.

– Improper use of adaptive cruise control can cause collisions, other accidents and serious personal injury.
– Never let the comfort and convenience that adaptive cruise control and braking guard offer distract you from the need to be alert to traffic conditions and the need to remain in full control of your vehicle at all times,
– Always remember that the adaptive cruise control and braking guard have limits – they will not slow the vehicle down or maintain the set distance when you drive towards an obstacle or something on or near the road that is not moving, such as vehicles stopped in a traffic jam, a stalled or disabled vehicle. If registered by the radar sensor, vehicles or obstacles that are not moving can trigger a collision warning and if confirmed by the video camera, an acute collision warning. ▶

– For safety reasons, do not use adaptive cruise control when driving on roads with many curves, when the road surface is in poor condition and/or in bad weather (such as ice, fog, gravel, heavy rain and hydroplaning). Using the system under these conditions could result in a collision.
– Switch adaptive cruise control off temporarily when driving in turning lanes, on expressway exits or in construction zones. This prevents the vehicle from accelerating to the set speed when in these situations.
– The adaptive cruise control system will not brake by itself if you put your foot on the accelerator pedal. Doing so can override the speed and distance regulation.
– When approaching stationary objects such as stopped traffic, adaptive cruise control will not respond and braking guard will have limited function.
– The adaptive cruise control system and braking guard do not react to people, animals, objects crossing the road or oncoming objects.
– The function of the radar sensor can be affected by reflective objects such as guard rails, the entrance to a tunnel, heavy rain or ice.
– Never follow a vehicle so closely that you cannot stop your vehicle safely. The adaptive cruise control cannot slow or brake the vehicle safely when you follow another vehicle too closely. Always remember that the automatic braking function cannot bring the vehicle to a sudden or emergency stop under these conditions.
– To prevent unintended operation, always switch ACC off when it is not being used.

Note

The sensor can be displaced by impacts or damage to the bumper, wheel housing and underbody. That could affect the adaptive cruise control system and braking guard. Have your authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility check their function.

In curves

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive cruise control

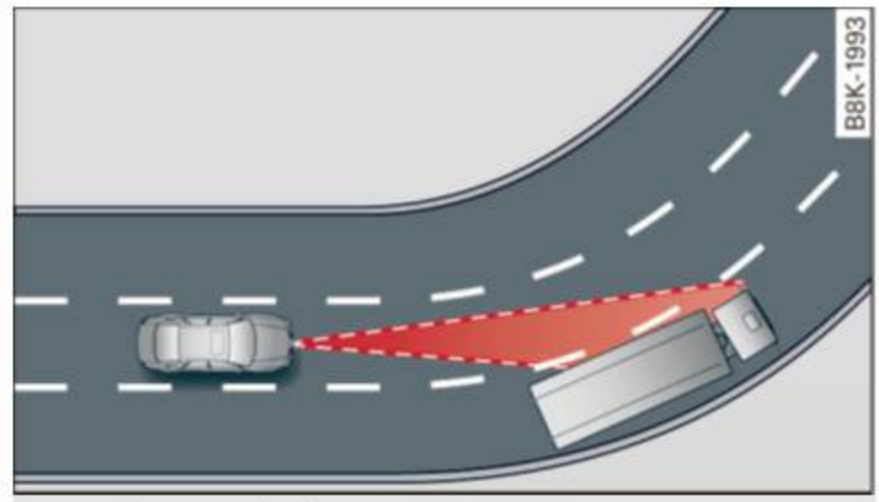


Fig. 103 Example: driving into a curve

When driving into a curve ⇨ *fig. 103* and out of a curve, the adaptive cruise control may react to a vehicle in the next lane and apply the brakes. You can override or prevent the braking by pressing the accelerator pedal briefly.

Stationary objects

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive cruise control

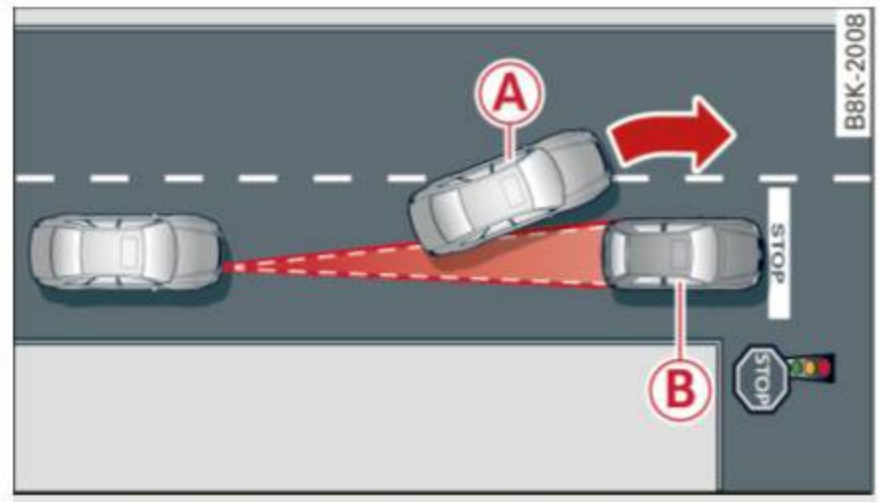


Fig. 104 Example: object changing lanes and stationary object

The adaptive cruise control system only reacts to objects that are moving or that the system has already detected as moving. For example, if a vehicle (A), which has already been detected by the adaptive cruise control, turns or changes lanes and another stationary vehicle (B) is located in front of that vehicle, the system will not react to the stationary vehicle.

Audi adaptive cruise control

Description

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive cruise control

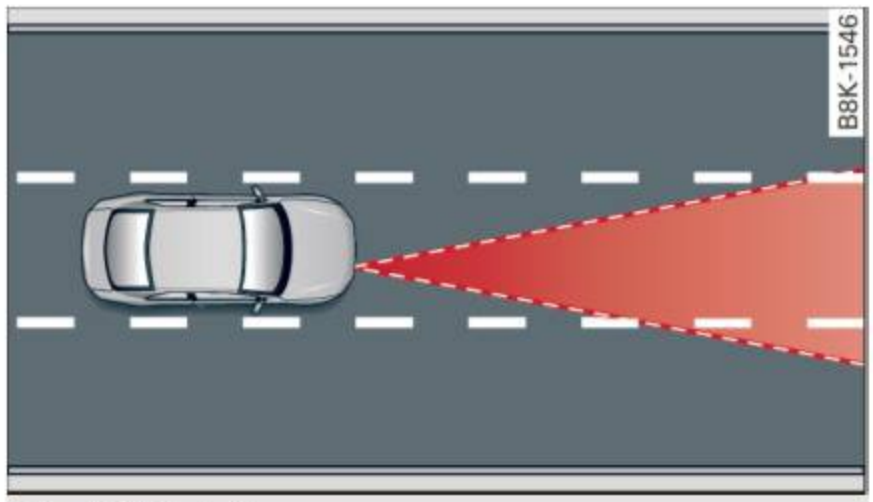


Fig. 105 Detection range

What can Audi adaptive cruise control do?

The adaptive cruise control works in conjunction with a radar sensor installed in the front of the vehicle ⇨ *page 88, fig. 102*, which is subject to designated system limits ⇨ *page 90*. Stationary objects are disregarded.

On open roads with no traffic, adaptive cruise control works like a regular cruise control system. The stored speed is maintained. When approaching a moving vehicle detected up ahead, the adaptive cruise control system automatically slows down to match that vehicle's speed and then maintains the distance that the driver previously stored. As soon as the system does not detect a vehicle up ahead, adaptive cruise control accelerates back up to the stored speed.

Which functions can be controlled?

When you switch adaptive cruise control on, you can set the current speed as the "control speed" ⇨ *page 90, Switching on and off*.

When driving, you can stop cruise control ⇨ *page 92* or change the speed ⇨ *page 91* at any time.

You can also set the distance to the object ahead and set the adaptive cruise control driving program ⇨ *page 92*.

Switching on and off

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive cruise control

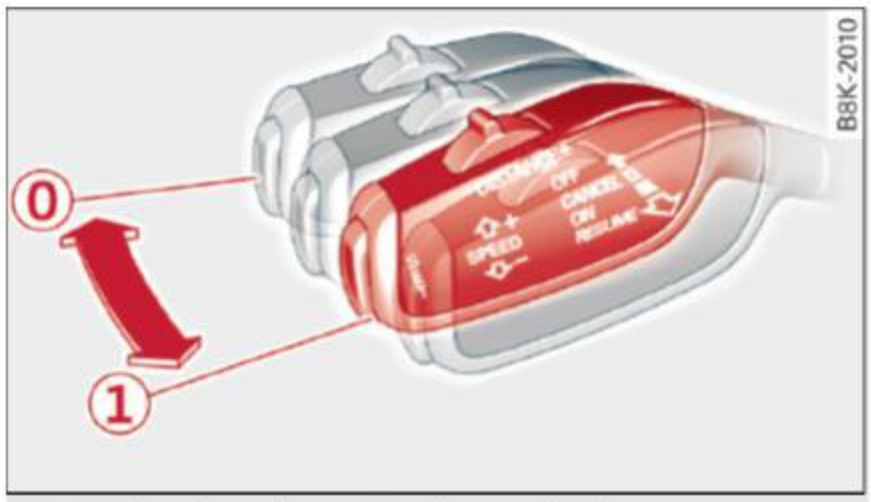


Fig. 106 Selector lever: switching on/off



Fig. 107 Instrument cluster: Audi adaptive cruise control

You can set any speed between 20 mph and 95 mph (30 and 150 km/h).

Indicator lamps and messages in the instrument cluster display inform you about the current system status and settings.

Switching Audi adaptive cruise control on

- Pull the lever toward you into position (1) ⇨ *fig. 106*. **ACC standby** appears in the instrument cluster display.

Setting the speed and activating regulation

- To set the current speed, press the SET button ⇨ *page 9, fig. 4*. The set speed is shown in the ▶

tachometer Ⓐ and is also shown briefly in the display Ⓓ ⇨ *fig. 107*.

Switching Audi adaptive cruise control off

▸ Push the lever away from you into position Ⓞ until it clicks into place. The message **ACC off** appears.

Ⓑ Indicator lights

 - Adaptive cruise control is switched on. No vehicles are detected up ahead. The stored speed is maintained.

 - A moving vehicle is detected up ahead. The adaptive cruise control system regulates the speed and distance to the moving vehicle ahead and accelerates/brakes automatically.

 - When automatic braking is not able to keep enough distance to a previously detected moving vehicle up ahead, you must take control and brake ⇨ *page 93, Request for driver intervention*.

Ⓒ Display

If adaptive cruise control is not shown in the display, you can call it up with the RESET button ⇨ *page 21*.

Based on the symbols in the display, you can determine if the system is maintaining a distance to the vehicle ahead and what that distance is.

No vehicle - No vehicle ahead was detected.

White vehicle - A vehicle ahead was detected.

Red vehicle - Prompt for the driver to take action ⇨ *page 93*.

Both **arrows** on the **scale** Ⓒ indicate the distance to the vehicle ahead. No arrow appears when the vehicle is on an open road and there is no object ahead. If an object is detected ahead, the arrow moves on the scale.

The green zone on the scale shows the stored distance. For information on changing the stored distance, refer to ⇨ *page 92*. If the distance selected is too close or may soon become too close, the arrows move into the red zone on the scale.

WARNING

Improper use of the adaptive cruise control can cause collisions, other accidents and serious personal injuries.

– Pressing the SET button when driving at speeds below 20 mph (30 km/h), will automatically accelerate the vehicle to 20 mph (30 km/h), which is the minimum speed that can be set.

Tips

– If you switch the ignition or the adaptive cruise control off, the set speed is erased from the system memory.
– The electronic stabilization control (ESC) and the anti-slip-regulation (ASR) are automatically turned on when the adaptive cruise control is turned on. Both systems cannot be turned off if the adaptive cruise control is turned on.

Changing the speed

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive cruise control



Fig. 108 Selector lever: changing the speed

▸ To increase or reduce the speed in increments, **tap** the lever up or down.
▸ To increase or reduce the speed quickly, **hold** the lever up or down until the red LED Ⓐ reaches the desired speed ⇨ *page 90, fig. 107*.

Following any changes, the new stored speed will be displayed briefly in the display Ⓓ ⇨ *page 90, fig. 107*.

Interrupting cruise control

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive cruise control

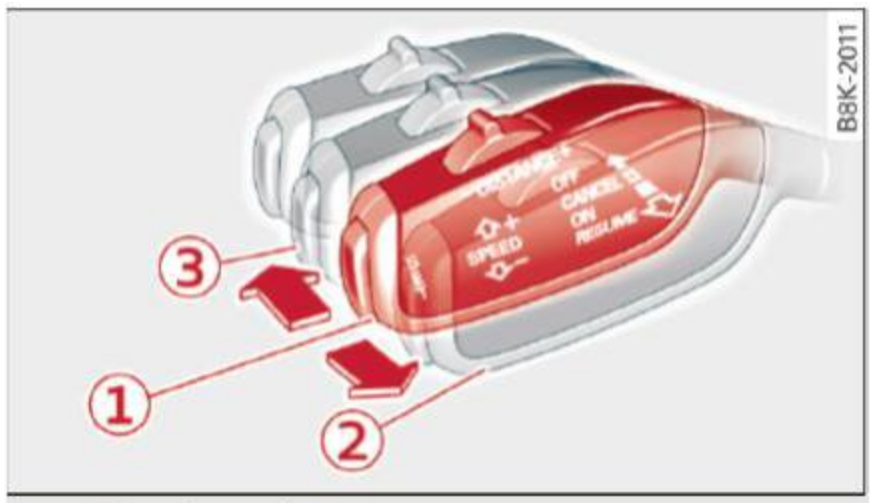


Fig. 109 Selector lever

Requirement: adaptive cruise control must be switched on ⇨ *fig. 109* ①.

Overriding cruise control

- ▸ To accelerate manually, press the accelerator pedal. The message **ACC override** appears.
- ▸ To resume adaptive cruise control, remove your foot from the gas pedal. The system returns again to the speed that was saved before.
- ▸ You can save a new speed at any time by pressing the SET button ⇨ *page 9, fig. 4*.

Canceling cruise control while driving

- ▸ Move the lever into position ③. The message **ACC standby** appears. Or
- ▸ press the brake pedal.
- ▸ To resume the stored speed, move the lever into position ②.

WARNING

Never resume the stored speed if the speed is too high for prevailing road, traffic or weather conditions.

Setting the distance

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive cruise control

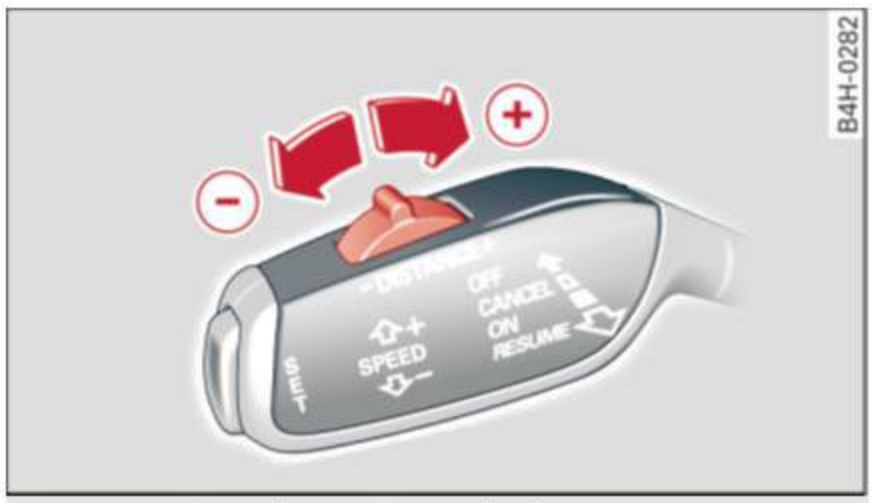


Fig. 110 Selector lever: setting the distance

- ▸ Tap the switch to display the current set distance ⇨ *fig. 110*.
- ▸ To increase or reduce the distance by increments, tap the switch again to the left or right. The distance between the two vehicles will change in the instrument cluster display.

When approaching a moving vehicle up ahead, the adaptive cruise control system brakes to match that object's speed and then maintains the stored distance. If the vehicle ahead accelerates, adaptive cruise control will also accelerate up to the stored speed.

The higher the speed, the greater the distance in yards (meters) ⇨ ⚠. The **Distance 3** setting is recommended.

The distances provided are specified values. Depending on the driving situation and the how the vehicle ahead is driving, the actual distance may be more or less than these target distances.

The various symbols for the time increments appear briefly in the information line Ⓓ ⇨ *page 90, fig. 107* when you change the settings.

Distance 1: This setting corresponds to a distance of 92 feet/28 meters when traveling at 62 mph (100 km/h), or a time interval of 1 second.

Distance 2: This setting corresponds to a distance of 118 feet/36 meters when traveling at 62 mph (100 km/h), or a time interval of 1.3 seconds. ▶

Distance 3: This setting corresponds to a distance of 164 feet/50 meters when traveling at 62 mph (100 km/h), or a time interval of 1.8 seconds.

Distance 4: This setting corresponds to a distance of 210 feet/64 meters when traveling at 62 mph (100 km/h), or a time interval of 2.3 seconds.

WARNING

Following other vehicles too closely increases the risk of collisions and serious personal injury.

- Setting short distances to the traffic ahead reduces the time and distance available to bring your vehicle to a safe stop and makes it even more necessary to pay close attention to traffic.
- Always obey applicable traffic laws, use good judgment, and select a safe following distance for the traffic, road and weather conditions.

Tips

- **Distance 3** is set automatically each time you switch the ignition on.
- Your standard settings are automatically stored and assigned to the remote control key being used.

Setting the driving program

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive cruise control

Depending on the selected driving program and distance, driving behavior when accelerating will vary from dynamic to comfortable.

Setting the driving program for vehicles without Audi drive select*

- In the radio/MMI*, select: CAR function button > **Adaptive cruise control** > **Driving prog.** > **comfort, standard** or **dynamic**. Or
- Select: CAR function button > **Car systems*** control button > **Driver assist** > **Adaptive cruise control** > **Driving program*** > **Comfort, Standard** or **Dynamic**.

Setting the driving mode for vehicles with Audi drive select*

Refer to ⇨ *page 102*.

Tips

Your settings are automatically stored and assigned to the remote control key being used.

Request for driver intervention

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive cruise control



Fig. 111 Instrument cluster: request for driver intervention

In certain situations, the system will prompt you to take action. This could happen, for example, if braking by the adaptive cruise control system is not enough to maintain enough distance to the vehicle ahead.

The instrument cluster will warn you about the danger ⇨ *fig. 111*:

- A red vehicle is pictured in the display.
- The text **DISTANCE!** appears in the status bar.
- The red indicator light blinks.
- In addition, a warning tone sounds.

Audi braking guard

Description

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive cruise control



Fig. 112 Instrument cluster: approach warning

Braking guard uses a radar sensor. It also functions within the limits of the system when adaptive cruise control is switched off.

What can Audi braking guard do?

When detected in time, the system can assess situations when a vehicle ahead brakes suddenly or if your own vehicle is traveling at a high speed and approaching a vehicle up ahead that is moving more slowly. Braking guard does not react if it cannot detect the situation.

The system advises you of various situations:

- The **distance warning** is given if you are too close to the vehicle ahead for a long time. If the vehicle ahead brakes sharply, you will not be able to avoid a collision. The indicator light in the display comes on.
- The **approach warning** is given when a detected vehicle up ahead in your lane is moving much more slowly than you are or if it brakes sharply. When this warning is given, it may only be possible to avoid a collision by swerving or braking sharply. The indicator light will warn you about the danger ⇨ *fig. 112*. You will also hear an acoustic signal.

If you do not react fast enough or do not react at all to the situation, Braking guard will intervene by braking and the message **braking guard intervention** will appear.

- If a collision is imminent, the system will first provide an **acute warning** by briefly and sharply applying the brakes.
- If you do not react to the acute warning, braking guard can brake within the limits of the system. This reduces the vehicle speed in the event of a collision.
- At speeds under 20 mph (30 km/h), the system can initiate a complete deceleration shortly before a collision[1)].
- If the braking guard senses that you are not braking hard enough when a collision is imminent, it can increase the braking force.

Which functions can be controlled?

You can switch braking guard and the distance/approach warning on or off in the radio or MMI ⇨ *page 95, Settings in the radio/MMI*.

WARNING

Lack of attention can cause collisions, other accidents and serious personal injuries. The braking guard is an assist system and cannot prevent a collision by itself. The driver must always intervene. The driver is always responsible for braking at the correct time.

- Always pay close attention to traffic, even when the braking guard is switched on. Be ready to intervene and be ready to take complete control whenever necessary. Always keep the safe and legal distance between your vehicle and vehicles up ahead.
- Braking guard works within limits and will not respond outside the system limits, for example when approaching a stopped vehicle or stationary obstacle (end of a traffic jam or vehicle that has broken down in traffic).
- Always remember that the radar sensor for the braking guard works only within defined detection and range limits that may prevent the proper detection of other vehicles.
- The radar sensor's function and range can be reduced by rain, snow and heavy spray. Moving vehicles up ahead may not be ▶

1) This is not available in some countries.

promptly detected or may not be detected at all.
– Reflective surfaces including crash barriers or tunnel entrances may impair the function of the radar sensor.

Tips

– You can cancel the braking that is initiated by the system by braking yourself, by accelerating noticeably or by swerving.
– Braking guard error messages ⇨ *page 95*.
– Keep in mind that braking guard can brake unexpectedly. Always secure any cargo or objects that you are transporting to reduce the risk of damage or injury.

Settings in the radio/MMI

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive cruise control

▸ Select: CAR function button > **Car systems*** control button > **Driver assist** > **Audi braking guard**. Or
▸ Select: CAR function button > **Audi braking guard**.

System - Switch Audi braking guard **On** and **Off**. When you switch the ignition on, the message **Audi braking guard off** appears if the system is switched off.

Early warning - The distance and approach warnings in the display can be switched **On**/**Off**.

Tips

– Your settings are automatically stored and assigned to the remote control key being used at the times the settings are made.
– If you restrict or switch off the ESC, the braking guard also switches itself off ⇨ *page 168*.
– Switch braking guard off when you are loading the vehicle onto a vehicle carrier, train, ship or other type of transportation. This can prevent undesired warnings from the braking guard system.

Messages

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive cruise control

Braking guard: Off

This driver message appears if the system is turned off via the radio/MMI*. Otherwise, if the system is turned off, the information appears every time shortly after the start of the trip.

The driver message also appears if the system is not available due to a malfunction or if the ESC is not switched on ⇨ *page 168*. If this is the case, the system will not provide warnings about a possible collision.

Braking guard: Activated

This driver message appears if sharp brake pressure was applied due to an acute warning.

• • •

Three white dots appear if a setting cannot be selected with the operating lever. For example, this happens if you want to raise/lower the speed even though there was no previously saved speed.

ACC: Sensor blocked

This message appears if the sensor view is obstructed, for example by leaves, snow, heavy spray or dirt. Clean the sensor ⇨ *page 88, fig. 102*.

ACC: not available

The driver message appears if there is a malfunction. The adaptive cruise control turns off. A chime sounds as a reminder. Have the system checked by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

ACC: unavailable

The driver message appears if, for example, the brake temperature is too high. The adaptive cruise control is temporarily unavailable. A chime sounds as a reminder.

Shift lever position!

The driver message appears if the selector lever is shifted to the N position. The adaptive cruise control is not available while in this position. ▶

Stabilization control (ESC)

This message appears if the electronic stabilization control (ESC) is taking action to stabilize the vehicle. The adaptive cruise control turns off. A chime sounds as a reminder.

Speed too low

This message appears if the current speed is too low **to set** or **to maintain** the desired speed.

The speed being saved must be at least 20 mph (30 km/h). The cruise control is turned off for speeds lower than 12 mph (20 km/h). The adaptive cruise control remains turned on for speeds above 95 mph (150 km/h) (override). It will stabilize again at 95 mph (150 km/h) when the driver takes his foot off of the gas pedal.

Parking brake!

The driver message appears when the parking brake is activated. Adaptive cruise control is turned off. A chime sounds as a reminder.

Audi side assist

Side assist

Description

Applies to: vehicles with Audi side assist

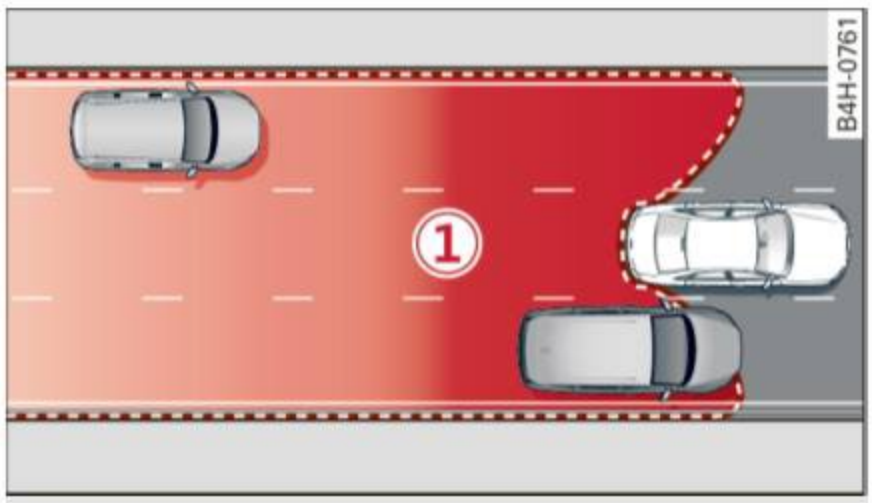


Fig. 113 Sensor detection range

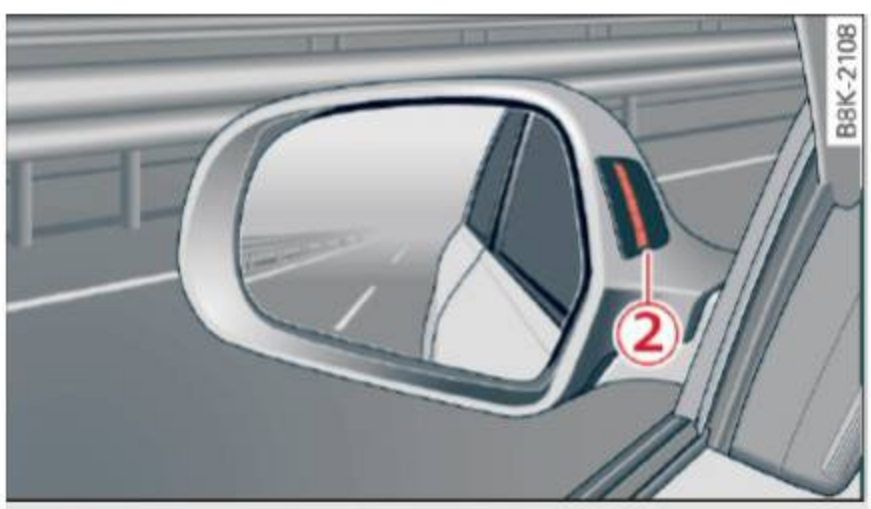


Fig. 114 Display on the exterior mirror

Side assist helps you monitor your blind spot and traffic behind your vehicle. Within the limits of the system, it warns you about vehicles that are coming closer or that are traveling with you within sensor range ① ⇨ *fig. 113*: if a lane change is classified as critical, the display ② in the exterior mirror ⇨ *fig. 114* turns on.

The display in the left exterior mirror provides assistance when making a lane change to the left, while the display in the right exterior mirror provides assistance when making a lane change to the right.

Information stage

As long as you do not activate the turn signal, side assist *informs* you about vehicles that are detected and classified as critical. The display in the respective mirror turns on, but is dim.

The display remains dim intentionally in the information stage so that your view toward the front is not disturbed.

Warning stage

If you activate the turn signal, side assist *warns* you about vehicles that are detected and classified as critical. The display in the respective mirror blinks brightly. If this happens, check traffic by glancing in the rearview mirror and over your shoulder ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 98*.

Tips

- You can adjust the brightness of the display ② ⇨ *page 99*.
- Please refer to the instructions for towing a trailer located in ⇨ *page 98*.

8F0012721BB

General information

Applies to: vehicles with Audi side assist

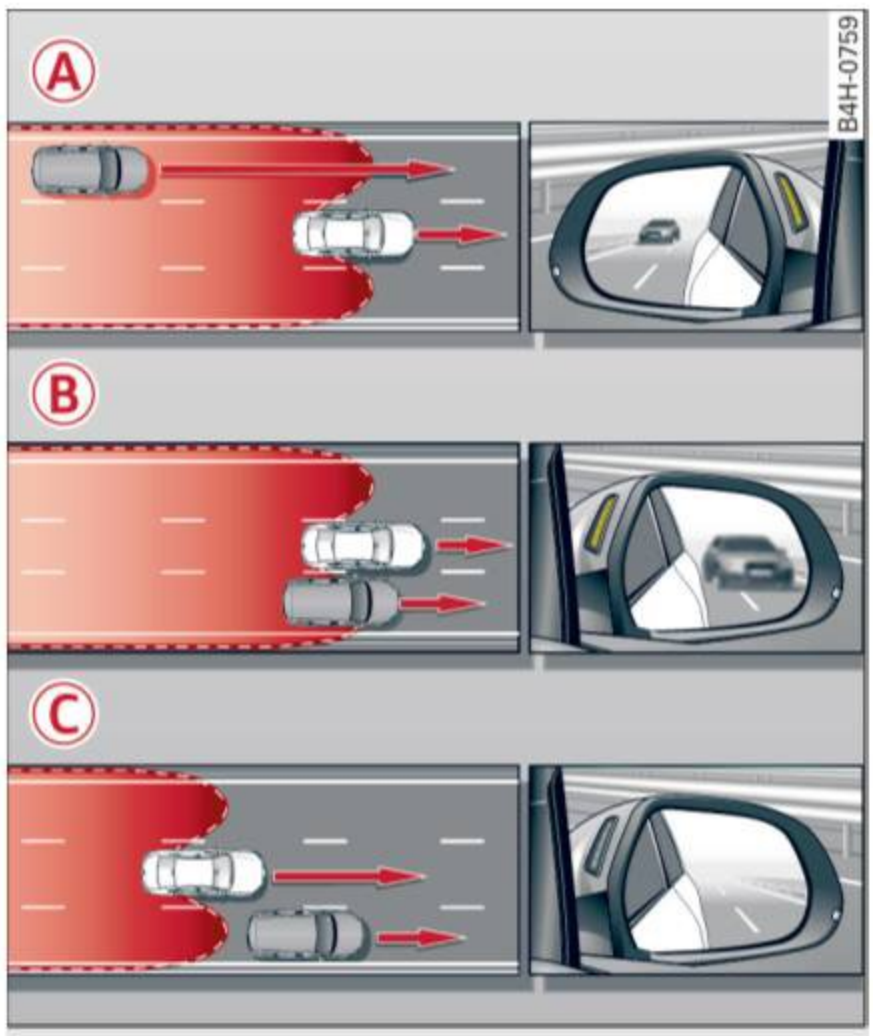


Fig. 115 Driving situations



Fig. 116 Rear of the vehicle: position of the sensors

Side assist functions at speeds above approximately 19 mph (30 km/h).

Ⓐ Vehicles that are approaching

In certain cases, a vehicle will be classified as critical for a lane change even if it is still somewhat far away. The faster a vehicle approaches, the sooner the display in the exterior mirror will turn on.

Ⓑ Vehicles traveling with you

Vehicles traveling with you are indicated in the exterior mirror if they are classified as critical for a lane change. All vehicles detected by side assist are indicated by the time they enter your "blind spot", at the latest.

Ⓒ Vehicles left behind

If you slowly pass a vehicle that side assist has detected (the difference in speed between the vehicle and your vehicle is less than 9 mph (15 km/h)), the display in the exterior mirror turns on as soon as the vehicle enters your blind spot.

The display will not turn on if you quickly pass a vehicle that side assist has detected (the difference in speed between the vehicle and your vehicle is greater than 9 mph (15 km/h)).

Functional limitations

The radar sensors are designed to detect the left and right adjacent lanes when the road lanes are the normal width. In certain situations, the display in the exterior mirror may turn on even though there is no vehicle located in the area that is critical for a lane change. For example:

- if the lanes are narrow or if your are driving on the edge of your lane. If this is the case, the system may have detected the vehicle in another lane that is *not* adjacent to your current lane.
- if you are driving through a curve. Side assist may react to a vehicle that is one lane over from the adjacent lane.
- if side assist reacts to other objects (such as high or displaced guard rails).
- In poor weather conditions. The side assist functions are limited.

Do not cover the radar sensors ⇨ *fig. 116* with stickers, deposits, bicycle wheels or other objects, because this will affect the function. Do not use side assist when towing a trailer. For information on cleaning, refer to ⇨ *page 182*.

WARNING

- Always pay attention to traffic and to the area around your vehicle. Side assist cannot replace a driver's attention. The driver alone is always responsible for lane changes and similar driving maneuvers. ▶

– Improper reliance on the side assist system can cause collisions and serious personal injury:
  – Never rely only on side assist when changing lanes.
  – Always check rear view mirrors to make sure that it is safe to change lanes.
– Side assist cannot detect all vehicles under all conditions- danger of accident!
– Please note that side assist indicates there are approaching vehicles, or vehicles in your blind spot, only after your vehicle has reached a driving speed of at least 19 mph (30 km/h).
– In certain situations, the system may not function or its function may be limited. For example:
  – if vehicles are approaching or being left behind very quickly. The display may not turn on in time.
  – in poor weather conditions such as heavy rain, snow or heavy mist.
  – on very wide lanes, in tight curves or if there is a rise in the road surface. Vehicles in the adjacent lane may not be detected because they are outside of the sensor range.

Note

The sensors can be displaced by impacts or damage to the bumper, wheel housing and underbody. This can affect the system. Have your authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility check their function.

Tips

– If the window glass in the driver's door or front passenger's door has been tinted, the display in the exterior mirror may be misinterpreted.
– For Declaration of Compliance to United States FCC and Industry Canada regulations ⇨ *page 249*.

Activating and deactivating

Applies to: vehicles with Audi side assist



Fig. 117 Driver's door: Side assist button

▸ Press the button ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 98* to switch the system on/off. The LED in the button turns on when side assist is switched on.

Adjusting the display brightness

Applies to: vehicles with Audi side assist

The signal brightness can be set in the radio or MMI.*

▸ Select: CAR function button > **Audi side assist**.
▸ Select: CAR function button > **Car systems*** control button > **Driver assist** > **Audi side assist**.

The display brightness adjusts automatically to the brightness of the surroundings, both in the information and in the warning stage. In very dark or very bright surroundings, the display is already set to the minimum or maximum level by the automatic adjustment. In such cases, you may notice no change when adjusting the brightness, or the change may only be noticeable once the surroundings change.

Adjust the brightness to a level where the display in the information stage will not disrupt your view forward. If you change the brightness, the display in the exterior mirror will briefly show the brightness level in the information stage. The brightness of the warning stage is linked to the brightness in the information stage and is adjusted along with the information stage adjustment. ▶

Tips

- Side assist is not active while you are making the adjustment.
- Your settings are automatically stored and assigned to the remote control key being used.

Driver messages

Applies to: vehicles with Audi side assist

If side assist switches off by itself, the LED in the button turns off and a message will appear in the instrument cluster display:

Audi side assist unavailable: Sensors blocked

The radar sensors' vision is affected. Do not cover the area in front of the sensors with bike wheels, stickers, dirt or other objects. Clean the area in front of the sensors, if necessary ⇨ *page 98, fig. 116*.

Audi side assist: Currently unavailable

Side assist cannot be switched on temporarily because there is a malfunction (for example, the battery charge level may be too low).

Audi side assist: System fault!

The system cannot guarantee that it will detect vehicles correctly and it is switched off. The sensors have been displaced or are faulty. Have the system checked by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility soon.

Audi side assist: Unavailable when towing

Side assist switches off automatically when a factory-installed trailer hitch is connected to the electrical connector on the trailer. There is no guarantee the system will switch off when using a retrofitted trailer hitch. Do not use side assist when towing a trailer.

Audi drive select

Drive settings

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with Audi drive select

Drive select provides the possibility to experience different types of vehicle settings in one vehicle. For instance, using the three **Comfort**, **Auto** and **Dynamic** modes, the driver can switch from a sporty to a comfortable driving mode with the press of a button.

Additionally, in vehicles with MMI*, the vehicle setup for **Individual*** mode can be customized by you. This makes it possible to combine settings such as a sporty engine tuning with comfortable steering.

WARNING

Improper use of the Audi drive select can cause collisions, other accidents and serious personal injury.

Description

Applies to: vehicles with Audi drive select

The vehicle setup in each mode depends on the vehicle's features. However, the engine, automatic transmission and steering are always involved.

Engine and automatic transmission

Depending on the mode, the engine and the automatic transmission respond quicker or in a more balanced manner to accelerator pedal movements. In the sporty dynamic mode, the automatic transmission shifts at higher RPMs.

Steering

The steering adapts in terms of steering effort and steering ratios. Indirect steering that moves easily, like the steering in comfort mode, is best suited to long drives on a highway. In contrast, dynamic mode provides sporty, direct steering.

The following applies to vehicles with dynamic steering*: the steering ratio changes based on vehicle speed in order to maintain optimum steering effort for the driver at all times. This sets the steering to be less sensitive at higher speeds in order to provide improved vehicle control. At reduced speeds, however, steering is more direct in order to keep the steering effort as minimal as possible when the driver is maneuvering the vehicle. At low and average speeds, dynamic steering additionally provides more responsive steering performance.

Adaptive dampers*

The adaptive dampers* use sensors to record information regarding steering movements, braking and acceleration operations by the driver, road surface, driving speed, and load. This makes it possible to adapt damping to the driving situation virtually in real time. Drive select also makes it possible to satisfy the desire for sporty suspension (Dynamic) and comfortable suspension (Comfort) without giving up balanced tuning (Auto).

Sport differential*

As a component of the all wheel drive system (quattro) ⇨ *page 172*, the sport differential* distributes the driving power to the rear axle depending on the situation. The distribution of power varies depending on the mode selected. The goal is a high level of agility and ability to accelerate on curves. The vehicle is very responsive to steering.

Audi adaptive cruise control*

The behavior when accelerating can be adjusted from comfortable to sporty, depending on the drive select mode. Adaptive cruise control also responds to the driving behavior of the vehicle ahead in a more conservative or sporty manner.

Engine sound*

The sound of the engine is adapted to the selected mode and ranges from subtle to sporty.

Tips

- In some models, the maximum vehicle speed can only be reached in the **Auto** and **Dynamic** modes.
- For vehicles with an automatic transmission, selecting the **Dynamic** mode results in ▶

sporty shifting characteristics. The S gear position engages automatically.

– In vehicles that have dynamic steering*, operating noise is heard when starting or stopping the engine. This does not indicate a problem.

Selecting the driving mode

Applies to: vehicles with Audi drive select

You can choose between **Comfort**, **Auto**, **Dynamic** *and* **Individual*** *modes.*



Fig. 118 Center console: Control for Audi drive select

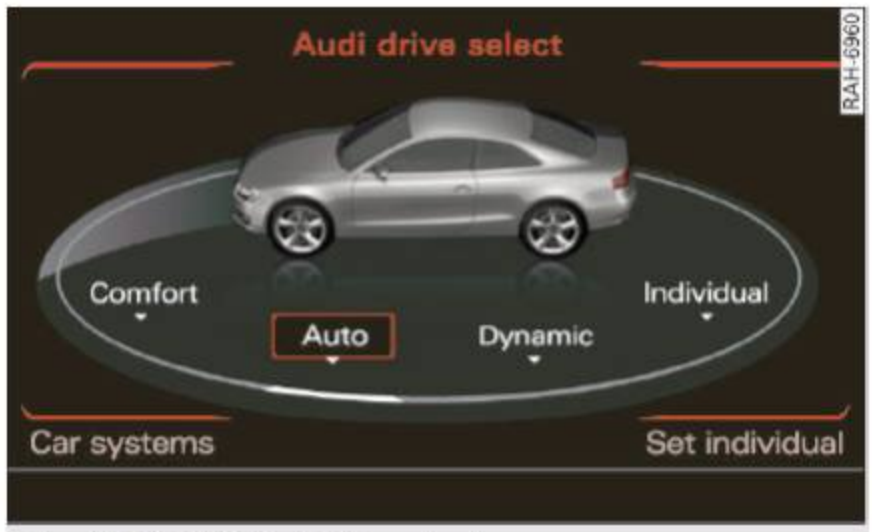


Fig. 119 MMI*: Audi drive select

▸ To set the mode, press the drive select button ⇨ *fig. 118* multiple times until the desired mode is displayed in the instrument cluster. Or

▸ In the MMI*, select: CAR function button > **Comfort**, **Auto**, **Dynamic** or **Individual***.

In vehicles without the MMI*, the drive select button is found underneath the shift/selector lever.

You can change the driving mode when the vehicle is stationary or while driving. If traffic permits, after changing modes, briefly take your foot off the accelerator pedal so that the recently selected mode is also activated for the engine and transmission.

Comfort - provides a comfort-oriented vehicle setup and is suited for long drives on highways.

Auto - provides an overall comfortable yet dynamic driving feel and is suited for every day use.

Dynamic - gives the driver a sporty driving feel and is suited to a sporty driving style.

Individual* - ⇨ *page 102*.

WARNING

Pay attention to traffic when operating drive select to prevent potential risk of an accident.

Adjusting the Individual mode

Applies to: vehicles with MMI and Audi drive select

You can personally specify the vehicle setup in the MMI.*

▸ Select the CAR function button > **Set individual** control button. Once you select the menu, you will automatically drive in the **individual** mode.

The equipment in your vehicle will determine which settings you can adjust. The following table provides an overview of the characteristics of each driving mode.

Systems	Comfort	Auto	Dynamic
Engine/Transmission	balanced	balanced	sporty
Steering	comfortable	balanced	sporty
Dynamic steering*	comfortable/indirect	balanced/direct	sporty/direct

Systems	Comfort	Auto	Dynamic
Adaptive dampers*	comfortable	balanced	sporty
Sport differential*	balanced	agile	sporty
Adaptive cruise control*	comfortable	balanced	sporty
Engine sound*	subtle	subtle/sporty[a)]	sporty

a) Subtle in the driving position D and sporty in the driving position S.

Tips

Your **Individual*** mode settings are automatically stored and assigned to the remote control key being used.

Parking System

Parking system

Applies to: vehicles with parking system

Different park assist systems may be used for parking or maneuvering, depending on the vehicle's features.

Parking system (rear)*:

For the *parking system (rear)*, the acoustic park assist system is installed in the rear of the vehicle ⇨ *page 104*.

The rear parking assist system uses ultrasonic sensors to determine the distance of the vehicle from a detected obstacle. There are a total of four sensors located on the rear bumper (two in the middle and two on the sides).

Parking system (rear, with rear view camera)*:

For the *parking system (rear, with rear view camera)*, the rear acoustic park assist system is integrated in the rear of the vehicle and the rear view camera is integrated in the rear lid ⇨ *page 107*.

The *parking system (rear, with rear view camera)* uses ultrasonic sensors to determine the distance of the vehicle from a detected obstacle. There are a total of four sensors located on the rear bumper (two in the middle and two on the sides).

WARNING

Make sure the sensors are not covered by stickers, deposits or any other obstructions as it may impair the sensor function. For information on cleaning, refer to ⇨ *page 182*.

Rear parking system

Rear acoustic park assist

Applies to: vehicles with parking system (rear)

The rear acoustic park assist warns you of obstacles or objects behind your car.

Description

The rear acoustic parking assist system determines the distance of the vehicle from an obstacle using ultrasonic sensors. There are 4 sensors in the rear bumper.

The range at which the sensors start to measure is **about**:

To the side	2 ft (0.60 m)
Center rear	5.2 ft (1.60 m)

Activation

Acoustic parking assist is activated automatically when **reverse gear** is engaged. A brief tone confirms that the system is activated.

Warning tones

Distance warning is given by warning tones which are generated by the rear signal generator. The volume and the pitch of the warning tones can be adjusted in the MMI* ⇨ *page 105*.

Reversing

Distance warning when reversing starts when an obstacle is detected in the range of the parking assist system. As the distance decreases, the time interval between the audible tones becomes shorter.

When the distance is less than 1ft (0.30 m), the tone becomes continuous. At this point you should stop backing up.

Please note that low objects already signalled by a warning can disappear from the system's detection range and will not continue to be signalled.

If the distance to an obstacle remains the same, the volume of the distance warning is gradually reduced after about 4 seconds (this does not apply in the continous tone range). Approaching another obstacle will result in the distance warning sounding at the normal volume again.

Malfunctions in the system

If a warning tone is audible for about five seconds when you turn on the ignition, there is a malfunction in the system. Have the problem corrected by your authorized Audi dealer.

Keep the sensors in the rear bumper clean and free from ice so that the acoustic park assist system can function properly. ▶

WARNING

– Sensors have dead spaces in which objects cannot be detected. Be especially alert for small children and animals, since they are not always detected by the sensors.
– The acoustic parking system is not a substitute for the driver's own caution and alertness. Ultimate responsibility always remains with the driver during parking and similar maneuvers. Always watch where you are driving.
– You should always adjust the volume and frequency of the warning tones so that you can easily hear the acoustic distance warning even if the radio is playing, the air-conditioner blower is on High or there is a high level of outside noise.
– Check the settings whenever anyone else has driven the vehicle before you.

Note

– Remember that low obstacles for which a warning has already been issued may “dive” below the system's sensing zone if the vehicle is being backed up closer. In this case, the warning sound shutting off does **not** indicate that you have cleared the obstacle. Instead, impact is imminent.
– Objects such as trailer hitches, chains, narrow posts or fences covered by a thin layer of paint may not always be detected by the system. They can still damage your vehicle without warning.

Tips

Keep the sensors in the rear bumper clean and free of snow and ice so that the acoustic parking assist system can function properly.

Adjusting the warning tones

Applies to: vehicles with parking system (rear)

The warning tones can be adjusted in the MMI.*

▸ Select: CAR function button > **Parking system**.
Or
▸ Select: CAR function button > **Car systems*** control button > **Driver assist** > **Parking aid**.

– **Rear volume** - rear sensor volume
– **Rear frequency** - rear sensor frequency
– **Music volume while parking** - when the parking system is switched on, the volume of the active audio source is lowered.

The newly adjusted value is briefly heard from the signal generator. The settings are automatically stored and assigned to the master key with remote control.

Rear parking system with rearview camera

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with parking system (rear, with rear view camera)

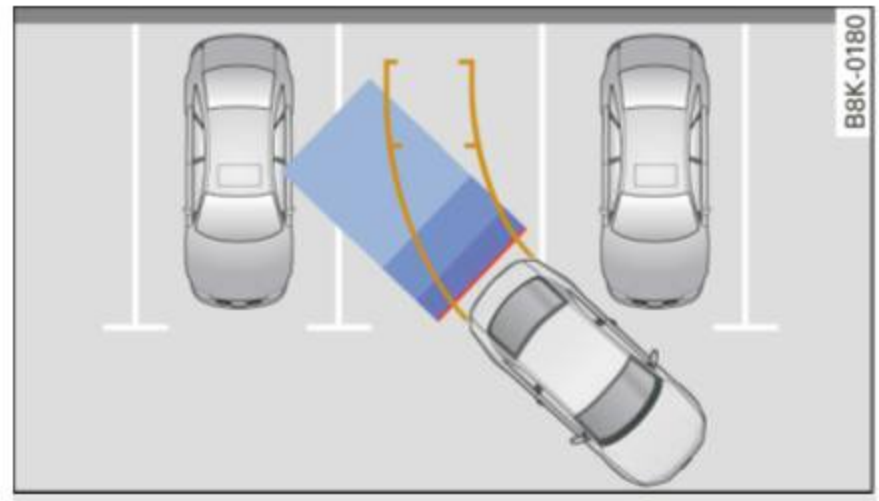


Fig. 120 Parking mode 1: reverse parking

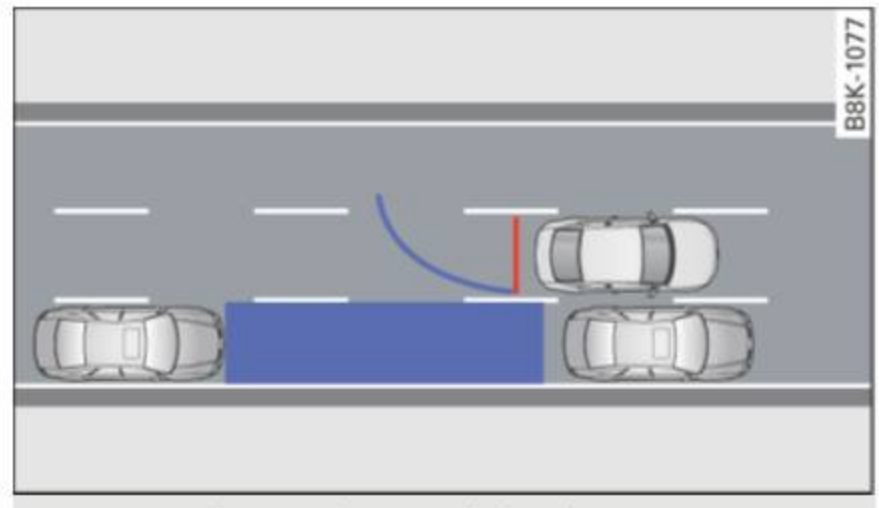


Fig. 121 Parking mode 2: parallel parking

Vehicles with the parking system are equipped with a **rear view camera** in addition to the acoustic parking system.

You can choose between two modes to assist you with parking. For example, you can use “parking mode 1” when parking in a parking space or garage ⇨ *fig. 120*. When you want to park parallel to the edge of the street, select “parking mode 2” ⇨ *fig. 121*. ▶

The rear acoustic park assist system is integrated in the rear of the vehicle and the rear view camera is integrated in the rear lid ⇨ *page 107*.

WARNING

The rear view camera has blind spots, in which objects cannot be detected. Be especially careful to check for small children and animals before backing up. Small children and animals will not always be detected by the sensors.

General Information

Applies to: vehicles with parking system (rear, with rear view camera)

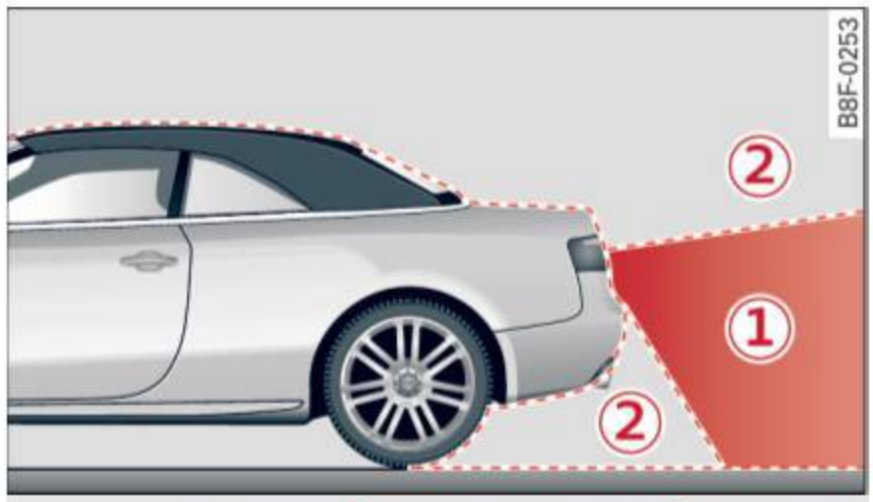


Fig. 122 Covered area ① and uncovered area ② of the rear view camera



Fig. 123 Trunk lid: Location of the rear view camera

Sensors in the bumper

Sensors are located in the rear bumpers. If these detect an obstacle, audible signals warn you. The range at which the sensors begin to measure is approximately:

To the side	2 ft (0.60 m)
Center rear	5.2 ft (1.60 m)

Distance warning when reversing starts when an obstacle is detected in the range of the parking assist system. As the distance decreases, the time interval between the audible tones becomes shorter.

When the distance is less than 1ft (0.30 m), the tone becomes continuous. At this point you should stop backing up.

If the distance to an obstacle stays the same, the volume of the distance signal chime is gradually reduced after about 4 seconds (does not affect the continuous signal tone). Approaching another obstacle will cause the distance signal to sound again at the normal volume.

Rear view camera coverage area

The MMI display shows the area covered by the rear view camera ⇨ *fig. 122* ①. Objects that are not in the area covered ② are not shown on the MMI display.

We recommend that you practice parking with the rear view camera in a traffic-free location or parking lot to become familiar with the system, the orientation lines, and their function. When doing this, there should be good light and weather conditions.

In the MMI display, objects or vehicles appear closer or further away if:

- you are driving in reverse gear from a level surface onto an incline, or a downward slope,
- you are driving in reverse gear toward protruding objects,
- the vehicle is carrying too much load in the rear.

The accuracy of the orientation lines and blue surfaces diminishes if:

- the rear view camera does not provide a reliable image, for example, in poor visibility conditions or if the lens is dirty,
- the image on the screen is not visible due to sun glare and reflection.

Caring for the rear view camera lens

The rear view camera is located above the rear license plate bracket. For the parking assist to operate, the lens ⇨ *fig. 123* must be kept clean: ▶

– Dampen the lens with a household alcohol-based glass cleaner, and clean the lens with a dry cloth ⇨ ⓘ.
– Remove snow with a hand brush and ice preferably with a de-icing spray ⇨ ⓘ.

WARNING

– The parking aid cannot replace the driver's attention. The driver alone is responsible for parking and similar driving maneuvers.
– Always keep your eyes on the vehicle's surroundings, using the rear view mirror as well.
– Do not allow yourself to be distracted from traffic by the rear view camera pictures.
– If the position and the installation angle of the camera has changed, for example, after a rear end collision, do not continue to use the system for safety reasons. Have it checked by a qualified dealership.

Note

– Low obstacles already signaled by a warning can disappear from the system's detection range as they are approached and will not continue to be signaled. Objects such as barrier chains, trailer draw bars, thin painted vertical poles or fences may not be detected by the system, posing risk of damage.
– Never use warm or hot water to remove snow or ice from the rear view camera lens - danger of crack formation on the lens!
– When cleaning the lens, never use products that are abrasive.

Switching on/off

Applies to: vehicles with parking system (rear, with rear view camera)

The rear view camera switches on automatically together with the acoustic park assist when you put the vehicle in reverse.

Switching on

▸ Put the vehicle in reverse gear, the acoustic parking system with rear view camera is activated automatically. Activation of the acoustic parking system is confirmed by a brief acknowledgement sound.

Switching off

▸ Drive faster than 9 mph (15 km/h), or
▸ take the vehicle out of reverse gear. The acoustic parking system is immediately deactivated, and the rear view camera picture is deactivated automatically after a period of about 15 seconds, or
▸ switch off the ignition.

The delay in deactivating the camera provides an uninterrupted view behind the vehicle especially when maneuvering in tight parking spaces and prevents the picture from turning off the every time you shift out of reverse.

If the warning message appears in the display but not the rear view camera picture, read and confirm the warning message. The acoustic distance signal is always active.

If you press a function button on the MMI control console, the rear view camera picture disappears. The rear view camera picture reappears the next time you park.

Further information on the warning message and the MMI control console can be found in the MMI instruction booklet.

WARNING

– Only use the rearview camera to assist you if it shows a good, clear picture. For example, the image may be affected by the sun shining into the lens, dirt on the lens or if there is a defect.
– Use the rearview camera only with the rear lid completely closed. Make sure any objects you may have mounted on the rear lid do not block the rearview camera.

Tips

– The rear view camera picture is available as soon as the MMI Display or the MMI is switched on, or the start-up phase is completed.
– The sensors must be kept clean and free of snow and ice for the park assist to operate. ▶

– You can change the volume and pitch of the signals as well as the display ⇨ *page 110*.
– What appears in the display is time-delayed.

Reverse Parking

Applies to: vehicles with parking system (rear, with rear view camera)

Parking mode 1 can be used when parking in a garage or parking space.

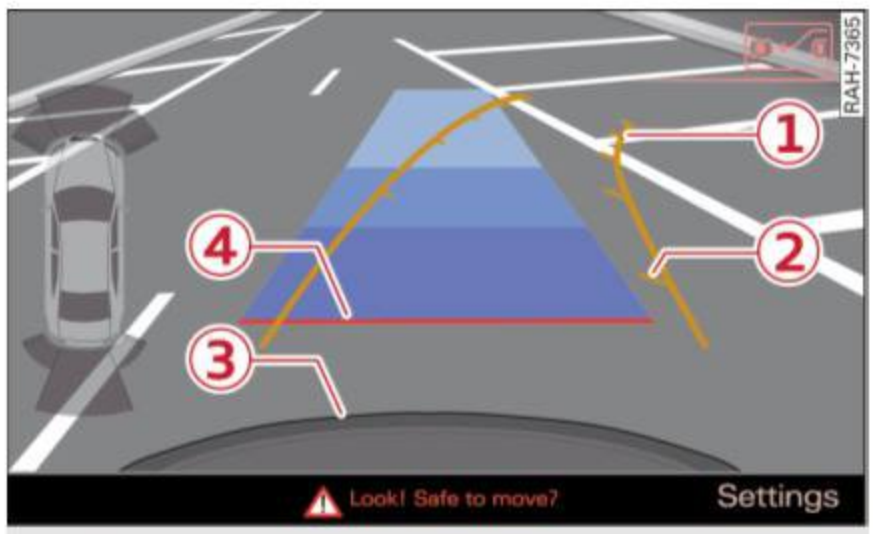


Fig. 124 MMI Display: Aiming at a parking spot

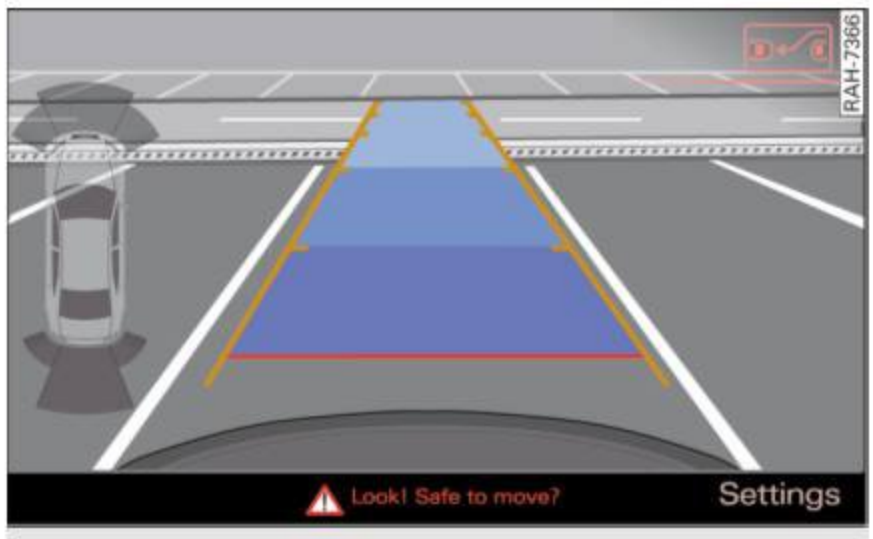


Fig. 125 MMI Display: Aligning the vehicle

- ▸ Switch the MMI on and select the reverse gear.
- ▸ Turn the steering wheel until the orange orientation lines ① appear in the parking spot ⇨ *fig. 124*. Use the markings ② to help you estimate the distance from an obstacle. Each marking corresponds to 3 ft (1 m). The blue area represents an extension of the vehicle's outline by approximately 16 ft (5 m) to the rear.
- ▸ While driving in reverse gear, adjust the steering wheel angle to fit the parking space with the aid of the orange orientation lines ⇨ ⓘ. ③ marks the rear bumper. You should stop driving in reverse as soon as and no later than when the red orientation line ④ abuts an object ⇨ ⚠!

WARNING

– The rear view camera does not show the entire area behind the vehicle ⇨ *page 106, fig. 122*. Watch out especially for small children and animals. The rear view camera cannot always detect them, posing risk of an accident!
– Please note that objects not touching the ground can appear to be further away than they really are (for example, the bumper of a parked vehicle, a trailer hitch, or the rear of a truck). In this case, you should not use the help lines to help with parking, which poses danger of an accident!

Note

– Low obstacles already signaled by a warning can disappear from the system's detection range as they are approached and will not continue to be signaled. Objects such as barrier chains, trailer draw bars, thin painted vertical poles or fences may not be detected by the system, posing risk of damage.
– In the MMI display, the direction of travel of the vehicle rear is represented depending on the steering wheel angle. The vehicle front swings out more than the vehicle rear. Maintain plenty of distance from an obstacle so that your outside mirror or a corner of your vehicle does not collide with any obstacles - danger of accident!

Parallel Parking

Applies to: vehicles with parking system (rear, with rear view camera)

Use parking mode 2 to help you park on the edge of a street.

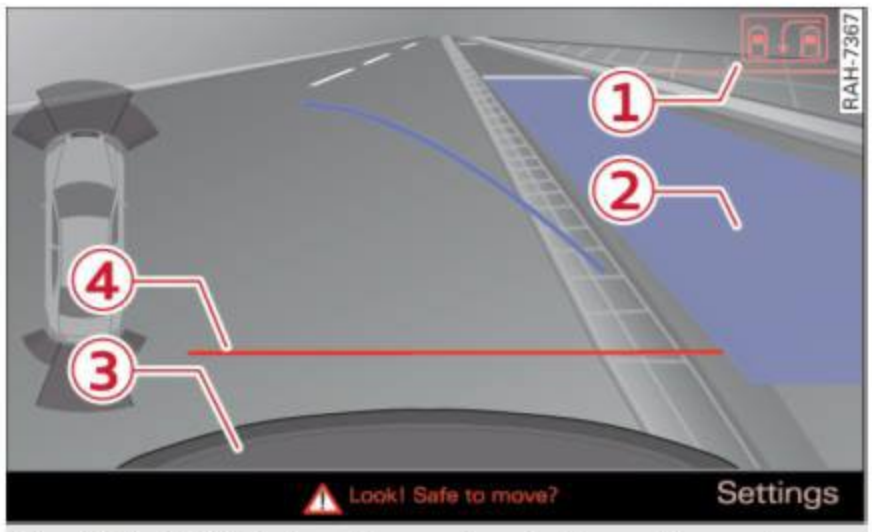


Fig. 126 MMI Display: blue surface in the parking spot

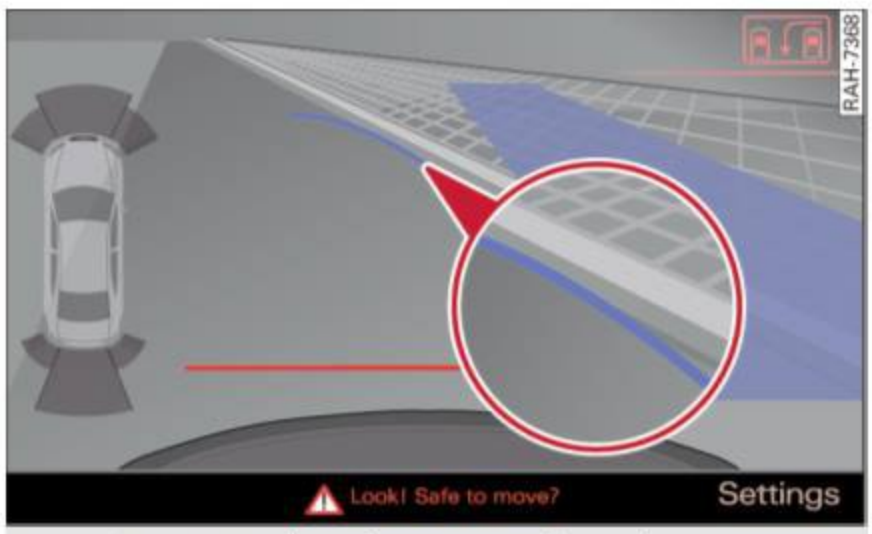


Fig. 127 MMI Display: Blue curve on the curb

The following steps apply only when there is no obstacle (such as a wall) next to the parking spot. Otherwise, please read the "Tips on Parking Next to Obstacles" ⇨ *page 109*.

- ▸ Activate the turn signal.
- ▸ Position your vehicle parallel to the edge of the street, approximately 3 ft (1 m) from a parked vehicle.
- ▸ Switch the MMI on and select the reverse gear. The parking aid turns on and parking mode 1 appears on the display.
- ▸ Press the **Mode** ⇨ *fig. 126* ① control button on the MMI control console. Parking mode 2 appears.
- ▸ Back up in reverse gear and align your vehicle so that the blue area ② borders on the rear end of the vehicle or on the parking spot line. The blue area represents an extension of the vehicle's outline by approximately 16 ft (5 m) to the rear. The long side of the blue area should be on the curb. The entire blue area must fit into the parking spot.
- ▸ While the vehicle is stationary, turn the steering wheel to the right as far as it will go.
- ▸ Back into the parking spot. Stop the vehicle as soon as the blue curve touches the curb ⇨ *fig. 127*.
- ▸ While the vehicle is stationary, turn the steering wheel to the left as far as it will go.
- ▸ Continue to back up into the parking spot until the vehicle is parked parallel to the curb. ③ marks the rear bumper. You should stop driving in reverse as soon as and no later than when the red orientation line ④ abuts an object ⇨ ⚠! Keep an eye on the front of your vehicle while doing this ⇨ (!).

Parking next to obstacles

When there is an obstacle (such as a wall) next to the parking spot, choose a spot with more space on the sides. Position the long side of the blue area so that there is sufficient space from the curb. The area must not be on the curb. You will also need to start turning the steering wheel much earlier. There should be a sufficient amount of space between the curb and the blue curve, and the blue curve ⇨ *fig. 127* must **not** touch the curb.

⚠ WARNING

- The rear view camera does not show the entire area behind the vehicle ⇨ *page 106, fig. 122*. Watch out especially for small children and animals. The rear view camera cannot always detect them, posing risk of an accident!
- Please note that objects not touching the ground can appear to be further away than they really are (for example, the bumper of a parked vehicle, a trailer hitch, or the rear of a truck). In this case, you should not use the help lines to help with parking, which poses danger of an accident!

(!) Note

In the MMI display, the direction of travel of the vehicle rear is represented depending on the steering wheel angle. The vehicle front ▸

swings out more than the vehicle rear. Maintain plenty of distance from an obstacle so that your outside mirror or a corner of your vehicle does not collide with any obstacles - danger of accident!

Tips

The left or right orientation lines and surfaces will be displayed, depending on the turn signal being used.

Adjusting the display and warning tones

Applies to: vehicles with parking system (rear, with rear view camera)

The display and warning tones are adjusted in the radio or MMI.*

- Select: CAR function button > **Parking system**.
  Or
- Select: CAR function button > **Car systems*** control button > **Driver assist** > **Parking aid**.

Display

– **Off** - when the parking system is switched on, only audible signals are given.
– **On** - when the parking system is switched on, the picture from the rear view camera is displayed.

Warning tones

– **Rear volume** - rear sensor volume
– **Rear frequency** - rear sensor frequency
– **Music volume while parking** - when the parking system is switched on, the volume of the active audio source is lowered.

The newly adjusted value is briefly heard from the signal generator. The settings are automatically stored and assigned to the remote control key.

WARNING

– Always make sure that the volume and frequency of the warning tones is adjusted so that you can easily hear the acoustic distance signal even if the radio is playing, the air-conditioner blower is on High or there is a high level of outside noise.
– Check the settings whenever someone else has driven the vehicle before you.

Tips

– The warning tones can also be adjusted directly from the rear view camera image. Simply press the Settings* control button.
– Changed settings are activated when parking assist is switched on again.

Error messages

Applies to: vehicles with parking system (rear, with rear view camera)

If a warning tone is audible for about five seconds when you turn on the ignition, there is a malfunction in the system. Have the problem corrected by your authorized Audi dealer.

Keep the sensors in the rear bumper clean and free from ice so that the acoustic park assist system can function properly.

Driving safety

Basics

Safe driving habits

Please remember - safety first!

This chapter contains important information, tips, instructions and warnings that you need to read and observe for your own safety, the safety of your passengers and others. We have summarized here what you need to know about safety belts, airbags, child restraints as well as child safety. Your safety is for us *priority number 1*. Always observe the information and warnings in this section - for your own safety as well as that of your passengers.

The information in this section applies to all model versions of your vehicle. Some of the features described in this sections may be standard equipment on some models, or may be optional equipment on others. If you are not sure, ask your authorized Audi dealer.

WARNING

- Always make sure that you follow the instructions and heed the WARNINGS in this Manual. It is in your interest and in the interest of your passengers.
- Always keep the complete Owner's Literature in your Audi when you lend or sell your vehicle so that this important information will always be available to the driver and passengers.
- Always keep the Owner's literature handy so that you can find it easily if you have questions.

Safety equipment

The safety features are part of the occupant restraint system and work together to help reduce the risk of injury in a wide variety of accident situations.

Your safety and the safety of your passengers should not be left to chance. Advances in technology have made a variety of features available to help reduce the risk of injury in an accident.

The following is a list of just a few of the safety features in your Audi:

- sophisticated safety belts for driver and all passenger seating positions,
- belt force limiters for the front seats,
- belt pretensioners for the seats,
- head restraints for each seating position,
- front airbags,
- side airbags in the front seats,
- special LATCH anchorages for child restraints,
- adjustable steering column.

These individual safety features, can work together as a system to help protect you and your passengers in a wide range of accidents. These features cannot work as a system if they are not always correctly adjusted and correctly used.

Safety is everybody's responsibility!

Important things to do before driving

Safety is everybody's job! Vehicle and occupant safety always depends on the informed and careful driver.

For your safety and the safety of your passengers, **before driving always:**

- ▸ Make sure that all lights and signals are operating correctly.
- ▸ Make sure that the tire pressure is correct.
- ▸ Make sure that all windows are clean and afford good visibility to the outside.
- ▸ Secure all luggage and other items carefully ⇨ *page 62*.
- ▸ Make sure that nothing can interfere with the pedals.
- ▸ Adjust front seat, head restraint and mirrors correctly for your height.
- ▸ Instruct passengers to adjust the head restraints according to their height.
- ▸ Make sure to use the right child restraint correctly to protect children ⇨ *page 150, Child safety*.
- ▸ Sit properly in your seat and make sure that your passengers do the same ⇨ *page 57, Seats and storage*.

- Fasten your safety belt and wear it properly. Also instruct your passengers to fasten their safety belts properly ⇨ *page 122*.

What impairs driving safety?

Safe driving is directly related to the condition of the vehicle, the driver as well as the driver's ability to concentrate on the road without being distracted.

The driver is responsible for the safety of the vehicle and all of its occupants. If your ability to drive is impaired, safety risks for everybody in the vehicle increase and you also become a hazard to everyone else on the road ⇨ ⚠. Therefore:

- Do not let yourself be distracted by passengers or by using a cellular telephone.
- NEVER drive when your driving ability is impaired (by medications, alcohol, drugs, etc.).
- Observe all traffic laws, rules of the road and speed limits and plain common sense.
- ALWAYS adjust your speed to road, traffic and weather conditions.
- Take frequent breaks on long trips. Do not drive for more than two hours at a stretch.
- Do NOT drive when you are tired, under pressure or when you are stressed.

⚠ WARNING

Impaired driving safety increases the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever a vehicle is being used.

Correct passenger seating positions

Proper seating position for the driver

The proper driver seating position is important for safe, relaxed driving.

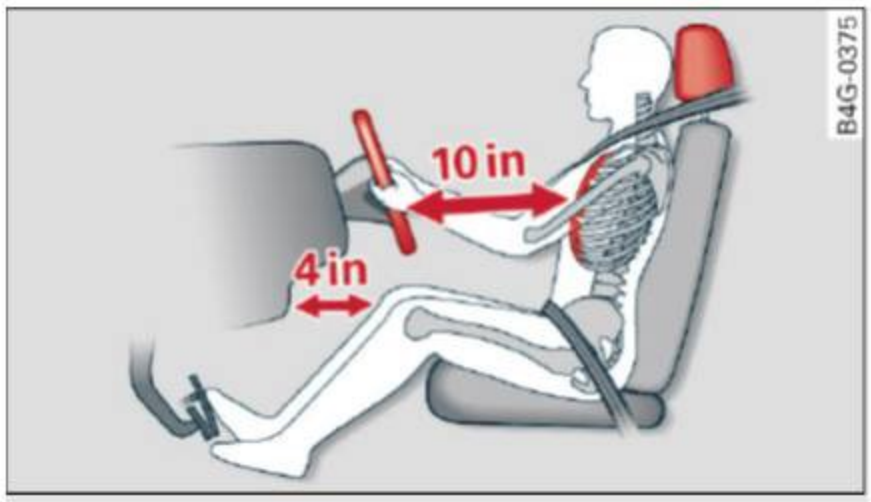


Fig. 128 Correct seating position

For your own safety and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, we recommend that you adjust the driver's seat to the following position:

- Adjust the driver's seat so that you can easily push the pedals all the way to the floor while keeping your knee(s) slightly bent ⇨ ⚠.
- Adjust the angle of the seatback so that it is in an upright position so that your back comes in full contact with it when you drive.
- Adjust the steering wheel so that there is a distance of at least 10 inches (25 cm) between the steering wheel and your breast bone ⇨ *fig. 128*. If not possible, see your authorized Audi dealer about adaptive equipment.
- Adjust the steering wheel so that the steering wheel and airbag cover points at your chest and not at your face.
- Grasp the top of the steering wheel with your elbow(s) slightly bent.
- Applies to vehicles with adjustable head restraints: Adjust the head restraint so the upper edge is as even as possible with the top of your head. If that is not possible, try to adjust the head restraint so that it is as close to this position as possible.
- Fasten and wear safety belts correctly ⇨ *page 125*.
- Always keep both feet in the footwell so that you are in control of the vehicle at all times. ▶

For detailed information on how to adjust the driver's seat, see ⇨ *page 58*.

WARNING

Drivers who are unbelted, out of position or too close to the airbag can be seriously injured by an airbag as it unfolds. To help reduce the risk of serious personal injury:

– Always adjust the driver's seat and the steering wheel so that there are at least 10 inches (25 cm) between your breastbone and the steering wheel.
– Always hold the steering wheel on the outside of the steering wheel rim with your hands at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions to help reduce the risk of personal injury if the driver's airbag inflates.
– Never hold the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position or with your hands at other positions inside the steering wheel rim or on the steering wheel hub. Holding the steering wheel the wrong way can cause serious injuries to the hands, arms and head if the driver's airbag deploys.
– Pointing the steering wheel toward your face decreases the ability of the supplemental driver's airbag to protect you in a collision.
– Always sit in an upright position and never lean against or place any part of your body too close to the area where the airbags are located.
– Before driving, always adjust the front seats and head restraints properly and make sure that all passengers are properly restrained.
– Never adjust the seats while the vehicle is moving. Your seat may move unexpectedly and you could lose control of the vehicle.
– Never drive with the backrest reclined or tilted far back! The farther the backrests are tilted back, the greater the risk of injury due to incorrect positioning of the safety belt and improper seating position.
– Children must always ride in child safety seats ⇨ *page 150*. Special precautions apply when installing a child safety seat on the front passenger seat ⇨ *page 130*.

Proper seating position for the front passenger

The proper front passenger seating position is important for safe, relaxed driving.

For your own safety and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, we recommend that you adjust the seat for the front passenger to the following position:

- Move the front passenger seat back as far as possible. There must be a minimum of 10 inches (25 cm) between the breastbone and the instrument panel ⇨ ⚠.
- Adjust the angle of the seatback so that it is in an upright position and your back comes in full contact with it whenever the vehicle is moving.
- Applies to vehicles with adjustable head restraints: Adjust the head restraint so the upper edge is as even as possible with the top of your head. If that is not possible, try to adjust the head restraint so that it is as close to this position as possible.
- Keep both feet flat on the floor in front of the front passenger seat.
- Fasten and wear safety belts correctly ⇨ *page 125*.

For detailed information on how to adjust the front passenger's seat, see ⇨ *page 57*.

WARNING

Front seat passengers who are unbelted, out of position or too close to the airbag can be seriously injured or killed by the airbag as it unfolds. To help reduce the risk of serious personal injury:

– Passengers must always sit in an upright position and never lean against or place any part of their body too close to the area where the airbags are located.
– Passengers who are unbelted, out of position or too close to the airbag can be seriously injured by an airbag as it unfolds with great force in the blink of an eye.
– Always make sure that there are at least 10 inches (25 cm) between the front passenger's breastbone and the instrument panel. ▶

– Each passenger must always sit on a seat of their own and properly fasten and wear the safety belt belonging to that seat.
– Before driving, always adjust the front passenger seat and head restraint properly.
– Always keep your feet on the floor in front of the seat. Never rest them on the seat, instrument panel, out of the window, etc. The airbag system and safety belt will not be able to protect you properly and can even increase the risk of injury in a crash.
– Never drive with the backrest reclined or tilted far back! The farther the backrests are tilted back, the greater the risk of injury due to incorrect positioning of the safety belt and improper seating position.
– Children must always ride in child safety seats ⇨ *page 150*. Special precautions apply when installing a child safety seat on the front passenger seat ⇨ *page 130*.

Proper seating positions for passengers in rear seats

Rear seat passengers must sit upright with both feet on the floor consistent with their physical size and be properly restrained whenever the vehicle is in use.

To reduce the risk of injury caused by an incorrect seating position in the event of a sudden braking maneuver or an accident, your passengers on the rear bench seat must always observe the following:

- Make sure that the seatback is securely latched in the upright position ⇨ *page 64*.
- Keep both feet flat in the footwell in front of the rear seat.
- Fasten and wear safety belts properly ⇨ *page 125*.
- Make sure that children are always properly restrained in a child restraint that is appropriate for their size and age ⇨ *page 150*.

WARNING

Passengers who are improperly seated on the rear seat can be seriously injured in a crash.

– Each passenger must always sit on a seat of their own and properly fasten and wear the safety belt belonging to that seat.
– Safety belts only offer maximum protection when the seatback is securely latched in the upright position and the safety belts are properly positioned on the body. By not sitting upright, a rear seat passenger increases the risk of personal injury from improperly positioned safety belts!

Proper adjustment of head restraints

Applies to: vehicles with adjustable head restraints

Correctly adjusted head restraints are an important part of your vehicle's occupant restraint system and can help to reduce the risk of injuries in accident situations.

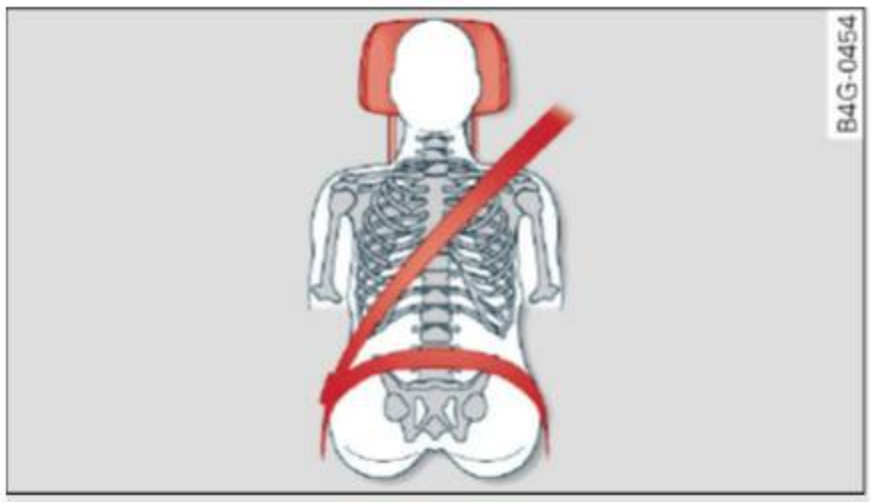


Fig. 129 Head restraint: viewed from the front

The head restraints must be correctly adjusted to achieve the best protection.

- Adjust the head restraints so the upper edge is as even as possible with the top of your head. If that is not possible, try to adjust the head restraint so that it is as close to this position as possible ⇨ *fig. 129*.

Adjusting head restraints ⇨ *page 60*.

WARNING

All seats are equipped with head restraints. Driving without head restraints or with head restraints that are not properly adjusted increases the risk of serious or fatal neck injury dramatically. To help reduce the risk of injury:
– Always drive with the head restraints in place and properly adjusted. ▶

- Every person in the vehicle must have a properly adjusted head restraint.
- Always make sure each person in the vehicle properly adjusts their head restraint. Adjust the head restraints so the upper edge is as even as possible with the top of your head. If that is not possible, try to adjust the head restraint so that it is as close to this position as possible.
- Never attempt to adjust head restraint while driving. If you have driven off and must adjust the driver headrest for any reason, first stop the vehicle safely before attempting to adjust the head restraint.
- Children must always be properly restrained in a child restraint that is appropriate for their age and size ⇨ *page 150*.

Examples of improper seating positions

The occupant restraint system can only reduce the risk of injury if vehicle occupants are properly seated.

Improper seating positions can cause serious injury or death. Safety belts can only work when they are properly positioned on the body. Improper seating positions reduce the effectiveness of safety belts and will even increase the risk of injury and death by moving the safety belt to critical areas of the body. Improper seating positions also increase the risk of serious injury and death when an airbag deploys and strikes an occupant who is not in the proper seating position. A driver is responsible for the safety of all vehicle occupants and especially for children. Therefore:

▸ Never allow anyone to assume an incorrect seating position when the vehicle is being used ⇨ ⚠.

The following bulletins list only some sample positions that will increase the risk of serious injury and death. Our hope is that these examples will make you more aware of seating positions that are dangerous.

Therefore, whenever the vehicle is moving:

- never stand up in the vehicle
- never stand on the seats
- never kneel on the seats
- never ride with the seatback reclined
- never lie down on the rear seat
- never lean up against the instrument panel
- never sit on the edge of the seat
- never sit sideways
- never lean out the window
- never put your feet out the window
- never put your feet on the instrument panel
- never rest your feet on the seat cushion or back of the seat
- never ride in the footwell
- never ride in the cargo area

⚠ WARNING

Improper seating positions increase the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever a vehicle is being used.

- Always make sure that all vehicle occupants stay in a proper seating position and are properly restrained whenever the vehicle is being used.

Driver's and front passenger's footwell

Important safety instructions

Applies to: vehicles with knee airbags

⚠ WARNING

Always make sure that the knee airbag can inflate without interference. Objects between yourself and the airbag can increase the risk of injury in an accident by interfering with the way the airbag deploys or by being pushed into you as the airbag deploys.

- No persons (children) or animals should ride in the footwell in front of the passenger seat. If the airbag deploys, this can result in serious or fatal injuries.
- No objects of any kind should be carried in the footwell area in front of the driver's or passenger's seat. Bulky objects (shopping bags, for example) can hamper or prevent proper deployment of the airbag. Small objects can be thrown through the vehicle if ▶

the airbag deploys and injure you or your passengers.

Pedal area

Pedals

The pedals must always be free to move and must never be interfered with by a floor mat or any other object.

Make sure that all pedals move freely without interference and that nothing prevents them from returning to their original positions.

Only use floor mats that leave the pedal area free and can be secured with floor mat fasteners.

If a brake circuit fails, increased brake pedal travel is required to bring the vehicle to a full stop.

WARNING

Pedals that cannot move freely can cause loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious injury.

– Never place any objects in the driver's footwell. An object could get into the pedal area and interfere with pedal function. In case of sudden braking or an accident, you would not be able to brake or accelerate!
– Always make sure that nothing can fall or move into the driver's footwell.

Floor mats on the driver side

Always use floor mats that can be securely attached to the floor mat fasteners and do not interfere with the free movement of the pedals.

▸ Make sure that the floor mats are properly secured and cannot move and interfere with the pedals ⇨ ⚠.

Use only floor mats that leave the pedal area unobstructed and that are firmly secured so that they cannot slip out of position. You can obtain suitable floor mats from your authorized Audi dealer.

Floor mat fasteners are installed in your Audi.

Floor mats used in your vehicle must be attached to these fasteners. Properly securing the floor mats will prevent them from sliding into positions that could interfere with the pedals or impair safe operation of your vehicle in other ways.

WARNING

Pedals that cannot move freely can result in a loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious personal injury.

– Always make sure that floor mats are properly secured.
– Never place or install floor mats or other floor coverings in the vehicle that cannot be properly secured in place to prevent them from slipping and interfering with the pedals or the ability to control the vehicle.
– Never place or install floor mats or other floor coverings on top of already installed floor mats. Additional floor mats and other coverings will reduce the size of the pedal area and interfere with the pedals.
– Always properly reinstall and secure floor mats that have been taken out for cleaning.
– Always make sure that objects cannot fall into the driver footwell while the vehicle is moving. Objects can become trapped under the brake pedal and accelerator pedal causing a loss of vehicle control.

Storing cargo correctly

Loading the luggage compartment

All luggage and other objects must be properly stowed and secured in the luggage compartment.

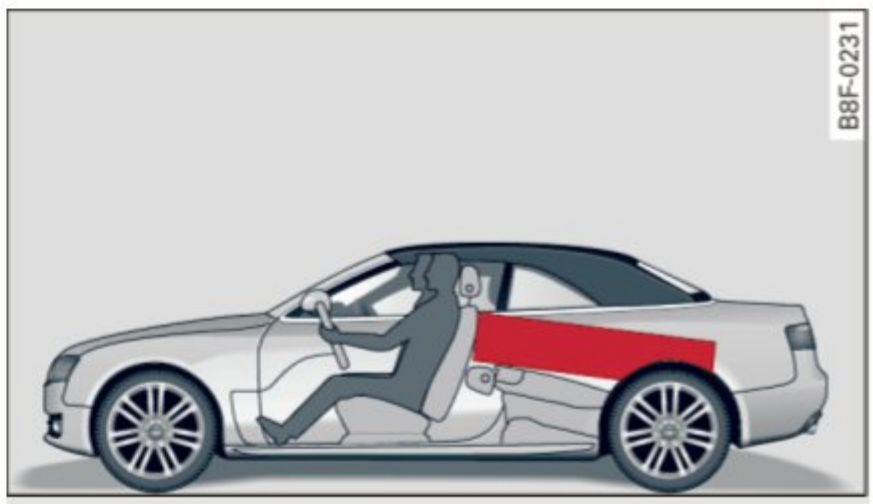


Fig. 130 Safe load positioning: place heavy objects as low and as far forward as possible. ▶

Loose items in the luggage compartment can shift suddenly, changing vehicle handling characteristics. Loose items can also increase the risk of serious personal injury in a sudden vehicle maneuver or in a collision.

- ▸ Distribute the load evenly in the luggage compartment.
- ▸ Always place and properly secure heavy items in the luggage compartment as low and as far forward as possible ⇨ *fig. 130*.
- ▸ Secure luggage using the tie-downs provided ⇨ *page 64*.
- ▸ Make sure that the rear seatback is securely latched in place.

WARNING

Improperly stored luggage or other items can fly through the vehicle causing serious personal injury in the event of hard braking or an accident. To help reduce the risk of serious personal injury:

- Always put objects, for example, luggage or other heavy items in the luggage compartment.
- Always secure objects in the luggage compartment using the tie-down eyelets and suitable straps.

WARNING

Heavy loads will influence the way your vehicle handles. To help reduce the risk of a loss of control leading to serious personal injury:

- Always keep in mind when transporting heavy objects, that a change in the center of gravity can also cause changes in vehicle handling:
  - Always distribute the load as evenly as possible.
  - Place heavy objects as far forward in the luggage compartment as possible.
- Never exceed the Gross Axle Weight Rating or the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating specified on the safety compliance sticker on the left door jamb. Exceeding permissible weight standards can cause the vehicle to slide and handle differently.
- Please observe information on safe driving ⇨ *page 111*.

WARNING

To help prevent poisonous exhaust gas from being drawn into the vehicle, always keep the rear lid closed while driving.

- Never transport objects larger than those fitting completely into the luggage area because the rear lid cannot be fully closed.
- If you absolutely must drive with the rear lid open, observe the following notes to reduce the risk of poisoning:
  - Close all windows,
  - Close the power top,
  - Open all air outlets in the instrument panel,
  - Switch off the air recirculation,
  - Set the fresh air fan to the highest speed.

WARNING

Always make sure that the doors, all windows, the power top and the rear lid are securely closed and locked to reduce the risk of injury when the vehicle is not being used.

- After closing the rear lid, always make sure that it is properly closed and locked.
- Never leave your vehicle unattended especially with the rear lid left open. A child could crawl into the vehicle through the luggage compartment and close the rear lid becoming trapped and unable to get out. Being trapped in a vehicle can lead to serious personal injury.
- Never let children play in or around the vehicle.
- Never let passengers ride in the luggage compartment. Vehicle occupants must always be properly restrained in one of the vehicle's seating positions.

Tips

- Air circulation helps to reduce window fogging. Stale air escapes to the outside through vents in the trim panel. Be sure to keep these slots free and open. ▸

8F0012721BB

– The tire pressure must correspond to the load. The tire pressure is shown on the tire pressure label. The tire pressure label is located on the driver's side B-pillar. The tire pressure label lists the recommended cold tire inflation pressures for the vehicle at its maximum capacity weight and the tires that were on your vehicle at the time it was manufactured. For recommended tire pressures for normal load conditions, please see chapter ⇨ *page 217*.

Tie-downs

Applies to: vehicles with tie-downs

The luggage compartment is equipped with four tie-downs to secure luggage and other items.

Use the tie-downs to secure your cargo properly ⇨ *page 116, Loading the luggage compartment*.

In a collision, the laws of physics mean that even smaller items that are loose in the vehicle will become heavy missiles that can cause serious injury. Items in the vehicle possess energy which vary with vehicle speed and the weight of the item. Vehicle speed is the most significant factor.

For example, in a frontal collision at a speed of 30 mph (48 km/h), the forces acting on a 10-lb (4.5 kg) object are about 20 times the normal weight of the item. This means that the weight of the item would suddenly be about 200 lbs. (90 kg). You can imagine the injuries that a 200 lbs. (90 kg) item flying freely through the passenger compartment could cause in a collision like this.

WARNING

Weak, damaged or improper straps used to secure items to tie-downs can fail during hard braking or in a collision and cause serious personal injury.

– Always use suitable mounting straps and properly secure items to the tie-downs in the luggage compartment to help prevent items from shifting or flying forward as dangerous missiles.
– When the rear seat backrest is folded down, always use suitable mounting straps and properly secure items to the tie-downs in the luggage compartment to help prevent items from flying forward as dangerous missiles into the passenger compartment.
– Never attach a child safety seat tether strap to a tie-down.

Reporting Safety Defects

Applicable to U.S.A.

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying Audi of America, Inc.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defects exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or Audi of America, Inc.

To contact the NHTSA, you may either call:

Tel.: 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153) or 1-800-424-9393

or you may write to: ▶

NHTSA
U.S. Department of Transportation
1200 New Jersey Ave., S.E.
West Building
Washington, DC 20590

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from:

http://www.safercar.gov

Applicable to Canada

If you live in Canada and you believe that your vehicle has a defect that could cause a crash, injury or death, you should immediately inform Transport Canada, Defect Investigations and Recalls. You should also notify Audi Canada.

Canadian customers who wish to report a safety-related defect to Transport Canada, Defect Investigations and Recalls, may either call Transport Canada toll-free at:

Tel.: 1-800-333-0510 or
Tel.: 1-819-994-3328 (Ottawa region and from other countries)
TTY for hearing impaired: Tel.: 1-888-675-6863

or contact Transport Canada by mail at:

Transport Canada
Motor Vehicle Safety Investigations Laboratory
80 Noel Street
Gatineau, QC
J8Z 0A1

For additional road safety information, please visit the Road Safety website at:

http://www.tc.gc.ca/eng/roadsafety/menu.htm

Active rollover protection system

Function

The rollover protection system helps protect vehicle occupants in the event of a rollover.



Fig. 131 Rear seats: Rollbar deployment range

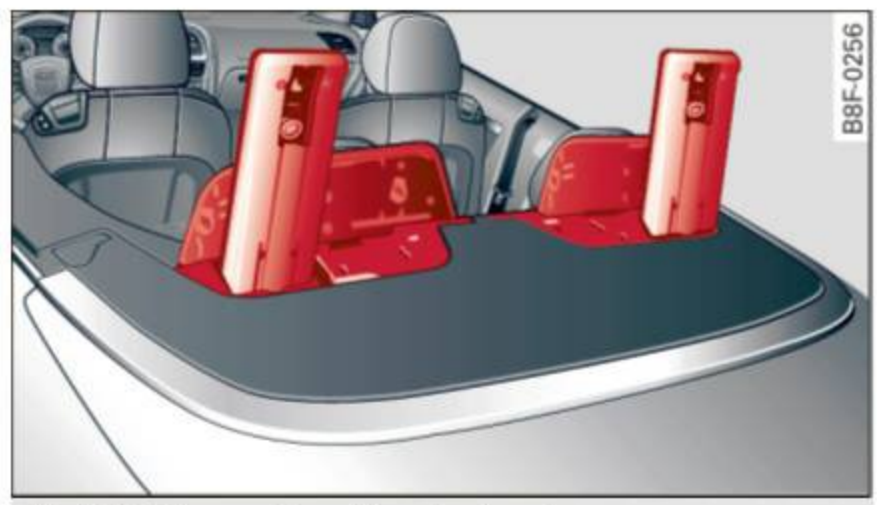


Fig. 132 Rear seats: rollbar deployed

The active rollover protection system consists of:

– two rollbars ▶

– the safety belts with belt tensioners
– the windshield frame
– the rollover sensors

The active rollover protection system provides additional safety in the event of a rollover. Within milliseconds, sensors deploy two rollbars located behind the headrests in the rear seats ⇨ *fig. 132*.

The rollbars, reinforced windshield frame and belt tensioners help protect front and rear passengers in the event of a rollover.

The rollover protection system functions when the power top is both open and closed.

WARNING

Do not use the area behind the rear seat headrests ⇨ *fig. 131* as a storage area. This is the area where the rollbars deploy. If the rollover protection system is triggered, objects placed there can be propelled through the vehicle and make it more difficult for the rollbars to deploy. This increases the risk for serious or life-threatening injuries.

When is rollover protection deployed?

Rollover protection deploys in a collision or rollover.

Depending on the collision, sensors throughout the vehicle and the control module trigger the rollover system to deploy.

For safety reasons, rollover protection also deploys during front, side and rear collisions above a certain level of severity.

Retracting rollover protection



Fig. 133 Deployed rollbar with release loop.

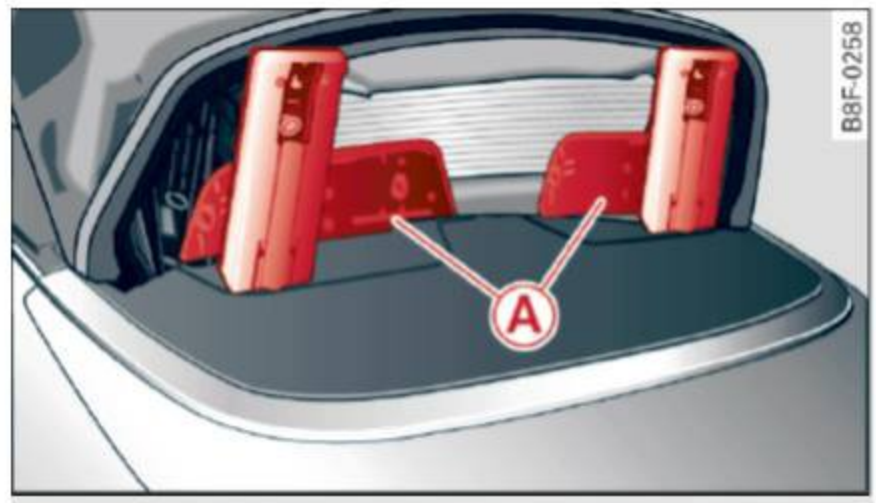


Fig. 134 Deployed rollbar with power top frame facing upward.

If the rollover protection has triggered but the vehicle was not involved in an accident, you can retract the rollover protection yourself in an emergency. Drive to your authorized Audi dealer or qualified repair facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

With the power top open

- ▸ Pull the loop upward in the direction of the arrow and hold it in place ⇨ *fig. 133*.
- ▸ Slide the rollbar down.
- ▸ Release the loop just before the rollbar reaches its end position by approximately 1-2 in. (3-5 cm).
- ▸ Press the rollbar down until it stops.
- ▸ Make sure the rollbar is secure before releasing it.
- ▸ Close the cover Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 134*.
- ▸ Repeat the procedure on the other rollbar.

With the power top closed

- ▸ Switch the ignition on.
- ▸ Press the convertible switch to adjust the convertible frame until it is vertical ⇨ *fig. 134*. ▶

- ▸ Pull the loop upward in the direction of the arrow and hold it in place ⇨ *fig. 133*.
- ▸ Slide the rollbar down.
- ▸ Release the loop just before the rollbar reaches its end position (3-5 cm).
- ▸ Press the rollbar down until it stops.
- ▸ Make sure the rollbar is secure before releasing it.
- ▸ Close the cover Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 134*.
- ▸ Repeat the procedure on the other rollbar.
- ▸ You can now close the power top again.

WARNING

– Make sure your head or other parts of your body are not located in the area above the rollbar when pressing the rollbar down. If the rollbar is not secured correctly, it could deploy again as soon as you release it and cause injuries.
– Have the rollover protection system checked by your authorized Audi dealer if it is faulty. Otherwise, the system may not deploy correctly in a collision.
– Modifying the rollover protection system or individual components is not permitted.
– Work on the rollover protection system should only be performed by your authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop. Otherwise the system may not function correctly in a collision or it could deploy unexpectedly.
– Have the system inspected at service intervals. This ensures the system will always be ready for use. Have your authorized Audi dealer check the rollover protection system every two years at the latest.

8F0012721BB

Safety belts

General information

Always wear safety belts!

Wearing safety belts correctly saves lives!

This chapter explains why safety belts are necessary, how they work and how to adjust and wear them correctly.

▸ Read all the information that follows and heed all of the instructions and WARNINGS.

WARNING

Not wearing safety belts or wearing them improperly increases the risk of serious personal injury and death.

– Safety belts are the single most effective means available to reduce the risk of serious injury and death in automobile accidents. For your protection and that of your passengers, always correctly wear safety belts when the vehicle is moving.
– Pregnant women, injured, or physically impaired persons must also use safety belts. Like all vehicle occupants, they are more likely to be seriously injured if they do not wear safety belts. The best way to protect a fetus is to protect the mother - throughout the entire pregnancy.
– Be sure everyone riding in the vehicle is properly restrained with a separate safety belt or child restraint.

Number of seats

Your Audi has a total of four seating positions: two in the front and two in the rear. Each seating position has a safety belt.

WARNING

Not wearing safety belts or wearing them improperly increases the risk of serious personal injury and death.

– Never strap more than one person, including small children, into any belt. It is especially dangerous to place a safety belt over a child sitting on your lap.
– Never let more people ride in the vehicle than there are safety belts available.

Safety belt warning light

Your vehicle has a warning system for the driver and (on USA models only) front seat passenger to remind you about the importance of buckling-up.



Fig. 135 Safety belt warning light in the instrument cluster - enlarged

Before driving off, always:

▸ Fasten your safety belt and make sure you are wearing it properly.
▸ Make sure that your passengers also buckle up and properly wear their safety belts.
▸ Protect your children with a child restraint system appropriate for the size and age of the children.

The warning light in the instrument cluster lights up when the ignition is switched on as a reminder to fasten the safety belts. In addition, you will hear a warning tone for a certain period of time.

Fasten your safety belt now and make sure that your passengers also properly put on their safety belts.

Why use safety belts?

Frontal collisions and the law of physics

Frontal crashes create very strong forces for people riding in vehicles.

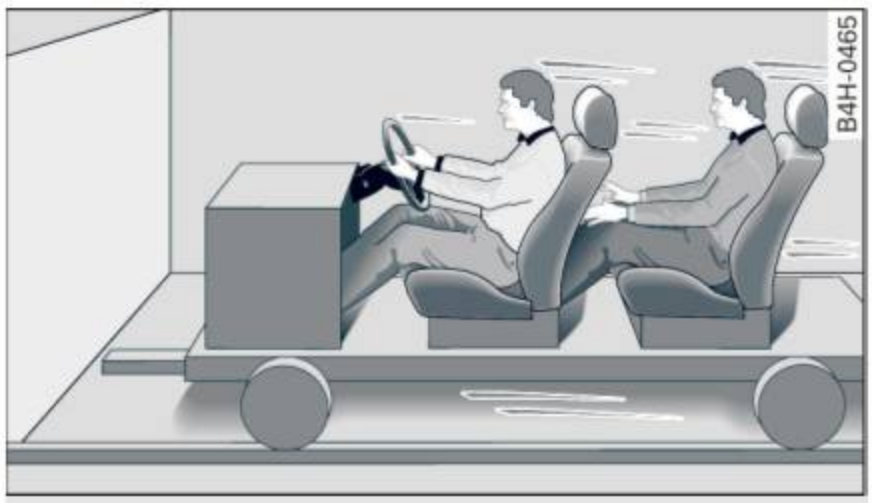


Fig. 136 Unbelted occupants in a vehicle heading for a wall



Fig. 137 The vehicle crashes into the wall

The physical principles are simple. Both the vehicle and the passengers possess energy which varies with vehicle speed and body weight. Engineers call this energy “kinetic energy.”

The higher the speed of the vehicle and the greater the vehicle's weight, the more energy that has to be “absorbed” in the crash.

Vehicle speed is the most significant factor. If the speed doubles from 15 to 30 mph (25 to 50 km/h), the energy increases 4 times!

Because the passengers of this vehicle are not using safety belts ⇨ *fig. 136*, they will keep moving at the same speed the vehicle was moving just before the crash, until something stops them - here, the wall ⇨ *fig. 137*.

The same principles apply to people sitting in a vehicle that is involved in a frontal collision. Even at city speeds of 20 to 30 mph (30 to 50 km/h), the forces acting on the body can reach one ton (2,000 lbs. or 1,000 kg) or more. At greater speeds, these forces are even higher.

People who do not use safety belts are also not attached to their vehicle. In a frontal collision they will also keep moving forward at the speed their vehicle was travelling just before the crash. Of course, the laws of physics don't just apply to frontal collisions, they determine what happens in all kinds of accidents and collisions.

What happens to occupants not wearing safety belts?

In crashes unbelted occupants cannot stop themselves from flying forward and being injured or killed. Always wear your safety belts!

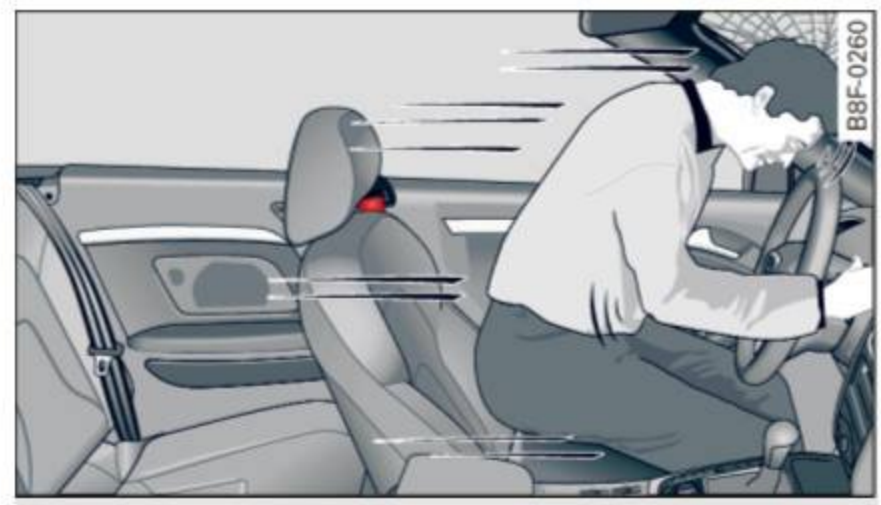


Fig. 138 A driver not wearing a safety belt is violently thrown forward



Fig. 139 A rear passenger not wearing a safety belt will fly forward and strike the driver

Unbelted occupants are not able to resist the tremendous forces of impact by holding tight or bracing themselves. Without the benefit of safety restraint systems, the unrestrained occupant will slam violently into the steering wheel, instrument panel, windshield, or whatever else is in the way ⇨ *fig. 138*. This impact with the vehicle interior has all the energy they had just before the crash. ▶

Never rely on airbags alone for protection. Even when they deploy, airbags provide only additional protection. Airbags are not supposed to deploy in all kinds of accidents. Although your Audi is equipped with airbags, all vehicle occupants, including the driver, must wear safety belts correctly in order to minimize the risk of severe injury or death in a crash.

Remember too, that airbags will deploy only once and that your safety belts are always there to offer protection in those accidents in which airbags are not supposed to deploy or when they have already deployed. Unbelted occupants can also be thrown out of the vehicle where even more severe or fatal injuries can occur.

It is also important for the rear passengers to wear safety belts correctly. Unbelted passengers in the rear seats endanger not only themselves but also the driver and other passengers ⇨ *fig. 139*. In a frontal collision they will be thrown forward violently, where they can hit and injure the driver and/or front seat passenger.

Safety belts protect

People think it's possible to use the hands to brace the body in a minor collision. It's simply not true!



Fig. 140 Driver is correctly restrained in a sudden braking maneuver

Safety belts used properly can make a big difference. Safety belts help to keep passengers in their seats, gradually reduce energy levels applied to the body in an accident, and help prevent the uncontrolled movement that can cause serious injuries. In addition, safety belts reduce the danger of being thrown out of the vehicle.

Safety belts attach passengers to the car and give them the benefit of being slowed down more gently or "softly" through the "give" in the safety belts, crush zones and other safety features engineered into today's vehicles. By "absorbing" the kinetic energy over a longer period of time, the safety belts make the forces on the body more "tolerable" and less likely to cause injury.

Although these examples are based on a frontal collision, safety belts can also substantially reduce the risk of injury in other kinds of crashes. So, whether you're on a long trip or just going to the corner store, always buckle up and make sure others do, too. Accident statistics show that vehicle occupants properly wearing safety belts have a lower risk of being injured and a much better chance of surviving an accident. Properly using safety belts also greatly increases the ability of the supplemental airbags to do their job in a collision. For this reason, wearing a safety belt is legally required in most countries including much of the United States and Canada.

Although your Audi is equipped with airbags, you still have to wear the safety belts provided. Front airbags, for example, are activated only in some frontal collisions. The front airbags are not activated in all frontal collisions, in side and rear collisions, in roll overs or in cases where there is not enough deceleration through impact to the front of the vehicle. The same goes for the other airbag systems in your Audi. So, always wear your safety belt and make sure everybody in your vehicle is properly restrained!

Important safety instructions about safety belts

Safety belts must always be correctly positioned across the strongest bones of your body.

- Always wear safety belts as illustrated and described in this chapter.
- Make sure that your safety belts are always ready for use and are not damaged. ▶

WARNING

Not wearing safety belts or wearing them improperly increases the risk of serious personal injury and death. Safety belts can work only when used correctly.

- Always fasten your safety belts correctly before driving off and make sure all passengers are correctly restrained.
- For maximum protection, safety belts must always be positioned properly on the body.
- Never strap more than one person, including small children, into any belt.
- Never place a safety belt over a child sitting on your lap.
- Always keep feet in the footwell in front of the seat while the vehicle is being driven.
- Never let any person ride with their feet on the instrument panel or sticking out the window or on the seat.
- Never remove a safety belt while the vehicle is moving. Doing so will increase your risk of being injured or killed.
- Never wear belts twisted.
- Never wear belts over rigid or breakable objects in or on your clothing, such as eye glasses, pens, keys, etc., as these may cause injury.
- Never allow safety belts to become damaged by being caught in door or seat hardware.
- Do not wear the shoulder part of the belt under your arm or otherwise out of position.
- Several layers of heavy clothing may interfere with correct positioning of belts and reduce the overall effectiveness of the system.
- Always keep belt buckles free of anything that may prevent the buckle from latching securely.
- Never use comfort clips or devices that create slack in the shoulder belt. However, special clips may be required for the proper use of some child restraint systems.
- Torn or frayed safety belts can tear, and damaged belt hardware can break in an accident. Inspect belts regularly. If webbing, bindings, buckles, or retractors are damaged, have belts replaced by an authorized Audi dealer.
- Safety belts that have been worn and loaded in an accident must be replaced with the correct replacement safety belt by an authorized Audi dealer. Replacement may be necessary even if damage cannot be clearly seen. Anchorages that were loaded must also be inspected.
- Never remove, modify, disassemble, or try to repair the safety belts yourself.
- Always keep the belts clean. Dirty belts may not work properly and can impair the function of the inertia reel ⇨ *page 182*.

Safety belts

Belt positioner

The driver and front passenger seats are equipped with belt positioners.

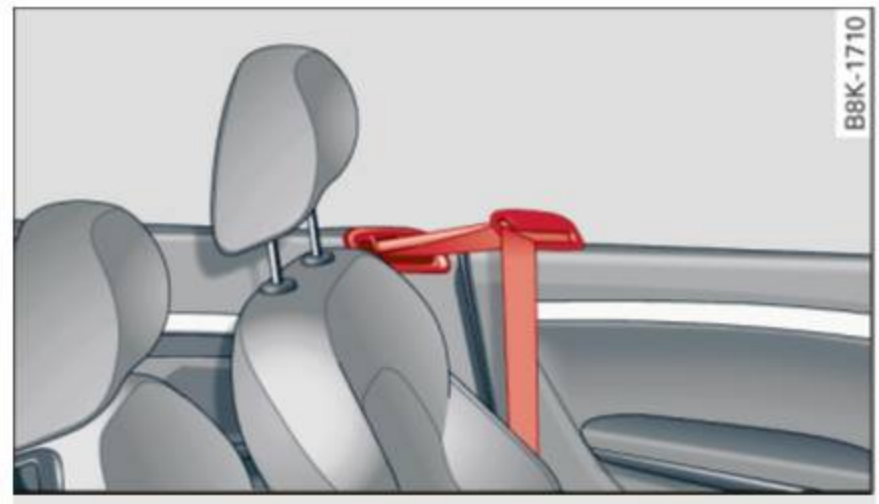


Fig. 141 Driver's seat: Belt positioner

The front seats are equipped with belt positioners so it is easier to fasten the safety belts. The belt positioners automatically extend when the door closes and the ignition switches on ⇨ *fig. 141*.

The belt positioner returns to its starting position again when

- the tongue in the belt latch engages or the belt was not fastened within 60 seconds.
- you switch the ignition off.
- you open the door. ▶

WARNING

– Only your authorized Audi dealer should work on the system or remove and installing system components when performing other work.
– The belt positioners could cause injury or damage if they pinch people or objects when extending or retracting.

Fastening safety belts

Safety first - everybody buckle up!

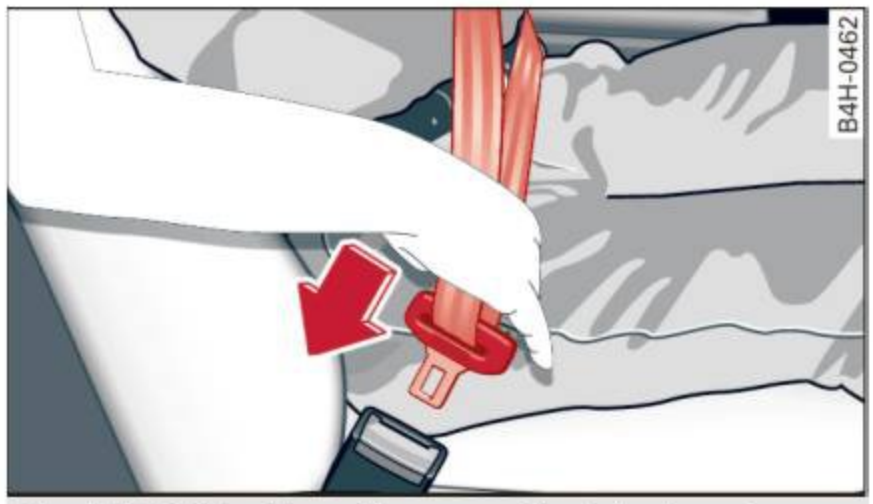


Fig. 142 Belt buckle and tongue on the driver's seat

To provide maximum protection, safety belts must always be positioned correctly on the wearer's body.

- ▸ Adjust the front seat and head restraint properly ⇨ *page 57, Seats and storage*.
- ▸ Make sure the seatback of the rear seat bench is in an upright position and securely latched in place before using the belt ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Pull the safety belt evenly across the chest and pelvis ⇨ *fig. 142*, ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Insert the tongue into the correct buckle of your seat until you hear it latch securely.
- ▸ Pull on the belt to make sure that it is securely latched in the buckle.

Automatic safety belt retractors

Every safety belt is equipped with an automatic belt retractor on the shoulder belt. This feature locks the belt when the belt is pulled out fast, during hard braking and in an accident. The belt may also lock when you drive up or down a steep hill or through a sharp curve. During normal driving the belt lets you move freely.

Safety belt pretensioners

The safety belts are equipped with a belt pretensioner that helps to tighten the safety belt and remove slack when the pretensioner is activated. The function of the pretensioner is monitored by a warning light ⇨ *page 17*.

Convertible locking retractor

Every safety belt except the one on the driver seat is equipped with a convertible locking retractor that **must** be used when the safety belt is used to attach a child safety seat. Be sure to read the important information about this feature ⇨ *page 159*.

WARNING

Improperly positioned safety belts can cause serious injury in an accident ⇨ *page 127, Safety belt position*.

– Safety belts offer optimum protection only when the seatback is upright and belts are properly positioned on the body.
– Never attach the safety belt to the buckle for another seat. Attaching the belt to the wrong buckle will reduce safety belt effectiveness and can cause serious personal injury.
– A passenger who is not properly restrained can be seriously injured by the safety belt itself when it moves from the stronger parts of the body into critical areas like the abdomen.
– Always lock the convertible locking retractor when you are securing a child safety seat in the vehicle ⇨ *page 161*.

Safety belt position

Correct belt position is the key to getting maximum protection from safety belts.

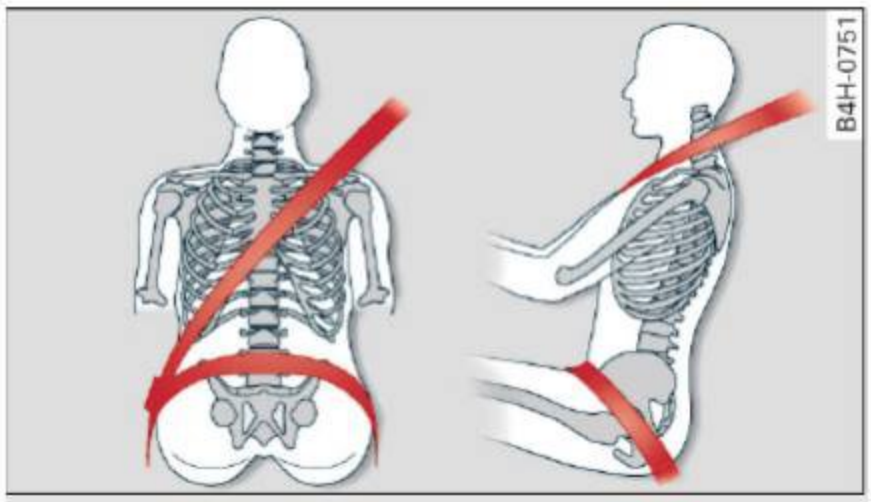


Fig. 143 Safety belt position

Standard features on your vehicle help you adjust the position of the safety belt to match your body size.

– height-adjustable front seats.

WARNING

Improperly positioned safety belts can cause serious personal injury in an accident.

– The shoulder belt should lie as close to the center of the collar bone as possible and should fit well on the body. Hold the belt above the latch tongue and pull it evenly across the chest so that it sits as low as possible on the pelvis and there is no pressure on the abdomen. The belt should always fit snugly ⇨ *fig. 143*. Pull on the belt to tighten if necessary.
– The lap belt portion of the safety belt must be positioned as low as possible across pelvis and never over the abdomen. Make sure the belt lies flat and snug ⇨ *fig. 143*. Pull on the belt to tighten if necessary.
– A loose-fitting safety belt can cause serious injuries by shifting its position on your body from the strong bones to more vulnerable, soft tissue and cause serious injury.
– Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other important information ⇨ *page 124*.

Pregnant women must also be correctly restrained

The best way to protect the fetus is to make sure that expectant mothers always wear safety belts correctly - throughout the pregnancy.



Fig. 144 Safety belt position during pregnancy

To provide maximum protection, safety belts must always be positioned correctly on the wearer's body ⇨ *page 127*.

- ▸ Adjust the front seat and head restraint correctly ⇨ *page 57, Seats and storage*.
- ▸ Make sure the seatback of the rear seat bench is in an upright position and securely latched in place before using the belt.
- ▸ Pull the safety belt evenly across the chest so that it sits as low as possible on the pelvis and there is no pressure on the abdomen ⇨ *fig. 144*, ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Insert the tongue into the correct buckle of your seat until you hear it latch securely.
- ▸ Pull on the belt to make sure that it is securely latched in the buckle.

WARNING

Improperly positioned safety belts can cause serious personal injury in an accident.

– Expectant mothers must always wear the lap portion of the safety belt as low as possible across the pelvis and below the rounding of the abdomen.
– Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other important information ⇨ ⚠ *in Fastening safety belts on page 126*.

Unfastening safety belts

Unbuckle the safety belt with the red release button only after the vehicle has stopped.

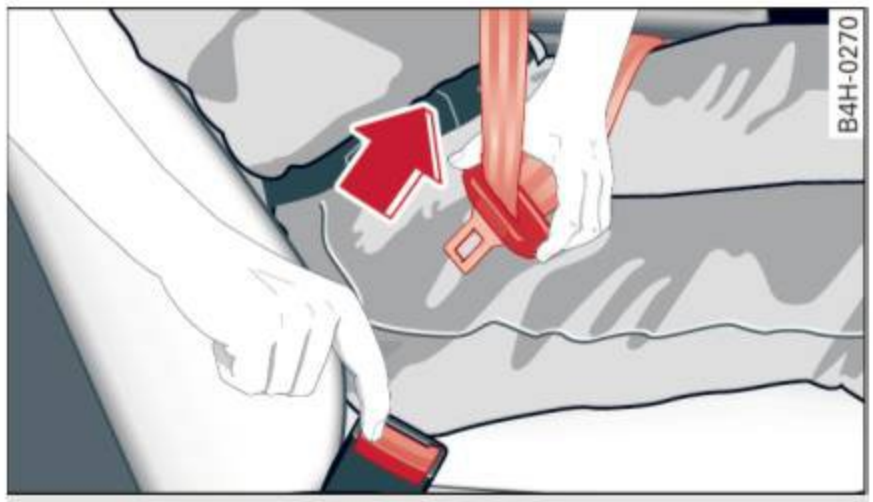


Fig. 145 Releasing the tongue from the buckle

- ▸ Push the red release button on the buckle ⇨ *fig. 145*. The belt tongue will spring out of the buckle ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Let the belt wind up on the retractor as you guide the belt tongue to its stowed position.

⚠ WARNING

Never unfasten safety belt while the vehicle is moving. Doing so will increase your risk of being injured or killed.

Improperly worn safety belts

Incorrectly positioned safety belts can cause severe injuries.

Wearing safety belts improperly can cause serious injury or death. Safety belts can only work when they are correctly positioned on the body. Improper seating positions reduce the effectiveness of safety belts and will even increase the risk of injury and death by moving the safety belt to critical areas of the body. Improper seating positions also increase the risk of serious injury and death when an airbag deploys and strikes an occupant who is not in the correct seating position. A driver is responsible for the safety of all vehicle occupants and especially for children. Therefore:

- ▸ Never permit anyone to assume an incorrect sitting position in the vehicle while traveling ⇨ ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

Improperly worn safety belts increase the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever a vehicle is being used.

- – Always make sure that all vehicle occupants are correctly restrained and stay in a correct seating position whenever the vehicle is being used.
- – Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other important information ⇨ *page 124*.

Belt tensioners

How safety belt pretensioners work

In front, side and rear-end collisions above a particular severity, safety belts are tensioned automatically.

The safety belts are equipped with safety belt pretensioners. The system is activated by sensors in front, side and rear-end collisions of great severity. This tightens the belt and takes up belt slack ⇨ ⚠ *in Service and disposal of safety belt pretensioner on page 129*. Taking up the slack helps to reduce forward occupant movement during a collision.

Note

Never let the belt remain over a rear seatback that has been folded forward.

Tips

The safety belt pretensioner can only be activated once.

- – The safety belt pretensioners do not deploy in minor frontal, side and rear-end collisions.
- – When the safety belt pretensioners are activated, a fine dust is released. This is normal and is not caused by a fire in the vehicle.
- – The relevant safety requirements must be observed when the vehicle or components of the system are scrapped. An authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop is familiar with these regulations and will be pleased to pass on the information to you. ▸

– Be sure to observe all safety, environmental and other regulations if the vehicle or individual parts of the system, particularly the safety belt or airbag, are to be disposed. We recommend you have your authorized Audi dealer perform this service for you.

Service and disposal of safety belt pretensioner

The safety belt pretensioners are parts of the safety belts on your Audi. Installing, removing, servicing or repairing of belt pretensioners can damage the safety belt system and prevent it from working correctly in a collision.

There are some important things you have to know to make sure that the effectiveness of the system will not be impaired and that discarded components do not cause injury or pollute the environment.

WARNING

Improper care, servicing and repair procedures can increase the risk of personal injury and death by preventing a safety belt pretensioner from activating when needed or activating it unexpectedly:

– The belt pretensioner system can be activated only once. If belt pretensioners have been activated, the system must be replaced.
– Never repair, adjust, or change any parts of the safety belt system.
– Safety belt systems including safety belt pretensioners cannot be repaired. Special procedures are required for removal, installation and disposal of this system.
– For any work on the safety belt system, we strongly recommend that you see your authorized Audi dealer or qualified technician who has an Audi approved repair manual, training and special equipment necessary.

For the sake of the environment

Undeployed airbag modules and pretensioners might be classified as Perchlorate Material - special handling may apply, see www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate. When the vehicle or parts of the restraint system including airbag modules safety belts with pretensioners are scrapped, all applicable laws and regulations must be observed. Your authorized Audi dealer is familiar with these requirements and we recommend that you have your dealer perform this service for you.

Airbag system

Important information

Importance of wearing safety belts and sitting properly

Airbags are only supplemental restraints. For airbags to do their job, occupants must always properly wear their safety belts and be in a proper seating position.

For your safety and the safety of your passengers, before driving off, always:

- Adjust the driver's seat and steering wheel properly ⇨ *page 112*,
- Adjust the front passenger's seat properly ⇨ *page 58*,
- Wear safety belts properly ⇨ *page 124*,
- Always properly use the proper child restraint to protect children ⇨ *page 150*.

In a collision airbags must inflate within the blink of an eye and with considerable force. The supplemental airbags can cause injuries if the driver or the front seat passenger is not seated properly. Therefore in order to help the airbag to do its job, it is important, both as a driver and as a passenger to sit properly at all times.

By keeping room between your body and the steering wheel and the front of the passenger compartment, the airbag can inflate fully and completely and provide supplemental protection in certain frontal collisions ⇨ *page 112, Correct passenger seating positions*. For details on the operation of the seat adjustment controls ⇨ *page 58*.

It's especially important that children are properly restrained ⇨ *page 150*.

There is a lot that the driver and the passengers can and must do to help the individual safety features installed in your Audi work together as a system.

Proper seating position is important so that the front airbag on the driver side can do its job. If you have a physical impairment or condition that prevents you from sitting properly on the driver seat with the safety belt properly fastened and reaching the pedals, special modifications to your vehicle may be necessary.

Contact your authorized Audi dealer, or call Audi Customer Relations at 1-800-822-2834.

When the airbag system deploys, a gas generator will fill the airbags, break open the padded covers, and inflate between the steering wheel and the driver and between the instrument panel and the front passenger. The airbags will deflate immediately after deployment so that the front occupants can see through the windshield again without interruption.

All of this takes place in the blink of an eye, so fast that many people don't even realize that the airbags have deployed. The airbags also inflate with a great deal of force and nothing should be in their way when they deploy. Front airbags in combination with properly worn safety belts slow down and limit the occupant's forward movement. Together they help to prevent the driver and front seat passenger from hitting parts of the inside the vehicle while reducing the forces acting on the occupant during the crash. In this way they help to reduce the risk of injury to the head and upper body in the crash. Airbags do not protect the arms or the lower parts of the body.

Both front airbags will not inflate in all frontal collisions. The triggering of the airbag system depends on the vehicle deceleration rate caused by the collision and registered by the electronic control unit. If this rate is below the reference value programmed into the control unit, the airbags will not be triggered, even though the car may be badly damaged as a result of the collision. Vehicle damage, repair costs or even the lack of vehicle damage is not necessarily an indication of whether an airbag should inflate or not.

It is not possible to define a range of vehicle speeds that will cover every possible kind and angle of impact that will always trigger the airbags, since the circumstances will vary considerably between one collision and another. Important factors include, for example, the nature (hard or soft) of the object which the car hits, the angle of impact, vehicle speed, etc. The front airbags will ▶

also not inflate in side or rear collisions, or in roll-overs.

Always remember: Airbags will deploy only once, and only in certain kinds of collisions. Your safety belts are always there to offer protection in those situations in which airbags are not supposed to deploy, or when they have already deployed; for example, when your vehicle strikes or is struck by another after the first collision.

This is just one of the reasons why an airbag is a supplementary restraint and is not a substitute for a safety belt. The airbag system works most effectively when used with the safety belts. Therefore, always properly wear your safety belts ⇨ *page 122*.

WARNING

Sitting too close to the steering wheel or instrument panel will decrease the effectiveness of the airbags and will increase the risk of personal injury in a collision.

- Never sit closer than 10 inches (25 cm) to the steering wheel or instrument panel.
- If you cannot sit more than 10 inches (25 cm) from the steering wheel, investigate whether adaptive equipment may be available to help you reach the pedals and increase your seating distance from the steering wheel.
- If you are unrestrained, leaning forward, sitting sideways or out of position in any way, your risk of injury is much higher.
- You will also receive serious injuries and could even be killed if you are up against the airbag or too close to it when it inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag.
- To reduce the risk of injury when an airbag inflates, always wear safety belts properly ⇨ *page 125, Safety belts*.
- Always make certain that children age 12 or younger always ride in the rear seat. If children are not properly restrained, they may be severely injured or killed when an airbag inflates.
- Never let children ride unrestrained or improperly restrained in the vehicle. Adjust the front seats properly.
- Never ride with the backrest reclined.
- Always sit as far as possible from the steering wheel or the instrument panel ⇨ *page 112*.
- Always sit upright with your back against the backrest of your seat.
- Never place your feet on the instrument panel or on the seat. Always keep both feet on the floor in front of the seat to help prevent serious injuries to the legs and hips if the airbag inflates.
- Never recline the front passenger's seat to transport objects. Items can also move into the area of the side airbag or the front airbag during braking or in a sudden maneuver. Objects near the airbags can become projectiles and cause injury when an airbag inflates.

WARNING

Airbags that have deployed in a crash must be replaced.

- Use only original equipment airbags approved by Audi and installed by a trained technician who has the necessary tools and diagnostic equipment to properly replace any airbag in your vehicle and assure system effectiveness in a crash.
- Never permit salvaged or recycled airbags to be installed in your vehicle.

Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know

▸ Be sure to read the important information and head the WARNINGS for important details about children and Advanced Airbags ⇨ *page 150*.

Even though your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag System, make certain that all children, especially those 12 years and younger, always ride in the back seat properly restrained for their age and size. The airbag on the passenger side makes the front seat a potentially dangerous place for a child to ride. The front seat is not the safest place for a child in a forward-facing child ▶

safety seat. It can be a very dangerous place for an infant or a child in a rearward-facing seat.

The Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle has been certified to comply with the requirements of United States Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS) 208, as well as Canada Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (CMVSS) 208 as applicable at the time your vehicle was manufactured. According to requirements, the front Advanced Airbag System on the passenger side has been certified for "suppression" for infants of about 12 month old and younger and for "low risk deployment" for children aged 3 to 6 years old (as defined in the standard).

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light in the instrument panel tells you when the front Advanced Airbag on the passenger side has been turned off by the electronic control unit.

Each time you turn on the ignition, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will come on for a few seconds and:

- will stay on if the front passenger seat is not occupied,
- will stay on if there is a small child or child restraint on the front passenger seat,
- will go off if the front passenger seat is occupied by an adult as registered by the weight-sensing mat ⇨ *page 140, Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System*.

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on when the control unit detects a total weight on the front passenger seat that requires the front airbag to be turned off.

If the total weight on the front passenger seat is more than that of a typical 1 year-old child but less than the weight of a small adult, the front airbag on the passenger side can deploy (the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on). If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on, the front airbag on the passenger side has not been turned off by the electronic control unit and can deploy if the control unit senses an impact that meets the conditions stored in its memory.

For example, the airbag may deploy if:

- a small child that is heavier than a typical 1 year-old child is on the front passenger seat (regardless of whether the child is in one of the child safety seats listed ⇨ *page 152*), or
- a child who has outgrown child restraints is on the front passenger seat.

If the front passenger airbag is turned off, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on in the instrument cluster and stays on.

The front airbag on the passenger side may *not* deploy (the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not illuminate and stay lit) even if a small adult or teenager, or a passenger who is not sitting upright with their back against a non-reclined backrest with their feet on the vehicle floor in front of the seat is on the front passenger seat ⇨ *page 112, Proper seating position for the driver*.

If the front passenger airbag deploys, the Federal Standard requires the airbag to meet the "low risk" deployment criteria to reduce the risk of injury through interaction with the airbag. "Low risk" deployment occurs in those crashes that take place at lower decelerations as defined in the electronic control unit ⇨ *page 140, PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light*.

Always remember, a child safety seat or infant carrier installed on the front seat may be struck and knocked out of position by the rapidly inflating passenger's airbag in a frontal collision. The airbag could greatly reduce the effectiveness of the child restraint and even seriously injure the child during inflation.

For this reason, and because the back seat is the safest place for children - when properly restrained according to their age and size - we strongly recommend that children always sit in the back seat ⇨ *page 150, Child safety*.

WARNING

A child in a rearward-facing child safety seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag System.

– The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof.
– Always install rear-facing child safety seats on the rear seat.
– If you must install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child safety seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Audi dealer.
– Forward-facing child safety seats installed on the front passenger's seat may interfere with the deployment of the airbag and cause serious personal injury to the child.

WARNING

If, in exceptional circumstances, you must install a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat:
– Always make sure the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front seat with a passenger front and side airbag.
– Never put the forward-facing child restraint up against or very near the instrument panel.
– Always move the passenger seat into its rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible before installing the forward-facing child restraint. The backrest must be adjusted to an upright position.
– Make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious injury, make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will be displayed whenever a child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat and the ignition is switched on.

– If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not stay on, perform the checks described ⇨ *page 140, Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System*.
– Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions if the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not stay on.
– Have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Audi dealer immediately.
– Always carefully follow instructions from child restraint manufacturers when installing child restraints.

WARNING

If, in exceptional circumstances, you must install a forward or rearward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat:
– Improper installation of child restraints can reduce their effectiveness or even prevent them from providing any protection.
– An improperly installed child restraint can interfere with the airbag as it deploys and seriously injure or even kill the child – even with an Advanced Airbag System.
– Always carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the child safety seat or carrier.
– Never place additional items on the seat that can increase the total weight registered by the weight-sensing mat and can cause injury in a crash.

Front airbags

Description of front airbags

The airbag system can provide supplemental protection to properly restrained front seat occupants.



Fig. 146 Location of driver airbag: in steering wheel



Fig. 147 Location of front passenger's airbag: in the instrument panel

Your vehicle is equipped with an “Advanced Airbag System” in compliance with United States Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS) 208, as well as Canada Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (CMVSS) 208 as applicable at the time your vehicle was manufactured. The safety belts for the seats have “pretensioners” that help to take slack out of the belt system. The pretensioners are also activated by the electronic control unit for the airbag system.

The front safety belts also have load limiters to help reduce the forces applied to the body in a crash.

The airbag for the driver is in the steering wheel hub ⇨ *fig. 146* and the airbag for the front passenger is in the instrument panel ⇨ *fig. 147*. The general location of the airbags is marked “AIRBAG”.

There is a lot you need to know about the airbags in your vehicle. We urge you to read the detailed information about airbags, safety belts and child safety in this and the other chapters that make up the owner's literature. Please be sure to heed the WARNINGS - they are extremely important for your safety and the safety of your passengers, especially infants and small children.

WARNING

Never rely on airbags alone for protection.
- Even when they deploy, airbags provide only supplemental protection.
- Airbag work most effectively when used with properly worn safety belts.
- Therefore, always wear your safety belts and make sure that everybody in your vehicle is properly restrained.

WARNING

A person on the front passenger seat, especially infants and small children, will receive serious injuries and can even be killed by being too close to the airbag when it inflates.
- Although the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle is designed to turn off the front passenger airbag if an infant or a small child is on the front passenger seat, nobody can absolutely guarantee that deployment under these special conditions is impossible in all conceivable situations that may happen during the useful life of your vehicle.
- The Advanced Airbag System can deploy in accordance with the “low risk” option under the U.S. Federal Standard if a child that is heavier than the typical one-year old child is on the front passenger seat and the other conditions for airbag deployment are met.
- Accident statistics have shown that children are generally safer in the rear seat area than in the front seating position.
- For their own safety, all children, especially 12 years and younger, should always ride in the back properly restrained for their age and size.

Advanced front airbag system

Your vehicle is equipped with a front Advanced Airbag System in compliance with United States Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208, as well as Canada Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (CMVSS) 208 as applicable at the time your vehicle was manufactured.

The front Advanced Airbag System supplements the safety belts to provide additional protection for the driver's and front passenger's heads and upper bodies in frontal crashes. The airbags inflate only in frontal impacts when the vehicle deceleration is high enough.

The front Advanced Airbag System for the front seat occupants is not a substitute for your safety belts. Rather, it is part of the overall occupant restraint system in your vehicle. Always remember that the airbag system can only help to protect you, if you are sitting upright, wearing your safety belt and wearing it properly. This is why you and your passengers must always be properly restrained, not just because the law requires you to be.

The Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle has been certified to meet the “low risk” requirements for 3 and 6 year-old children on the passenger side and very small adults on the driver side. The low risk deployment criteria are intended to help reduce the risk of injury through interaction with the front airbag that can occur, for example, by being too close to the steering wheel and instrument panel when the airbag inflates.

In addition, the system has been certified to comply with the “suppression” requirements of the Safety Standard, to turn off the front airbag for infants 12 months old and younger who are restrained on the front passenger seat in child restraints that are listed in the Standard ⇨ *page 152, Child restraints and Advanced Airbags*.

“Suppression” requires the front airbag on the passenger side to be turned off if:

– a child up to about one year of age is restrained on the front passenger seat in one of the rear-facing or forward-facing infant restraints listed in Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 with which the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle was certified. For a listing of the child restraints that were used to certify your vehicle's compliance with the US Safety Standard ⇨ *page 152*,
– weight less than a threshold level stored in the control unit is detected on the front passenger seat.

When a person is detected on the front passenger seat, weighing more than the total weight of a child that is about 1 year old restrained in one of the rear-facing or forward-facing infant restraints (listed in Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 with which the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle was certified), the front airbag on the passenger side may or may not deploy.

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on when the electronic control unit detects a total weight on the front passenger seat that requires the front airbag to be turned off. If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on, the front airbag on the passenger side has not been turned off by the control unit and can deploy if the conditions stored in its memory.

If the total weight on the front passenger seat is more than that of a typical 1 year-old, but less than the weight of a small adult, the front airbag on the passenger side may deploy (the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on).

For example, the airbag may deploy if:

– a small child that is heavier than a typical 1 year-old child is on the front passenger seat (regardless of whether the child is in one of the child safety seats listed ⇨ *page 152*),
– a child who has outgrown child restraints is on the front passenger seat.

If the front passenger airbag is turned off, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light in the center of the instrument panel will come on and stay on.

The front airbag on the passenger side may *not* deploy (the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not illuminate and stay lit) if: ▶

8F0012721BB

– a small adult or teenager is on the front passenger seat
– a passenger who is not sitting upright with their back against a non-reclined backrest with their feet on the vehicle floor in front of the seat is on the front passenger seat.

If the front passenger airbag deploys, the Federal Standard requires the airbag to meet the "low risk" deployment criteria to help reduce the risk of injury through interaction with the airbag. "Low risk" deployment occurs in those crashes that take place at lower decelerations as defined in the electronic control unit. ⇨ *page 140*

Always remember: Even though your vehicle is equipped with Advanced Airbags, the safest place for children is properly restrained on the back seat. Please be sure to read the important information in the sections that follow and be sure to heed all of the WARNINGS.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of injury when an airbag inflates, always wear safety belts properly.
– If you are unrestrained, leaning forward, sitting sideways or out of position in any way, your risk of injury is much higher.
– You will also receive serious injuries and could even be killed if you are up against the airbag or too close to it when it inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag ⇨ *page 130*.

WARNING

A child in a rearward-facing child safety seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag System.
– Although the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle is designed to turn off the front airbag when a rearward-facing child restraint has been installed on the front passenger seat, nobody can absolutely guarantee that deployment is impossible in all conceivable situations that may happen during the useful life of your vehicle.
– The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door, or roof.
– Always install rearward-facing child restraints in the back seat.
– If you must install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child safety seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Audi dealer.

WARNING

If, in exceptional circumstances, you must install a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat:
– Always make sure the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front seat with a passenger front and side airbag.
– Never put the forward-facing child restraint up against or very near the instrument panel.
– Always move the passenger seat into its rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible, before installing the forward-facing child restraint. The backrest must be adjusted to an upright position.
– Make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.

Advanced Airbag System components

The front passenger seat in your vehicle has a lot of very important parts of the Advanced Airbag System in it. These parts include the weight-sensing mat, sensors, wiring, brackets, and more. The function of the system in the front passenger seat is checked by the electronic control unit when the ignition is on. The control unit monitors the Advanced Airbag System and turns the airbag indicator light on when a malfunction in the system components is detected. The function of the airbag indicator light is described in ▶

greater detail below. Because the front passenger seat contains important parts of the Advanced Airbag System, you must take care to prevent it from being damaged. Damage to the seat may prevent the Advanced Airbag for the front passenger seat from doing its job in a crash.

The front Advanced Airbag System consists of the following:

– Crash sensors in the front of the vehicle that measure vehicle acceleration/deceleration to provide information to the Advanced Airbag System about the severity of the crash.
– An electronic control unit, with integrated crash sensors for front and side impacts. The control unit "decides" whether to fire the front airbags based on the information received from the crash sensors. The control unit also "decides" whether the safety belt pretensioners should be activated.
– An Advanced Airbag with gas generator and control valve for the driver inside the steering wheel hub.
– An Advanced Airbag with gas generator and control valve inside the instrument panel for the front passenger.
– A weight-sensing mat under the upholstery padding of the front passenger seat cushion that measures the total weight on the seat. The information registered is sent continuously to the electronic control unit to regulate deployment of the front Advanced Airbag on the passenger side.
– An airbag monitoring system and indicator light in the instrument cluster ⇨ *page 140*.
– A sensor in each front seat registers the distance between the respective seat and the steering wheel or instrument panel. The information registered is sent continuously to the electronic control unit to regulate deployment of the front Advanced Airbags.
– The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on in the center of the instrument panel ⇨ *page 140, fig. 149* and tells you when the front Advanced Airbag on the passenger side has been turned off.
– A sensor below the safety belt latch for the front seat passenger to measure the tension on the safety belt. The tension on the safety belt and the weight registered by the weight-sensing mat help the control unit "decide" whether the front airbag for the front passenger seat should be turned off or not ⇨ *page 131, Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know*.
– A sensor in the safety belt latch for the driver and for the front seat passenger that senses whether that safety belt is latched or not and transmits this information to the electronic control unit.

WARNING

Damage to the front passenger seat can prevent the front airbag from working properly.
– Improper repair or disassembly of the front passenger and driver seat will prevent the Advanced Airbag System from functioning properly.
– Repairs to the front passenger seat must be performed by qualified and properly trained workshop personnel.
– Never remove the front passenger or driver seat from the vehicle.
– Never remove the upholstery from the front passenger seat.
– Never disassemble or remove parts from the seat or disconnect wires from it.
– Never carry sharp objects in your pockets or place them on the seat. If the weight-sensing mat in the passenger seat is punctured it cannot work properly.
– Never carry things on your lap or carry objects on the passenger seat. Such items can increase the weight registered by the weight-sensing mat and send the wrong information to the airbag control unit.
– Never store items under the front passenger seat. Parts of the Advanced Airbag System under the passenger seat could be damaged, preventing them and the airbag system from working properly.
– Never place seat covers or replacement upholstery that have not been specifically approved by Audi on the front seats.
– Seat covers can prevent the Advanced Airbag System from recognizing child ▶

8F0012721BB

restraints or occupants on the front passenger seat and prevent the side airbag in the seat backrest from deploying properly.
– Never use cushions, pillows, blankets or similar items on the front passenger seat. The additional padding will prevent the weight-sensing mat in the seat from accurately registering the child restraint or person on the seat and prevent the Advanced Airbag System from functioning properly.
– If you must use a child restraint on the front passenger seat and the child restraint manufacturer's instructions require the use of a towel, foam cushion or something else to properly position the child restraint, make certain that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on whenever the child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat.
– If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install child restraint in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Audi dealer.

How the Advanced Airbag System components work together

The front Advanced Airbag System and the side airbags supplement the protection offered by the front three-point safety belts with pretensioners and load limiters and the adjustable head restraints to help reduce the risk of injury in a wide range of accident and crash situations. Be sure to read the important information about safety and heed the WARNINGS in this chapter.

Deployment of the Advanced Airbag System and the activation of the safety belt pretensioners depend on the deceleration measured by the crash sensors and registered by the electronic control unit. Crash severity depends on speed and deceleration as well as the mass and stiffness of the vehicle or object involved in the crash.

On the passenger side, regardless of safety belt use, the airbag will be turned off if the weight on the passenger seat is less than the amount programmed in the electronic control unit. The front airbag on the passenger side will also be turned off if one of the child safety seats that has been certified under Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 has been recognized on the seat. The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on to tell you when the front Advanced Airbag on the passenger side has been turned off ⇨ *page 131, Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know.*

WARNING

To reduce the risk of injury when an airbag inflates, always wear safety belts properly.
– If you are unrestrained, leaning forward, sitting sideways or out of position in any way, your risk of injury is much higher.
– You will also receive serious injuries and could even be killed if you are up against the airbag or too close to it when it inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag ⇨ *page 130*.

More important things to know about front airbags



Fig. 148 Inflated front airbags

Safety belts are important to help keep front seat occupants in the proper seated position so that airbags can unfold properly and provide supplemental protection in a frontal collision.

The front airbags are designed to provide additional protection for the chest and face of the driver and the front seat passenger when:

– safety belts are worn properly,
– the seats have been positioned so that the occupant is properly seated as far as possible from the airbag, ▶

– and the head restraints have been properly adjusted.

Because airbags inflate in the blink of an eye with great force, things you have on your lap or have placed on the seat could become dangerous projectiles, and be pushed into you if the airbag inflates.

When an airbag deploys, fine dust is released. This is normal and is not caused by a fire in the vehicle. This dust is made up mostly of a powder used to lubricate the airbags as they deploy. It could irritate skin.

It is important to remember that while the supplemental airbag system is designed to reduce the likelihood of serious injuries, other injuries, for example swelling, bruising and minor abrasions, can also happen when airbags inflate. Airbags do not protect the arms or the lower parts of the body. Front airbags only supplement the three point safety belts in some frontal collisions in which the vehicle deceleration is high enough to deploy the airbags.

Front airbags will not deploy:

– if the ignition is switched off when a crash occurs,
– in side collisions,
– in rear-end collisions,
– in rollovers,
– when the crash deceleration measured by the airbag system is less than the minimum threshold needed for airbag deployment as registered by the electronic control unit.

The front passenger airbag will also not deploy:

– when the front passenger seat is not occupied,
– when the weight on the front passenger seat as sensed by the Advanced Airbag System indicates that the front airbag on the passenger side has to be turned off by the electronic control unit (the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on).

WARNING

Sitting in the wrong position can increase the risk of serious injury in crashes.

– To reduce the risk of injury when the airbags inflate, the driver and passengers must always sit in an upright position, must not lean against or place any part of their body too close to the area where the airbags are located.
– Occupants who are unbelted, out of position or too close to the airbag can be seriously injured by an airbag as it unfolds with great force in the blink of an eye ⇨ *page 131*.

WARNING

A child in a rearward-facing child safety seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag System.

– The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof.
– Always install rear-facing child safety seats on the rear seat.
– If you must install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child safety seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Audi dealer.

WARNING

Objects between you and the airbag will increase the risk of injury in a crash by interfering with the way the airbag unfolds or by being pushed into you as the airbag inflates.

– Never hold things in your hands or on your lap when the vehicle is in use.
– Never transport items on or in the area of the front passenger seat. Objects could move into the area of the front airbags during braking or other sudden maneuver and become dangerous projectiles that can cause serious personal injury if the airbags inflate.

▶

– Never place or attach accessories or other objects (such as cupholders, telephone brackets, large, heavy or bulky objects) on the doors, over or near the area marked “AIRBAG” on the steering wheel, instrument panel, seat backrests or between those areas and yourself. These objects could cause injury in a crash, especially when the airbags inflate.
– Never recline the front passenger's seat to transport objects. Items can also move into the area of the side airbag or the front airbag during braking or in a sudden maneuver. Objects near the airbags can become projectiles and cause injury, particularly when the seat is reclined.

WARNING

The fine dust created when airbags deploy can cause breathing problems for people with a history of asthma or other breathing conditions.
– To reduce the risk of breathing problems, those with asthma or other respiratory conditions should get fresh air right away by getting out of the vehicle or opening windows or doors.
– If you are in a collision in which airbags deploy, wash your hands and face with mild soap and water before eating.
– Be careful not to get the dust into your eyes, or into any cuts or scratches.
– If the residue should get into your eyes, flush them with water.

Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System

AIR BAG (USA models) / (Canada models) Airbag monitoring indicator light

Two separate indicators monitor the function of the Advanced Airbag System: the airbag monitoring indicator light and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** *light.*

The Advanced Airbag System (including the electronic control unit, sensor circuits and system wiring) is monitored continuously to make sure that it is functioning properly whenever the ignition is on. Every time you turn on the ignition, the airbag system indicator light AIR BAG (USA models) / (Canada models) will come on for a few seconds (function check).

The system must be inspected when the indicator light AIR BAG (USA models) / (Canada models):

– does not come on when the ignition is switched on,
– does not go out a few seconds after you have switched on the ignition, or
– comes on while driving.

If an airbag system malfunction is detected the indicator light will come on to serve as a constant reminder to have the system inspected immediately.

If a malfunction occurs that turns the front airbag on the passenger side off, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will come on and stay on whenever the ignition is on.

WARNING

An airbag system that is not functioning properly cannot provide supplemental protection in a frontal crash.
– If the airbag indicator light ⇨ *page 17* comes when the vehicle is being used, have the system inspected immediately by your authorized Audi dealer. It is possible that the airbag will inflate when it is not supposed to, or will not inflate when it should.

PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light



Fig. 149 Section from the instrument panel: PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light is located in the center of the instrument panel ⇨ *fig. 149*.

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will come on and stay on to tell you when the front Advanced Airbag on the passenger side has been turned off by the electronic control unit. Each time you turn on the ignition, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will flash for a few seconds and:

– will stay on if the front passenger seat is not occupied,
– will stay on if there is a small child or child restraint on the front passenger seat,
– will go out if the front passenger seat is occupied by an adult as registered by the weight-sensing mat.

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light must come on and stay on** if the ignition is on and

– a car bed has been installed on the front seat, or
– a rearward-facing child restraint has been installed on the front passenger seat, or
– a forward-facing child restraint has been installed on the front passenger seat, or
– the weight registered on the front passenger seat is equal to or less than the combined weight of a typical 1 year-old restrained in one of the rear-facing or forward-facing infant restraints listed in Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 with which the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle was certified.

If the front passenger seat is not occupied, the front airbag will not deploy, and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will stay on. Never install a rearward-facing child restraint on the front passenger seat, the safest place for a child in any kind of child restraint is at one of the seating positions on the rear seat ⇨ *page 131, Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know* and ⇨ *page 150, Child safety*.

If the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light comes on when one of the conditions listed above is met, be sure to check the light regularly to make certain that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light stays on continuously whenever the ignition is on. If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not appear and not stay on all the time, stop as soon as it is safe to do so and

– reactivate the system by turning the ignition off and then turning it on again;
– remove and reinstall the child restraint. Make sure that the child restraint is properly installed and that the safety belt for the front passenger seat has been correctly routed around the child restraint as described in the child restraint manufacturer's instructions;
– make sure that the convertible locking retractor on the safety belt for the front passenger seat has been activated and that the safety belt has been pulled tight. The belt must not be loose or have loops of slack so that the sensor below the safety belt latch on the seat can do its job ⇨ *page 159*.
– make sure that things that may increase the weight of the child and child safety seat are not being transported on the front passenger seat;
– make sure that the safety belt tension sensor is not blocked. Shake the safety belt latch on the front passenger seat back and forth;
– If a strap or tether is being used to tie the child safety seat to the front passenger seat, make sure that it is not so tight that it causes the weight-sensing mat to measure more weight than is actually on the seat.

If the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light still does not come on and does not stay on continuously (when the ignition is switched on),

– take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions. Have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Audi dealer immediately.
– move the child to a rear seat position and make sure that the child is properly restrained in a child restraint that is appropriate for its size and age.

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light should NOT come on when the ignition is on and an adult is sitting in a proper seating position on the front passenger seat. If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on or flashes for about 5 seconds while driving, under these circumstances, make sure that: ▶

8F0012721BB

– the adult on the front passenger seat is properly seated on the center of the seat cushion with his or her back up against the backrest and the backrest is not reclined ⇨ *page 112, Correct passenger seating positions*,
– the adult is not taking weight off the seat by holding on to the passenger assist handle above the front passenger door or supporting their weight on the armrest,
– the safety belt is being properly worn and that there is not a lot of slack in the safety belt webbing,
– accessory seat covers or cushions or other things that may cause an incorrect reading or impression on the weight-sensing mat under the upholstery of the seat have been removed from the front passenger seat,
– a safety belt extender has not been left in the safety belt latch for the front passenger seat.

In addition to the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light in the center of the instrument panel, the message **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** or **PASSENGER AIR BAG ON** will briefly appear in the instrument cluster display. This is to inform the driver of the current front passenger airbag status.

Important safety instructions on monitoring the Advanced Airbag System

WARNING

An airbag system that is not functioning properly cannot provide supplemental protection in a frontal crash.

– If the airbag indicator light ⇨ *page 17* comes when the vehicle is being used, have the system inspected immediately by your authorized Audi dealer. It is possible that the airbag will inflate when it is not supposed to, or will not inflate when it should.

WARNING

If the front airbag inflates, a child without a child restraint, in a rearward-facing child safety seat or in a forward-facing child restraint that has not been properly installed will be seriously injured and can be killed.

– Even though your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag System, make certain that all children, especially 12 years and younger, always ride on the back seat properly restrained for their age and size.
– Always install forward or rear-facing child safety seats on the rear seat – even with an Advanced Airbag System.
– If you must install a rearward-facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not appear and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child safety seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Audi dealer.
– A tight tether or other strap on a rearward-facing child restraint attached to the front passenger seat can put too much pressure on the weight-sensing mat in the seat and register more weight than is actually on the seat. The heavier weight registered can make the system work as though an adult were on the seat and deploy the Advanced Airbag when it must be suppressed causing serious or even fatal injury to the child.
– If, in exceptional circumstances, you must install a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger seat, always move the seat into its rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible. The backrest must be adjusted to an upright position. Make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.

WARNING

– If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not go out when an adult is sitting on the front passenger seat after taking the steps described above, make sure the adult is properly seated and restrained at one of the rear seating positions.
– Have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Audi dealer before transporting anyone on the front passenger seat. ▶

Tips

If the weight-sensing mat in the front passenger seat detects an empty seat, the front airbag on the passenger side will be turned off, and **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** will stay on.

Repair, care and disposal of the airbags

Parts of the airbag system are installed at many different places on your Audi. Installing, removing, servicing or repairing a part in an area of the vehicle can damage a part of an airbag system and prevent that system from working properly in a collision.

There are some important things you have to know to make sure that the effectiveness of the system will not be impaired and that discarded components do not cause injury or pollute the environment.

WARNING

Improper care, servicing and repair procedures can increase the risk of personal injury and death by preventing an airbag from deploying when needed or deploying an airbag unexpectedly:

- Never cover, obstruct, or change the steering wheel horn pad or airbag cover or the instrument panel or modify them in any way.
- Never attach any objects such as cupholders or telephone mountings to the surfaces covering the airbag units.
- For cleaning the horn pad or instrument panel, use only a soft, dry cloth or one moistened with plain water. Solvents or cleaners could damage the airbag cover or change the stiffness or strength of the material so that the airbag cannot deploy and protect properly.
- Never repair, adjust, or change any parts of the airbag system.
- All work on the steering wheel, instrument panel, front seats or electrical system (including the installation of audio equipment, cellular telephones and CB radios, etc.) must be performed by a qualified technician who has the training and special equipment necessary.
- For any work on the airbag system, we strongly recommend that you see your authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop.
- Never modify the front bumper or parts of the vehicle body.
- Always make sure that the side airbag can inflate without interference:
  - Never install seat covers or replacement upholstery over the front seatbacks that have not been specifically approved by Audi.
  - Never use additional seat cushions that cover the areas where the side airbags inflate.
  - Damage to the original seat covers or to the seam in the area of the side airbag module must always be repaired immediately by an authorized Audi dealer.
- The airbag system can be activated only once. After an airbag has inflated, it must be replaced by an authorized Audi dealer or qualified technician who has the technical information, training and special equipment necessary.
- The airbag system can be deployed only once. After an airbag has been deployed, it must be replaced with new replacement parts designed and approved especially for your Audi model version. Replacement of complete airbag systems or airbag components must be performed by qualified workshops only. Make sure that any airbag service action is entered in your Audi Warranty & Maintenance booklet under *AIRBAG REPLACEMENT RECORD*.
- In accidents when an airbag is deployed, the vehicle battery separates the alternator and the starter from the vehicle electrical system for safety reasons with a pyrotechnic circuit interrupter.
  - Work on the pyrotechnic circuit interrupter must only be performed by a qualified dealer - risk of an accident!
  - If the vehicle or the circuit interrupter is scrapped, all applicable safety precautions must be followed.

▶

For the sake of the environment

Undeployed airbag modules and pretensioners might be classified as Perchlorate Material -special handling may apply, see www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate. When the vehicle or parts of the restraint system including airbag modules safety belts with pretensioners are scrapped, all applicable laws and regulations must be observed. Your authorized Audi dealer is familiar with these requirements and we recommend that you have your dealer perform this service for you.

Other things that can affect Advanced Airbag performance

Changing the vehicle's suspension system can change the way that the Advanced Airbag System performs in a crash. For example, using tire-rim combinations not approved by Audi, lowering the vehicle, changing the stiffness of the suspension, including the springs, suspension struts, shock absorbers etc. can change the forces that are measured by the airbag sensors and sent to the electronic control unit. Some suspension changes can, for example, increase the force levels measured by the sensors and make the airbag system deploy in crashes in which it would not deploy if the changes had not been made. Other kinds of changes may reduce the force levels measured by the sensors and prevent the airbag from deploying when it should.

WARNING

Changing the vehicle's suspension including use of unapproved tire-rim combinations can change Advanced Airbag performance and increase the risk of serious personal injury in a crash.

- Never install suspension components that do not have the same performance characteristics as the components originally installed on your vehicle.
- Never use tire-rim combinations that have not been approved by Audi.

WARNING

Items stored between the safety belt buckle and the center console can cause the sensors in the buckle to send the wrong information to the electronic control module and prevent the Advanced Airbag System from working properly.

- Always make sure that nothing can interfere with the safety belt buckles and that they are not obstructed.

Knee airbags

Description of knee airbags

Applies to: vehicles with knee airbags

The knee airbag system can provide supplemental protection to properly restrained front seat occupants.

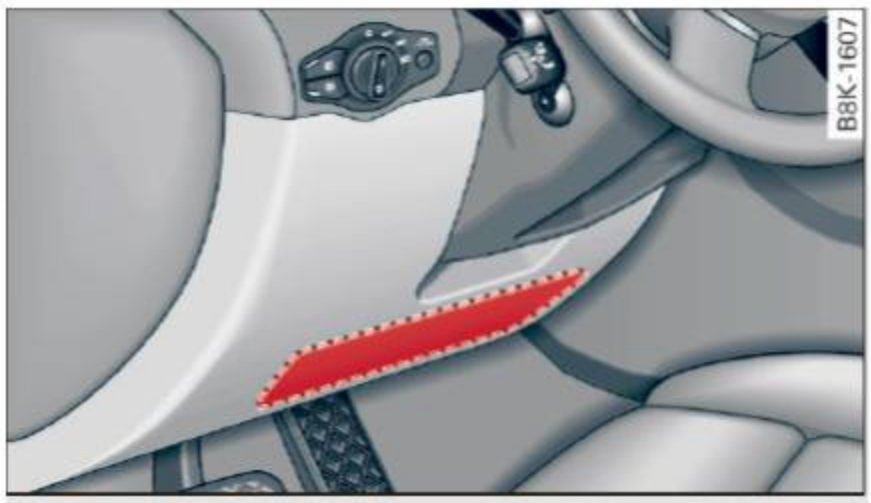


Fig. 150 Driver's knee airbag

The driver knee airbag is in the instrument panel underneath the steering wheel ⇨ *fig. 150*, the knee airbag for the passenger is at about the same height in the instrument panel underneath the glove compartment.

The knee airbag offers additional protection to the driver's and passenger's knees and upper and lower thigh areas and supplements the protection provided by the safety belts.

If the front airbags deploy, the knee airbags also deploy in frontal collisions when the deployment threshold stored in the control unit is met ⇨ *page 138, More important things to know about front airbags*.

In addition to their normal safety function, safety belts help keep the driver or front passenger in ▶

position in a frontal collision so that the airbags can provide supplemental protection.

The airbag system is not a substitute for your safety belt. Rather, it is part of the overall occupant restraint system in your vehicle. Always remember that the airbag system can only help to protect you if you are wearing your safety belt and wearing it properly. This is why you should always wear your safety belt, not just because the law requires you to do so ⇨ *page 122, General information*.

Remember too, airbags will deploy only once and only in certain kinds of accidents - your safety belts are always there to offer protection in those accidents in which airbags are not supposed to deploy or when they have already deployed, for example when your vehicle strikes or is struck by another after the first collision.

This is just one of the reasons why an airbag is not a substitute for the safety belt. The airbag system works most effectively when used with the safety belts. Therefore, always wear your safety belts correctly.

It is important to remember that while the supplemental knee airbag system is designed to reduce the likelihood of serious injuries, other injuries, for example, swelling, bruising, and minor abrasions and friction burns can also occur when an airbag inflates.

The knee airbag system basically consists of:

– The electronic control module
– Two inflatable airbags (airbag and gas generator), one for the driver and one for the front passenger
– The airbag indicator light in the instrument panel

The knee airbag system will not deploy:

– when the ignition is turned off
– in frontal collisions when the deceleration measured by the control unit is too low
– in side collisions
– in rear-end collisions
– in rollovers
– in the event of a system malfunction (warning/indicator light is on) ⇨ *page 17*.

WARNING

– Safety belts and the airbag system can only provide protection when occupants are in the proper seating position ⇨ *page 138*.
– If the airbag indicator light ⇨ *page 17* comes when the vehicle is being used, have the system inspected immediately by your authorized Audi dealer. It is possible that the airbag will inflate when it is not supposed to, or will not inflate when it should.

How knee airbags work

Applies to: vehicles with knee airbags

The risk of injury to the leg area can be reduced by fully deployed knee airbags.

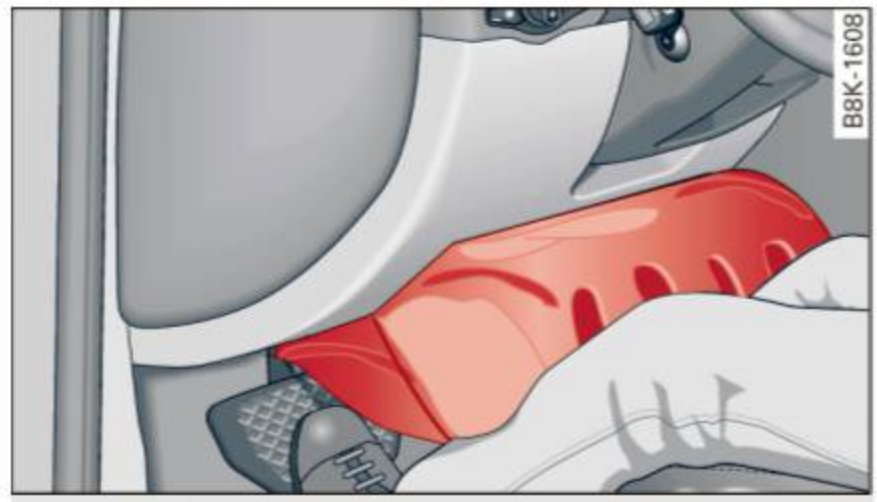


Fig. 151 Inflated airbags protecting in a frontal collision

The knee airbag system has been designed so that the airbags for the driver and front passenger deploy in certain but not all frontal collisions.

If the front airbags deploy, the knee airbags also deploy in frontal collisions when the deployment threshold stored in the control unit is met.

When the system deploys, the airbags fill with a propellant gas, and inflate between the lower part of the instrument panel and the driver and the lower part of the instrument panel and the front passenger ⇨ *page 138, fig. 148*.

Although they are not a soft pillow, they can cushion the impact and in this way they can help to reduce the risk of injury to the lower extremities. ▶

All of this takes place in the blink of an eye, so fast that many people don't even realize that the airbags have deployed. The airbags also inflate with a great deal of force and it is important for occupant safety that nothing should be in their way when they deploy.

Fully inflated airbags in combination with properly worn safety belts slow down and limit the occupant's forward movement and help to reduce the risk of injury.

Important safety instructions on the knee airbag system

Applies to: vehicles with knee airbags

Airbags are only supplemental restraints. Always wear safety belts correctly and ride in a proper seating position.

There is a lot that you and your passengers must know and do to help the safety belts and airbags to provide supplemental protection.

WARNING

An inflating knee airbag can cause serious injury. Wearing safety belts incorrectly and improper seating positions increase the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever a vehicle is being used.

- The knee airbag system cannot protect you properly if you are seated too close to any of the airbag locations. When adjusting their seat positions, it is important that both the driver and the front passenger keep their upper bodies and knees at the following minimum safe distances:
  - at least 10 inches (25 cm) between the chest and the steering wheel/instrument panel.
  - at least 4 inches (10 cm) between the knees and the lower part of the instrument panel.
- The risk of personal injury increases if you lean forward or to the side, or if the seat is improperly positioned and you are not wearing your safety belt. The risk increases even more should the airbag deploy.
- Always make sure that the knee airbag can inflate without interference. Objects between you and the airbag can increase the risk of injury in an accident by interfering with the way the airbag deploys or by being pushed into you as the airbag deploys.
  - Never let anybody, especially children or animals ride in the footwell in front of the passenger seat. If the airbag deploys, this can result in serious or fatal injuries.
  - Never carry objects of any kind in the footwell area in front of the driver's or passenger's seat. Bulky objects (shopping bags, for example) can interfere with or prevent proper deployment of the airbag. Small objects can be thrown through the vehicle if the airbag deploys and injure you or your passengers.
- Make sure there are no cracks, deep scratches or other damage in the area of the instrument panel where the knee airbags are located.
- If children are incorrectly seated, their risk of injury increases in a collision ⇨ *page 150, Child safety*.

Side airbags

Description of side airbags

The airbag system can provide supplemental protection to properly restrained occupants.



Fig. 152 Side airbag location in the driver's seat

The side airbags are located in the sides of the front seat backrests ⇨ *fig. 152*. They are identified by the word “AIRBAG”.

The side airbag system basically consists of: ▶

– the electronic control module and external side impact sensors
– the two side airbags located in the sides of the front backrests
– the airbag warning light in the instrument cluster.

The airbag system is monitored electronically to make certain that it is functioning properly at all times. Each time you turn on the ignition, the airbag system indicator light will come on for a few seconds (self diagnostics).

The side airbag system supplements the safety belts and can help to reduce the risk of injury to the driver's and front passenger's upper torso on the side of the vehicle that is struck in a side collision. The airbag deploys only in side impacts and only when the vehicle acceleration registered by the control unit is high enough. If this rate is below the reference value programmed into the control unit, the side airbags will not be triggered, even though the car may be badly damaged as a result of the collision. It is not possible to define an airbag triggering range that will cover every possible angle of impact, since the circumstances will vary considerably between one collision and another. Important factors include, for example, the nature (hard or soft) of the impacting object, the angle of impact, vehicle speed, etc. ⇨ *page 148, Important safety instructions on the side airbag system*.

Aside from their normal safety function, safety belts work to help keep the driver or front passenger in position in the event of a side collision so that the side airbags can provide protection.

The airbag system is *not* a substitute for your safety belt. Rather, it is part of the overall occupant restraint system in your vehicle. Always remember that the side airbag system can only help to protect you if you are wearing your safety belt and wearing it properly. This is another reason why you should always wear your safety belts, not just because the law requires you to do so ⇨ *page 122, General information*.

It is important to remember that while the supplemental side airbag system is designed to reduce the likelihood of serious injuries, other injuries, for example, swelling, bruising, and minor abrasions can also be associated with deployed side airbags. Remember too, side airbags will deploy only once and only in certain kinds of accidents - your safety belts are always there to offer protection.

Vehicle damage, repair costs or even the lack of vehicle damage are not necessarily an indication of over-sensitive or failed airbag activation. In some collisions, both front and side airbags may inflate. Remember too, that airbags will deploy only once and only in certain kinds of collisions – your safety belts are always there to offer protection in those accidents in which airbags are not supposed to deploy or when they have already deployed.

The side airbag system will not deploy:

– when the ignition is turned off
– in side collisions when the acceleration measured by the sensor is too low
– in front-end collisions
– in rear-end collisions
– in rollovers.

In some types of accidents the front airbags and side airbags may be triggered together.

WARNING

– Safety belts and the airbag system will only provide protection when occupants are in the proper seating position ⇨ *page 148*.
– If the airbag indicator light ⇨ *page 17* comes when the vehicle is being used, have the system inspected immediately by your authorized Audi dealer. It is possible that the airbag will inflate when it is not supposed to, or will not inflate when it should.

How supplemental side airbags work

Side airbags deploy instantly and can help reduce the risk of upper torso injuries for occupants who are properly restrained.

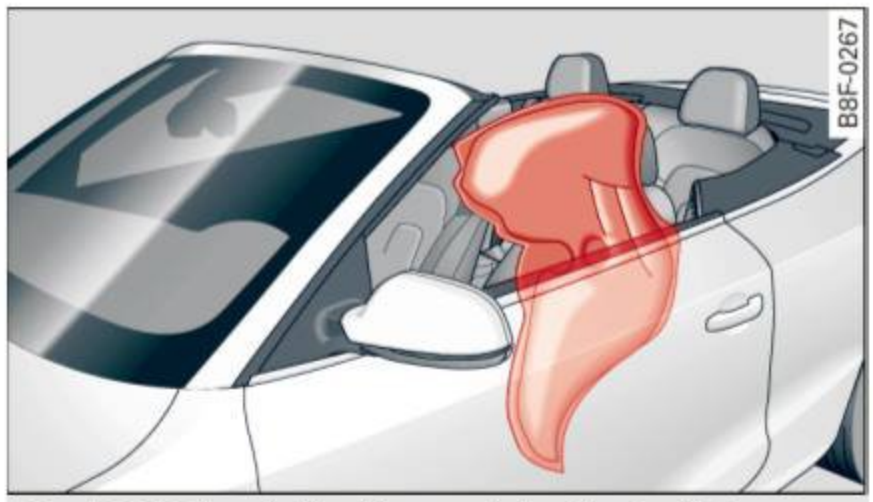


Fig. 153 Inflated side airbags on left side of vehicle

When the system is triggered, the airbag is filled with propellant gas and breaks through a seam in the seat surface area marked “AIRBAG”. It expands between the side trim panel and the passenger. In order to help provide this additional protection, the side airbag must inflate within a fraction of a second at very high speed and with great force. The supplemental side airbag could injure you if your seating position is not proper or upright or if items are located in the area where the supplemental side airbag expands. This applies especially to children ⇨ *page 150, Child safety*. Supplemental side airbags inflate between the occupant and the door panel on the side of the vehicle that is struck in certain side collision ⇨ *fig. 153*.

Although they are not a soft pillow, they can “cushion” the impact and in this way they can help to reduce the risk of injury to the upper part of the body.

A fine dust may develop when the airbag deploys. This is normal and does not mean there is a fire in the vehicle.

Important safety instructions on the side airbag system

Airbags are only supplemental restraints. Always properly wear safety belts and ride in a proper seating position.

There is a lot that you and your passengers must know and act accordingly to help the safety belts and airbags do their job to provide supplemental protection.

WARNING

An inflating side airbag can cause serious or fatal injury. Improperly wearing safety belts and improper seating positions increase the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever a vehicle is being used.

- In order to reduce the risk of injury when the supplemental side airbag inflates:
  - Always sit in an upright position and never lean against the area where the supplemental side airbag is located.
  - Never let a child or anyone else rest their head against the side trim panel in the area where the supplemental side airbag inflates.
  - Always make sure that safety belts are worn correctly,
  - Do not let anyone sitting in the front seat put their hand or any other parts of their body out of the window.
- Always make sure that the side airbag can inflate without interference.
  - Never install seat covers or replacement upholstery over the front seatbacks that have not been specifically approved by Audi.
  - Never use additional seat cushions that cover the areas where the side airbags deploy.
  - Damage to the original seat covers or to the seam in the area of the side airbag module must always be repaired immediately by an authorized Audi dealer.
- Objects between you and the airbag can increase the risk of injury in an accident by interfering with the way the airbag unfolds or ▶

by being pushed into you as the airbag inflates.

- Never place or attach accessories or other objects (such as cupholders, telephone brackets, or even large, bulky objects) on the doors, over or near the area marked "AIRBAG" on the seat backrests.
- Such objects and accessories can become dangerous projectiles and cause injury when the supplemental side airbag deploys.
- Never carry any objects or pets in the deployment space between them and the airbags or allow children or other passengers to travel in this position.

– Always prevent the side airbags from being damaged by heavy objects knocking against or hitting the sides of the seatbacks.

– The airbag system can only be triggered once. If the airbag has been triggered, the system must be replaced by an authorized Audi dealership.

– Damage (cracks, deep scratches etc.) to the original seat covers or to the seam in the area of the side airbag module must always be repaired immediately by an authorized Audi dealer.

– If children are seated improperly, their risk of injury increases in the case of an accident ⇨ *page 150, Child safety*.

– Never attempt to modify any components of the airbag system in any way.

– In a side collision, side airbags will not function properly if sensors cannot correctly measure increasing air pressure inside the doors when air escapes through larger, unclosed openings in the door panel.

- Never drive with interior door trim panels removed.
- Never drive when parts have been removed from the inside door panel and the openings they leave have not been properly closed.
- Never drive when loudspeakers in the doors have been removed unless the speaker holes have been properly closed.
- Always make certain that openings are covered or filled if additional speakers or other equipment is installed in the inside door panels.
- Always have work on the doors done by an authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop.

8F0012721BB

Child safety

Important information

Introduction

The rear seat is generally the safest place in a collision.

The physical principles of what happens when your vehicle is in a crash apply also to children ⇨ *page 123, What happens to occupants not wearing safety belts?*. But unlike adults their muscles and bones are not fully developed. In many respects children are at greater risk of serious injury in crashes than adults.

Because children's bodies are not fully developed, they require restraint systems especially designed for their size, weight, and body structure. Many countries and all states of the United States and provinces of Canada have laws requiring the use of approved child restraint systems for infants and small children.

In a frontal crash at a speed of 20-35 mph (30-56 km/h) the forces acting on a 13-pound (6 kg) infant will be more than 20 times the weight of the child. This means the weight of the child would suddenly be more than 260 pounds (120 kg). Under these conditions, only an appropriate child restraint properly used can reduce the risk of serious injury. Child restraints must be used properly to be effective. Used improperly, they can increase the risk of serious injury in an accident.

Consult the child safety seat manufacturer's instructions to be sure the seat is right for your child's size ⇨ *page 153, Important safety instructions for using child safety seats*. Please be sure to read and heed all of the important information and WARNINGS about child safety, Advanced Airbags, and the installation of child restraints in this chapter.

There is a lot you need to know about the Advanced Airbags in your vehicle and how they work when infants and children in child restraints are on the front passenger seat. Because of the large amount of important information, we cannot repeat it all here. We urge you to read the detailed information in this owner's manual about airbags and the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle and the very important information about transporting children on the front passenger seat. Please be sure to heed the WARNINGS - they are extremely important for your safety and the safety of your passengers, especially infants and small children.

WARNING

- Accident statistics have shown that children are generally safer in the rear seat area than in the front seating position. Always restrain any child age 12 and under in the rear.
- All vehicle occupants and especially children must be restrained properly whenever riding in a vehicle. An unrestrained or improperly restrained child could be injured by striking the interior or by being ejected from the vehicle during a sudden maneuver or impact. An unrestrained or improperly restrained child is also at greater risk of injury or death through contact with an inflating airbag.
- A suitable child restraint properly installed and used at one of the rear seating positions provides the highest degree of protection for infants and small children in most accident situations.

WARNING

Children on the front seat of any car even with Advanced Airbags can be seriously injured or even killed when an airbag inflates. A child in a rearward-facing child safety seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates.

- The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center armrest or door.
- Always install rearward-facing child safety seats on the rear seat.
- If you must install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat in ▶

exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rearward-facing child safety seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected immediately by your authorized Audi dealer.

WARNING

If, in exceptional circumstances, you must install a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat:

- Always make sure the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front seat with a passenger front and side airbag.
- Always follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the child safety seat or carrier.
- Always move the passenger seat into its rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible before installing the child restraint. The backrest must be adjusted to an upright position.
- Always make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.

Tips

Always replace child restraints that were installed in a vehicle during a crash. Damage to a child restraint that is not visible could cause it to fail in another collision situation.

Advanced front airbag system and children

Your vehicle is equipped with a front "Advanced Airbag System" in compliance with United States Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS) 208, as well as Canada Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (CMVSS) 208 as applicable at the time your vehicle was manufactured.

The Advanced Airbag system in your vehicle has been certified to meet the "low-risk" requirements for 3- and 6-year old children on the passenger side and small adults on the driver side.

The low risk deployment criteria are intended to reduce the risk of injury through interaction with the airbag that can occur, for example, by being too close to the steering wheel and instrument panel when the airbag inflates. In addition, the system has been certified to comply with the "suppression" requirements of the Safety Standard, to turn off the front airbag for infants up to 12 months who are restrained on the front passenger seat in child restraints that are listed in the Standard.

Even though your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag system, all children, especially those 12 years and younger, should always ride in the back seat properly restrained for their age and size. The airbag on the passenger side makes the front seat a potentially dangerous place for a child to ride. The front seat is not the safest place for a child in a forward-facing child safety seat. It can be a very dangerous place for an infant or a larger child in a rearward-facing seat.

Advanced Airbags and the weight-sensing mat in the front seat

The Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle detects the presence of an infant or child in a child restraint on the front passenger seat using the weight-sensing mat in the seat cushion and the sensor below the safety belt latch on the front passenger seat that measures the tension on the safety belt.

The weight-sensing mat measures total weight of the child and the child safety seat and a child blanket on the front passenger seat. The weight on the front passenger seat is related to the design of the child restraint and its "footprint", the size and shape of the bottom of the child restraint as it sits on the seat. The weight of a child restraint and its "footprint" vary for different kinds of child restraints and for the different models of the same kind of child restraint offered by child restraint manufacturers.

The weight ranges for the individual types, makes and models of child restraints that the NHTSA has specified in the Safety Standard together with the weight ranges of typical infants ▶

and typical 1 year-old child have been stored in the control unit of the Advanced Airbag System. When a child restraint is being used on the front passenger seat with a typical 1 year-old child, the Advanced Airbag System compares the weight measured by the weight sensing mat with the information stored in the electronic control unit.

The electronic control unit also registers the tension on the front passenger safety belt. The tension on the safety belt for the front passenger seat will be different for an adult who is properly using the safety belt as compared to the tension on the belt when it is used to attach a child restraint to the seat. The sensor below the latch for the safety belt for the front seat passenger measures the tension on the belt. The input from this sensor is then used with the weight to "decide", whether there is a child restraint with a typical 1 year-old child on the front passenger seat and whether or not the airbag must be turned off.

Child restraints and Advanced Airbags

Regardless of the child restraint that you use, make sure that it has been certified to meet Safety Standards and has been certified by its manufacturer for use with an airbag. Always be sure that the child restraint is properly installed at one of the rear seating positions. If in exceptional circumstances you must use it on the front passenger seat, carefully read all of the information on child safety and Advanced Airbags and heed all of the applicable WARNINGS. Make certain that the child restraint is correctly recognized by the weight-sensing mat inside the front passenger seat, that the front passenger airbag is turned off and that the airbag status is always correctly signaled by the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light.

Many types and models of child restraints have been available over the years, new models are introduced regularly incorporating new and improved designs and older models are taken out of production. Child restraints are not standardized. Child restraints of the same type typically have different weights and sizes and different 'footprints,' the size and shape of the bottom of the child restraint that sits on the seat, when they are installed on a vehicle seat. These differences make it virtually impossible to certify compliance with the requirements for advanced airbags with each and every child restraint that has ever been sold in the past or will be sold over the course of the useful life of your vehicle.

For this reason, the United States National Highway Traffic Safety Administration has published a list of specific type, makes and models of child restraints that must be used to certify compliance of the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle with the suppression requirements of Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208. These child restraints are:

Subpart A – Car bed child restraints

Model	Manufactured on or after
Angel Guard Angel Ride AA2403FOF	September 25, 2007

Subpart B – Rear-facing child restraints

Model	Manufactured on or after
Century SmartFit 4543	December 1, 1999
Cosco Arriva 22-013PAW and base 22-999WHO	September 25, 2007
Evenflo Discovery Adjust Right 212	December 1, 1999
Evenflo First Choice 204	December 1, 1999
Graco Infant 8457	December 1, 1999
Graco Snugride	September 25, 2007
Peg Perego Primo Viaggio SIP IMUN00US	September 25, 2007

Subpart C – Forward-facing and convertible child restraints

Model	Manufactured on or after
Britax Roundabout E9L02xx	September 25, 2007
Cosco Touriva 02519	December 1, 1999

Model	Manufactured on or after
Cosco Summit Deluxe High Back Booster 22-262	September 25, 2007
Cosco High Back Booster 22-209	September 25, 2007
Evenflo Tribute V 379xxxx	September 25, 2007
Evenflo Medallion 254	December 1, 1999
Evenflo Generations 352xxxx	September 25, 2007
Graco ComfortSport	September 25, 2007
Graco Toddler Safety Seat Step 2	September 25, 2007
Graco Platinum Cargo	September 25, 2007

WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious injury, make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on whenever a child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat and the ignition is switched on.

– Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions if the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not stay on.
– Have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Audi dealer immediately.

Tips

The child seats listed in categories A to C have been statically tested by Audi only for the Advanced Airbag function.

Important safety instructions for using child safety seats

Correct use of child safety seats substantially reduces the risk of injury in an accident!

As the driver, you are responsible for the safety of everybody in the vehicle, especially children:

- Always use the right child safety seat for each child and always use it properly ⇨ *page 155*.
- Always carefully follow the child safety seat manufacturer's instructions on how to route the safety belt properly through the child safety seat.
- When using the vehicle safety belt to install a child safety seat, you must first activate the convertible locking retractor on the safety belt to prevent the child safety seat from moving ⇨ *page 159*.
- Push the child safety seat down with your full weight to get the safety belt really tight so that the seat cannot move forward or sideways more than one inch (2.5 cm).
- If a strap or tether is being used to tie the child safety seat to the front passenger seat, make sure that it is not so tight that it causes the weight-sensing mat to measure more weight than is actually on the seat.
- Secure unused safety belts on the rear seat ⇨ *page 155*.

Always remember: Even though your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag system, all children, especially those 12 years and younger, should always ride in the back seat properly restrained for their age and size.

WARNING

Not using a child safety seat, using the wrong child safety seat or improperly installing a child restraint increases the risk of serious personal injury and death.

– All vehicle occupants and especially children must always be restrained properly whenever riding in a vehicle.
  – An unrestrained or improperly restrained child can be injured or killed by being thrown against the inside of the vehicle or by being ejected from it during a sudden maneuver or impact.
  – An unrestrained or improperly restrained child is at much greater risk of injury or death by being struck by an inflating airbag.
– Commercially available child safety seats are required to comply with U.S. Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS) 213 (in Canada CMVSS 213).

▶

- When buying a child restraint, select one that fits your child and the vehicle.
- Only use child restraint systems that fully contact the flat portion of the seat cushion. The child restraint must not tip or lean to either side. Audi does not recommend using child safety seats that rest on legs or tube-like frames. They do not provide adequate contact with the seat.
- Always heed all legal requirements pertaining to the installation and use of child safety seats and carefully follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the seat you are using.

– Never allow children under 57 inches (1.45 meters) to wear a normal safety belt. They must always be restrained by a proper child restraint system. Otherwise, they could sustain injuries to the abdomen and neck areas during sudden braking maneuvers or accidents.
– Never let more than one child occupy a child safety seat.
– Never let babies or older children ride in a vehicle while sitting on the lap of another passenger.
  - Holding a child in your arms is never a substitute for a child restraint system.
  - The strongest person could not hold the child with the forces that exist in an accident. The child will strike the interior of the vehicle and can also be struck by the passenger.
  - The child and the passenger can also injure each other in an accident.
– Never install rearward-facing child safety seats or infant carriers on the front passenger seat. A child will be seriously injured and can be killed when the passenger airbag inflates – even with an Advanced Airbag System.
  - The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center arm rest, door or roof.
  - Always install rearward-facing child safety seats or infant carriers on the rear seat.
– Forward-facing child safety seats installed on the front passenger's seat can interfere with the airbag when it inflates and cause serious injury to the child. Always install forward-facing child safety seats on the rear seat.
– If exceptional circumstances require the use of a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat, the child's safety and well-being require that the following special precautions be taken:
  - Make sure the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front seat with a passenger front and side airbag.
  - Always carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the child safety seat or carrier.
  - Always move the front passenger seat into the rearmost position of the passenger seat's fore and aft adjustment range, and as far away from the airbag as possible before installing the child restraint.
  - Always make sure that nothing prevents the front passenger's seat from being moved to the rearmost position in its fore and aft adjustment range.
  - Always make sure that the backrest is in the upright position.
– Always buckle the child safety seat firmly in place even if a child is not sitting in it. A loose child safety seat can fly around during a sudden stop or in a collision.
– Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇨ *page 122, Safety belts*, ⇨ *page 130, Airbag system* and ⇨ *page 150, Child safety*.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious injury, make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on whenever a child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat and the ignition is switched on. ▶

– Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions if the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not stay on.
– Have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Audi dealer immediately.

Secure unused safety belts on the rear seat



Fig. 154 Schematic overview: keep unused safety belts away from children in child safety seats. Ⓐ - outer rear safety belt

If a child safety seat is used on the rear bench, especially with LATCH universal lower anchorages, the unused safety belts **must** be secured so that the child in the child restraint cannot reach them ⇨ ⚠.

– Guide the safety belt webbing Ⓐ behind the head restraint of the seat where the child restraint is installed ⇨ *fig. 154*. When doing so, do not engage the convertible locking retractor! You should not hear a "clicking" sound when winding up the safety belt.
– Let the belt retractor wind up the safety belt webbing.

⚠ WARNING

A child in a child safety seat installed with the LATCH lower anchorages or with the standard safety belt or a child in a booster seat on the rear seat could play with unused rear seat safety belts and become entangled. This could cause the child serious personal injury and even death.

– Always secure unused rear seat safety belts out of reach of children in child seats such as by properly routing them around the head restraint of the seat where the child restraint is installed.
– Never activate the convertible locking retractor when routing the safety belts around the head restraints.

Child seats

Infant seats

Babies and infants up to about one year old and 20 lbs. or 9 kg need special rearward-facing child restraints that support the back, neck and head in a crash.

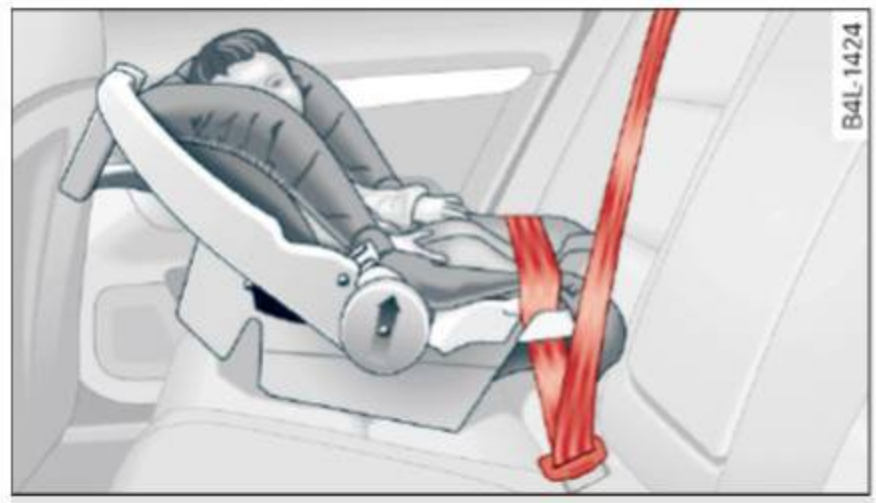


Fig. 155 Schematic overview: rearward-facing infant seat, properly installed on the rear seat

▸ When using the vehicle safety belt to install a child safety seat, you must first activate the convertible locking retractor on the safety belt to prevent the child safety seat from moving ⇨ *page 159* or install the seat using the LATCH attachments.
▸ Push the child safety seat down with your full weight to get the safety belt really tight so that the seat cannot move forward or sideways more than one inch (2.5 cm).
▸ Secure unused safety belts on the rear seat ⇨ *page 155*.

Infants up to about one year (20 lbs. or 9 kg) are best protected in special infant carriers and child safety seats designed for their age group. Many experts believe that infants and small children should ride only in special restraints in which the child faces the back of the vehicle. These infant seats support the baby's back, neck and head in a crash ⇨ *fig. 155*. ▶

The airbag on the passenger side makes the front seat a potentially dangerous place for a child to ride. The front seat is not the safest place for a child in a forward-facing child seat. It is a very dangerous place for an infant or a larger child in a rearward-facing seat.

WARNING

Not using a child safety seat, using the wrong child safety seat or improperly installing a child restraint increases the risk of serious personal injury and death in a crash.

- Never install rearward-facing child safety seats or infant carriers on the front passenger seat - even with an Advanced Airbag System. A child will be seriously injured and can be killed when the inflating airbag hits the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and smashes the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof ⇨ *page 131, Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know.*
- Always install rearward-facing child safety seats or infant carriers on the rear seat.
- Never install a rearward-facing child restraint in the forward-facing direction. Such restraints are designed for the special needs of infants and very small children and cannot protect them properly if the seat is forward-facing.
- If you must install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rearward-facing child safety seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Audi dealer.
- Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇨ *page 122, Safety belts*, ⇨ *page 130, Airbag system* and ⇨ *page 150, Important information.*

Convertible child safety seats

Properly used convertible child safety seats can help protect toddlers and children over age one who weigh between 20 and 40 lbs. (9 and 18 kg) in a crash.

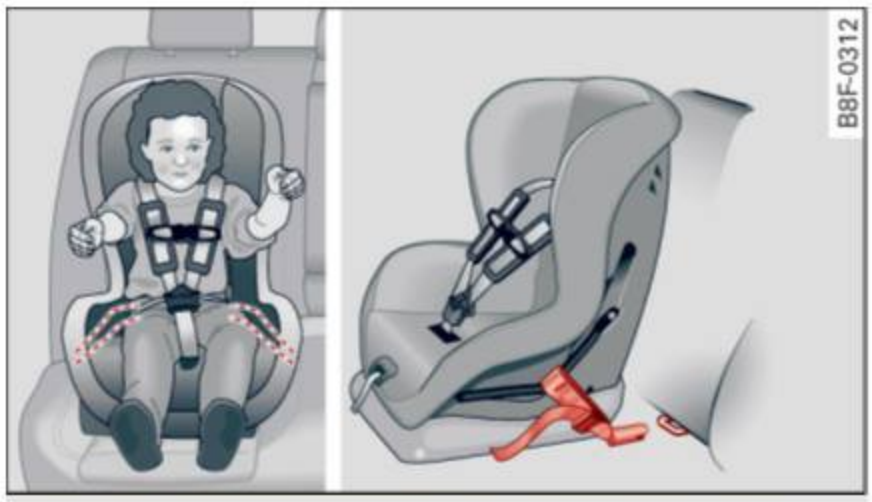


Fig. 156 Schematic overview: installation of the attachments applicable to a LATCH seat

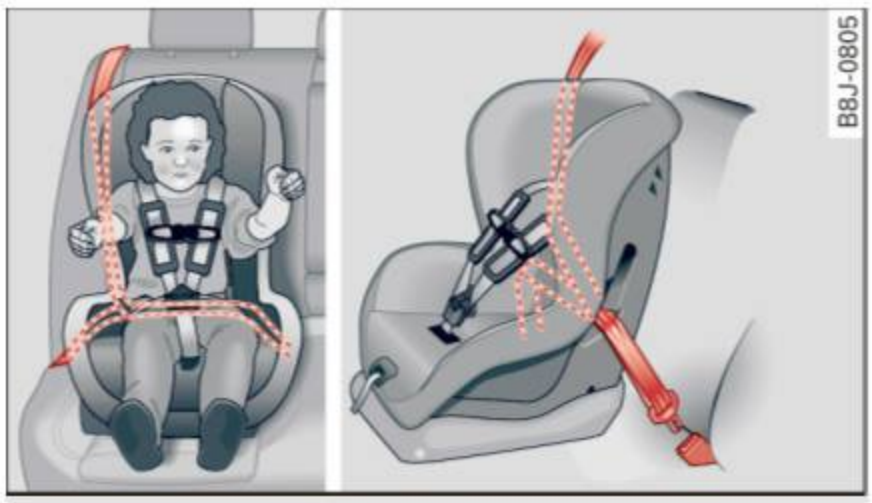


Fig. 157 Schematic overview: installation of the seat using the vehicle's safety belt system

- ▸ When using the vehicle safety belt to install a child safety seat, you must first activate the convertible locking retractor on the safety belt to prevent the child safety seat from moving ⇨ *page 159* or install the seat using the LATCH attachments.
- ▸ Push the child safety seat down with your full weight to get the safety belt really tight so that the seat cannot move forward or sideways more than one inch (2.5 cm) ⇨ *page 159*.
- ▸ Secure unused safety belts on the rear seat ⇨ *page 155*.

A toddler or child is usually too large for an infant restraint if it is more than one year old and weighs more than 20 lbs. (9 kg).

Toddlers and children who are older than one year up to about 4 years old and weigh more than 20 lbs. (9 kg) up to 40 lbs. (18 kg) must always ▶

be properly restrained in a child safety seat certified for their size and weight ⇨ *fig. 156* and ⇨ *fig. 157*.

The airbag on the passenger side makes the front seat a potentially dangerous place for a child to ride. The front seat is not the safest place for a child in a forward-facing child safety seat. It is a very dangerous place for an infant or a larger child in a rearward-facing seat.

WARNING

Not using a child safety seat, using the wrong child safety seat or improperly installing a child restraint increases the risk of serious personal injury and death in a collision or other emergency situation.

- Children on the front seat of any car, even with Advanced Airbags, can be seriously injured or even killed when an airbag inflates. A child in a rearward-facing child safety seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates – even with an Advanced Airbag System.
- The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof.
- Always install rearward-facing child safety seats on the rear seat.
- If you must install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rearward-facing child safety seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Audi dealer.
- The rear side of the child safety seat should be positioned as close as possible to the backrest on the vehicle seat.
- Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇨ *page 122, Safety belts*, ⇨ *page 130, Airbag system* and ⇨ *page 150, Important information*.

WARNING

If exceptional circumstances require the use of a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat, the child's safety and well-being require that the following special precautions be taken:

- Make sure the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front seat with a passenger front and side airbag.
- Always follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the child safety seat or infant carrier.
- Always move the front passenger seat into the rearmost position of the passenger seat's fore and aft adjustment range, and as far away from the airbag as possible before installing the child restraint.
- Always make sure that nothing prevents the front passenger's seat from being moved to the rearmost position in its fore and aft adjustment range.
- Always make sure the backrest is in an upright position.
- Make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.
- If the light does not stay on, perform the checks ⇨ *page 140, Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System*.
- Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions if the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not stay on whenever the ignition is switched on.

Booster seats and safety belts

Properly used booster seats can help protect children weighing between about 40 lbs. and 80 lbs. (18 kg and 36 kg) who are less than 4 ft. 9 in. (57 inches/1.45 meters) tall.



Fig. 158 Rear seat: child properly restrained in a booster seat

The vehicle's safety belts alone will not fit most children until they are at least 4 ft. 9 in. (57 inches/1.45 meters) tall and weigh about 80 lbs. (36 kg). Booster seats raise these children up so that the safety belt will pass properly over the stronger parts of their bodies and the safety belt can help protect them in a crash.

- ▸ Do not use the convertible locking retractor when using the vehicle's safety belt to restrain a child on a booster seat.
- ▸ The shoulder belt must lie as close to the center of the child's collar bone as possible and must lie flat and snug on the upper body. It must never lie across the throat or neck. The lap belt must lie across the pelvis and never across the stomach or abdomen. Make sure the belt lies flat and snug. Pull on the belt to tighten if necessary.
- ▸ Secure unused safety belts on the rear seat ⇨ *page 155*.

Children up to about 40 lbs. (18 kg) are best protected in child safety seats designed for their age and weight. Experts say that the skeletal structure, particularly the pelvis, of these children is not fully developed, and they must not use the vehicle safety belts without a suitable child restraint.

It is usually best to put these children in appropriate booster seats. Be sure the booster seat meets all applicable safety standards.

Booster seats raise the seating position of the child and reposition both the lap and shoulder parts of the safety belt so that they pass across the child's body in the right places. The routing of the belt over the child's body is very important for the child's protection, whether or not a booster seat is used. Children age 12 and under must always ride in the rear seat.

Children who are at least 4 ft. 9 in. (57 inches/1.45 meters) tall can generally use the vehicle's three point lap and shoulder belts. Never use the lap belt portion of the vehicle's safety belt alone to restrain any child, regardless of how big the child is. Always remember that children do not have the pronounced pelvic structure required for the proper function of lap belt portion of the vehicle's three point lap and shoulder belts. The child's safety absolutely requires that a lap belt portion of the safety belt be fastened snugly and as low as possible around the pelvis. Never let the lap belt portion of the safety belt pass over the child's stomach or abdomen.

In a crash, airbags must inflate within a blink of an eye and with considerable force. In order to do its job, the airbag needs room to inflate so that it will be there to protect the occupant as the occupant moves forward into the airbag.

A vehicle occupant who is out of position and too close to the airbag gets in the way of an inflating airbag. When an occupant is too close, he or she will be struck violently and will receive serious or possibly even fatal injury.

In order for the airbag to offer protection, it is important that all vehicle occupants, especially any children, who must be in the front seat because of exceptional circumstances, be properly restrained and as far away from the airbag as possible. By keeping room between the child's body and the front of the passenger compartment, the airbag can inflate completely and provide supplemental protection in certain frontal collisions. ▸

WARNING

Not using a booster seat, using the booster seat improperly, incorrectly installing a booster seat or using the vehicle safety belt improperly increases the risk of serious personal injury and death in a collision or other emergency situation. To help reduce the risk of serious personal injury and/or death:

- The shoulder belt must lie as close to the center of the child's collar bone as possible and must lie flat and snug on the upper body. It must never lie across the throat or neck. The lap belt must lie across the pelvis and never across the stomach or abdomen. Make sure the belt lies flat and snug. Pull on the belt to tighten if necessary.
- Failure to properly route safety belts over a child's body will cause severe injuries in an accident or other emergency situation ⇨ *page 122*.
- The rear side of the child safety seat should be positioned as close as possible to the backrest on the vehicle seat.
- Children on the front seat of any car, even with Advanced Airbags, can be seriously injured or even killed when an airbag inflates.
- Never let a child stand or kneel on any seat.
- Never let a child ride in the cargo area of your vehicle.
- Always remember that a child leaning forward, sitting sideways or out of position in any way during an accident can be struck by a deploying airbag. This will result in serious personal injury or death.
- If you must install a booster seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light must come on and stay on, whenever the ignition is switched on.
- If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, perform the checks described ⇨ *page 140, Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System*.
- Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions if the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not stay on whenever the ignition is switched on.
- Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇨ *page 122, Safety belts*, ⇨ *page 130, Airbag system* and ⇨ *page 150, Important information*.

Securing child seats

Securing a child safety seat using a safety belt

Safety belts for the rear seats and the front passenger's seat can be locked with the convertible locking retractor to properly secure child safety seats.

The safety belts emergency locking retractors for the rear seats safety belts and for the front passenger's seat safety belt have a convertible locking retractor for child restraints. The safety belt must be locked so that belt webbing cannot unreel. The retractor can be activated to lock the safety belt and prevent the safety belt webbing from loosening up during normal driving. A child safety seat can only be properly installed when the safety belt is locked so that the child and child safety seat will stay in place.

Always remember: Even though your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag system, all children, especially those 12 years and younger, should always ride in the back seat properly restrained for their age and weight.

WARNING

Improperly installed child safety seats increase the risk of serious personal injury and death in a collision.

- Always make sure that the safety belt retractor is locked when installing a child safety seat. An unlocked safety belt retractor cannot hold the child safety seat in place during normal driving or in a crash.
- Always buckle the child safety seat firmly in place even if a child is not sitting in it. A loose child safety seat can fly around during a sudden stop or in a collision. ▶

– If the backrest is not securely latched, the child and the child restraint will be thrown forward together with the backrest and will strike parts of the vehicle interior. The child can be seriously injured or killed.
– Never install rearward-facing child safety seats or infant carriers on the front passenger seat. A child will be seriously injured and can be killed when the passenger airbag inflates.
– The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof.
– Always install rearward-facing child safety seats or infant carriers on the rear seat.
– Forward-facing child safety seats or infant carriers installed on the front passenger's seat may interfere with the deployment of the airbag and cause serious injury to the child.
– It is safer to install a forward-facing child safety seat on the rear seat.
– Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇨ *page 150*. Special precautions apply when installing a child safety seat on the front passenger seat ⇨ *page 131, Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know*.

WARNING

Always take special precautions if you must install a forward or rearward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat in exceptional situations:
– Whenever a forward or rearward-facing child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light must come on and stay on whenever the ignition is switched on.
– If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, perform the checks described ⇨ *page 140, Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System*.
– Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions if the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not stay on whenever the ignition is switched on.
– Improper installation of child restraints can reduce their effectiveness or even prevent them from providing any protection.
– An improperly installed child restraint can interfere with the airbag as it deploys and seriously injure or even kill the child.
– Always carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the child safety seat or carrier.
– Never place additional items on the seat that can increase the total weight registered by the weight-sensing mat and can cause injury in a crash.

WARNING

Forward-facing child restraints:
– Always make sure the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front seat with a passenger front and side airbag.
– Never put the forward-facing child restraint up, against or very near the instrument panel.
– Always move the passenger seat into its rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible before installing the forward-facing child restraint. The backrest must be adjusted to an upright position.
– Make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.

WARNING

Rearward-facing child restraints:
– A child in a rearward-facing child safety seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag System.

▶

– The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof.
– Always be especially careful if you must install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat in exceptional circumstances.
– A tight tether strap on a rearward-facing child restraint attached to the front passenger seat can put too much pressure on the weight-mat in the seat and register a heavier weight in the Advanced Airbag System. The heavier weight registered can make the system work as though an adult were on the seat and deploy the Advanced Airbag when it must be suppressed causing serious or even fatal injury to the child.
– Make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.
– If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rearward-facing child safety seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Audi dealer.

Activating the convertible locking retractor

Use the convertible locking retractor to secure a child restraint.

Always heed the child safety seat manufacturer's instructions when installing a child restraint in your vehicle. To activate the convertible locking retractor:

- ▸ Place the child restraint on a seat, preferably on the rear seat.
- ▸ Slowly pull the belt **all the way out**.
- ▸ Route it around or through the child restraint belt path ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Push the child safety seat down with your full weight to get the safety belt really tight.
- ▸ Insert the belt tongue into the buckle for that seating position.
- ▸ Guide the safety belt back into the retractor until the belt lies flat and snug on the child safety seat.
- ▸ You should hear a “clicking” noise as the belt winds back into the inertia reel. Test the convertible locking retractor by pulling on the belt. You should no longer be able to pull the belt out of the retractor. The convertible locking retractor is now activated.
- ▸ Make sure that the red release button is facing away from the child restraint so that it can be unbuckled quickly.
- ▸ Pull on the belt to make sure the safety belt is properly tight and fastened so that the seat cannot move forward or sideways more than one inch (2.5 cm).

⚠ WARNING

Using the wrong child restraint or an improperly installed child restraint can cause serious personal injury or death in a crash.

– Always make sure that the safety belt retractor is locked when installing a child safety seat. An unlocked safety belt retractor cannot hold the child safety seat in place during normal driving or in a crash.
– Always buckle the child safety seat firmly in place even if a child is not sitting in it. A loose child safety seat can fly around during a sudden stop or in a crash.
– Always make sure the seat backrest to which the child restraint is installed is in an upright position and securely latched into place and cannot fold forward. Otherwise, the seatback with the child safety seat attached to it could fly forward in the event of an accident or other emergency situation.
– Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇨ *page 150*. Special precautions apply when installing a child safety seat on the front passenger seat ⇨ *page 131, Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know*.

8F0012721BB

Deactivating the convertible locking retractor

The convertible locking retractor for child restraints will be deactivated automatically when the belt is wound all the way back into the retractor.

- ▸ Press the red button on the safety belt buckle. The belt tongue will pop out of the buckle.
- ▸ Guide the safety belt all the way back into its stowed position.

Always let the safety belt retract completely into its stowed position. The safety belt can now be used as an ordinary safety belt without the convertible locking retractor for child restraints.

If the convertible locking retractor should be activated inadvertently, the safety belt must be unfastened and guided completely back into its stowed position to deactivate this feature. If the convertible locking retractor is not deactivated, the safety belt will gradually become tighter and uncomfortable to wear.

WARNING

Improperly installed child safety seats increase the risk of serious personal injury and death in a collision.

– Never unfasten the safety belt to deactivate the convertible locking retractor for child restraints while the vehicle is moving. You would not be restrained and could be seriously injured in an accident.
– Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇨ *page 150*. Special precautions apply when installing a child safety seat on the front passenger seat ⇨ *page 131, Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know*.

LATCH system (lower anchorages and tethers for children)

Child Restraint System anchors and how are they related to child safety

To provide a simpler and more practicable way to attach the child restraint on the vehicle seat, Federal regulations require special lower anchorages in vehicles and devices on new child restraints to attach to the vehicle anchorages.

The combination of the tether anchorages and the lower anchorages is now generally called the **LATCH** system for "**L**ower **A**nchorages and **T**ethers for **Ch**ildren."

Forward-facing child restraints manufactured after September 1, 1999, are required by U.S. federal regulations to comply with new child head movement performance requirements. These new performance requirements make a tether necessary on most new child seats.

Installing a child restraint that requires a top tether without one can seriously impair the performance of the child restraint and its ability to protect the child in a collision. Installing a child restraint that requires a top tether without the top tether may be a violation of state law.

Child restraint manufacturers offer LATCH lower anchorages on their child seats with hook-on or push-on connectors attached to adjustable straps.

In addition to the LATCH lower anchorages, these child restraint systems usually require the use of tether straps to help keep the child restraint firmly in place.

Tether anchorages

Your Audi Cabriolet is **not** equipped with a *LATCH* system. It is **not** equipped with top tether anchorages. It is equipped with lower anchorages only.

Your Cabriolet is equipped with the Active Rollover Protection System, which is integrated into the backrest of the rear seat. The Active Rollover Protection System deploys upwards to help provide additional protection in certain collisions and crash situations. For this reason, your vehicle is **not** equipped with top tether anchorages for use with forward-facing child restraints.

In Canada, provincial law requires that forward-facing child restraints use both top tether anchorages and lower anchorages; therefore, it is **not possible** to install a forward-facing child restraint in this vehicle.

In the United States, child restraint installation must conform with the child restraint manufacturer's instructions. Check the instructions that come with the child restraint or contact the manufacturer to determine if the child restraint may be installed facing forward without securing the top tether strap.

WARNING

Improper installation of child restraints will increase the risk of injury and death in a crash.

- Always follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the child restraint you intend to install in your vehicle.
- Improper use of child restraint LATCH lower anchorage points can lead to injury in a collision. The LATCH lower anchorage points are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints.
- Never mount two child restraint systems on one LATCH lower anchorage point.
- Never secure or attach any luggage or other item to the LATCH lower anchorages.

Tips

In other countries, the term "ISOFIX" is used to describe the lower anchorages.

8F0012721BB

Location

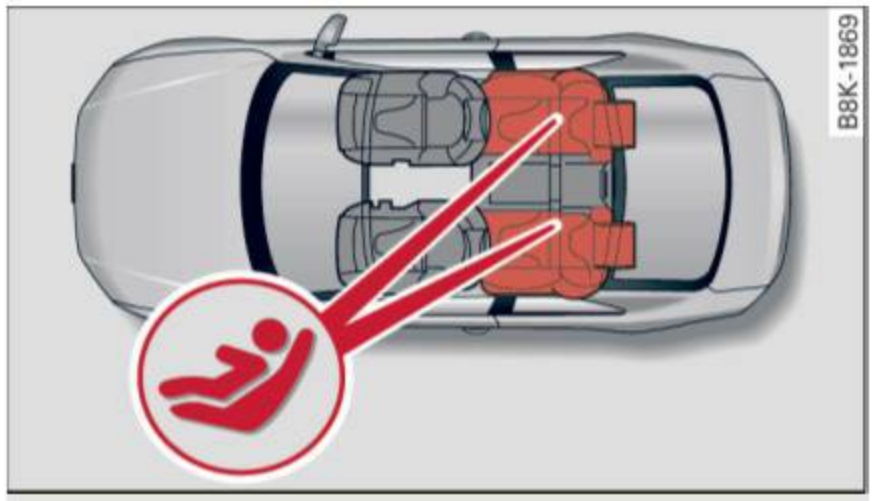


Fig. 159 Schematic overview: LATCH anchorage point locations

The illustration shows the seating locations in your vehicle which are equipped with the lower anchorages system.

Description

The lower anchorage positions are marked for quick locating.



Fig. 160 Rear seatbacks: locator buttons for lower anchorages

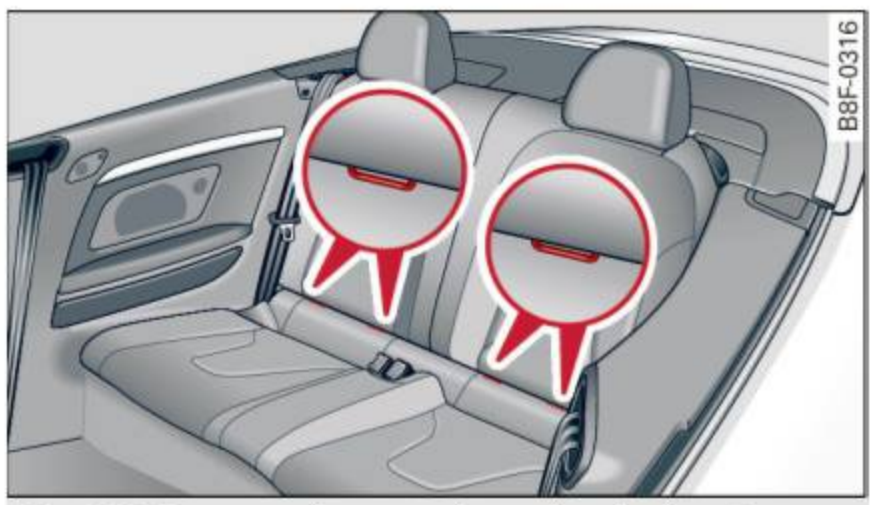


Fig. 161 Rear seats: lower anchorage bracket locations

Attachment locator markers for lower anchorages

Circular locator buttons on the rear seatback indicate the lower anchorage locations on the rear seating positions ⇨ *fig. 160*.

Lower anchorages

The lower anchorage attachment points are located between the rear seatback and rear seat cushion ⇨ *fig. 161*.

Lower anchorages secure the child restraint in the seat without using the vehicle's safety belts. Anchorages provide a secure and easy-to-use attachment and minimize the possibility of improper child restraint installation.

All child restraints manufactured after September 1, 2002, must have lower anchorage attachments for the *LATCH* system.

Remember that the lower anchorage points are only intended for installation and attachment of child restraints specifically certified for use with *LATCH* lower anchorages. Child restraints that are not equipped with the lower anchorage attachments can still be installed in compliance with the child restraint manufacturer's instructions on using vehicle safety belts.

WARNING

Improper use of LATCH lower anchorages can cause serious personal injury in an accident.

- Always carefully follow the child restraints manufacturer's instructions for proper installation of the child restraint and proper use of the lower anchorages or safety belts in your vehicle.
- Never secure or attach any luggage or other items to the *LATCH* lower anchorages.
- Always read and heed the important information about child restraints in this chapter and WARNINGS ⇨ *page 150, Child safety*.

Installing a child restraint with LATCH lower anchorages

Whenever you install a child restraint always follow the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

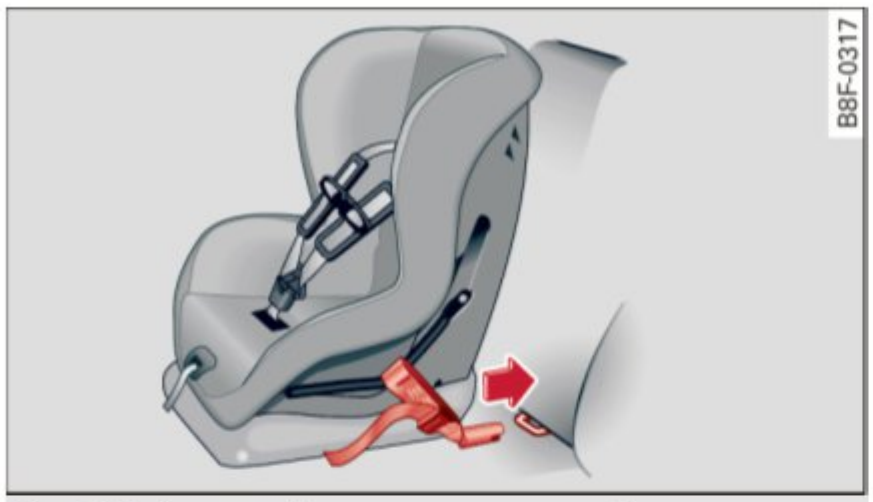


Fig. 162 Lower anchorages: proper mounting

Mounting

- ▸ Make sure the seatback of the rear seat bench is in the upright position and securely latched in place.
- ▸ Attach both hook-on connectors with the spring catch release on the child safety seat onto the LATCH lower anchorage so that the connectors lock into place ⇨ *fig. 162*.
- ▸ Pull on the connector attachments to make sure they are properly attached to the LATCH lower anchorage.
- ▸ Pull straps tight following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

Releasing

- ▸ Loosen the tension on the straps following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.
- ▸ Depress the spring catches to release the anchorage hooks from the lower anchorages.

Remember: Use tether straps to help keep the child restraint firmly in place.

WARNING

Improper use of the LATCH system can increase the risk of serious personal injury and death in an accident.

– These anchors were developed only for child safety seats using the “LATCH” system.
– Never attach other child safety seats, belts or other objects to these anchors.
– Always make sure that you hear a click when latching the seat in place. If you do not hear a click the seat is not secure and could fly forward and hit the interior of the vehicle, or be ejected from the vehicle.

WARNING

Improper installation of child restraints will increase the risk of injury in an accident.

– Always follow the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions for proper installation of the child restraint system and proper use of tether straps as well as the lower anchorages or safety belts in your vehicle.
– Always read and heed the important information and WARNINGS about child safety and the installation of child restraint systems ⇨ *page 150, Child safety*.

Using tether straps on rearward-facing child restraints

Currently, few rearward-facing child restraint systems come with a tether. Please read and heed the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions carefully to determine how to properly install the tether.

WARNING

A child in a rearward-facing child safety seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag System.

– The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, or door.
– A tight tether or other strap on a rearward-facing child restraint attached to the front passenger seat can put too much pressure on the weight-mat in the seat and register a heavier weight in the Advanced Airbag System. The heavier weight registered can make the system work as though an adult ▸

were on the seat and deploy the Advanced Airbag when it must be suppressed causing serious or even fatal injury to the child.
– If you must install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rearward-facing child safety seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Audi dealer.

Additional information

Sources of information about child restraints and their use

There are a number of sources of additional information about child restraint selection, installation and use:

NHTSA advises that the best child safety seat is the one that fits your child and fits in your vehicle, and that you will use correctly and consistently.

Try before you buy!

U.S National Highway Traffic Safety Administration
Tel.: 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153)
www.nhtsa.gov

National SAFE KIDS Campaign
Tel.: (202) 662-0600
www.safekids.org

Safety BeltSafe U.S.A
Tel.: (800) 745-SAFE (English)
Tel.: (800) 747-SANO (Spanish)
www.carseat.org

Transport Canada Information Centre
Tel.: 1-800-333-0371 or call 1-613-998-8616 if you are in the Ottawa area
http://www.tc.gc.ca/eng/roadsafety/menu.htm

Audi Customer Relations
Tel.: (800) 822-2834

Intelligent Technology

Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC)

Description

ESC helps to improve road holding and vehicle dynamics to help reduce the probability of skidding and loss of vehicle control. It works only when the engine is running. ESC detects certain difficult driving situations, including when the vehicle is beginning to spin (yaw) out of control and helps you to get the vehicle back under control by selectively braking the wheels, and/or reducing engine power and providing steering assistance to help hold the vehicle on the driver's intended course. The indicator light in the instrument cluster blinks when ESC is taking action to help you control the vehicle.

The following systems are integrated in the ESC:

Anti-lock braking system (ABS)

ABS prevents the wheels from locking up when braking. The vehicle can still be steered even during hard braking. Apply steady pressure to the brake pedal. Do not pump the pedal. A pulsing in the brake pedal indicates that the system is helping you to brake the vehicle.

Brake assist system

The brake assist system can decrease braking distance. It increases braking power when the driver presses the brake pedal quickly in emergency situations. You must press and hold the brake pedal until the situation is over. In vehicles with adaptive cruise control*, the brake assist system is more sensitive if the distance detected to the vehicle ahead is too small.

Anti-slip regulation (ASR)

ASR reduces engine power when the drive wheels begin to spin and adapts the force to the road conditions. This makes it easier to start, accelerate and drive up hills.

Electronic differential lock (EDL)

The EDL brakes wheels that are spinning and transfers the drive power to the other drive wheel or wheels if the vehicle is equipped with all-wheel drive*. This function is not available at higher speeds.

In extreme cases, EDL automatically switches off to help keep the brake on the braked wheel from overheating. EDL will switch on again automatically when conditions have returned to normal.

Steering recommendation

The ESC helps to stabilize the vehicle by changing the steering torque.

In vehicles with dynamic steering*, ESC also helps to stabilize the steering in critical situations.

Electronic interaxle differential lock*/ selective wheel torque control*

The electronic interaxle differential lock (front wheel drive) or the selective wheel torque control (all wheel drive) operates when driving through curves. The front wheel on the inside of the curve or both wheels on the inside of the curve are braked selectively as needed. This allows more precise driving in curves. The applicable system may not activate when driving in wet or snowy conditions.

WARNING

- The ESC and its integrated systems cannot overcome the laws of physics. This is especially important on slippery or wet roads. If the systems begin acting to stabilize your vehicle, you should immediately change your speed to match the road and traffic conditions. Do not let the increased safety provided by these systems tempt you to take risks. Doing so will increase the risk of a loss of vehicle control, collision and serious personal injuries.
- Always adapt your speed to road, traffic and weather conditions. The risk of losing control of the vehicle increases when driving too fast, especially through curves and on slippery or wet roads, and when driving too close to vehicles up ahead. The ESC and its integrated systems cannot always prevent collisions - there is still a risk of accidents!

▶

8F0012721BB

– Always accelerate with special care on even, smooth surfaces such as those that are wet or covered with ice and snow. The drive wheels can spin even with these assistance systems that cannot always help to reduce the risk of loss of vehicle control.

Tips

– ABS and ASR only work correctly when all four wheels are equipped with identical tires. Different tire sizes can lead to a reduction in engine power.
– You may hear noises when the systems described are working.

Switching on/off

ESC turns on automatically when you start the engine.



Fig. 163 Version A: lower center console, OFF button



Fig. 164 Version B: upper center console, OFF button

The ESC is designed to function in levels. Depending on the level that is selected, the stabilization function of the ESC is limited or switched off. The amount of stabilization control will differ depending on the level.

The following situations are exceptions where it may be useful to switch on sport mode to allow the wheels to spin:

– Rocking the vehicle to free it when it is stuck
– Driving in deep snow or on loose ground
– Driving with snow chains

	Sport mode on	ESC/ASR off	Sport mode off or ESC/ASR on
Behavior	The ESC and ASR stabilization functions are limited ⇨ ⚠.	The stabilization function is not available ⇨ ⚠. ESC and ASR are switched off.	The full stabilization function of the ESC and ASR is available again.
Operation	Press the OFF button briefly.	Press and hold the OFF button longer than 3 seconds.	Press the OFF button again.
Indicator lights	OFF turns on.	OFF and **ESC OFF** turn on.	OFF turns off or OFF and **ESC OFF** turn off.
Driver messages	**Stabilization control (ESC): Sport. Warning! Restricted stability**	**Stabilization control (ESC): off. Warning! Restricted stability**	**Stabilization control (ESC): On**

It is only possible to turn off the ASR up to 30 mph (50 km/h) for vehicles with front wheel drive. At about 45 mph (70 km/h) it automatically turns on again. It is possible to turn off the ASR at any speed for vehicles with all wheel drive.

WARNING

You should only switch sport mode on or switch ESC/ASR off if your driving abilities and road conditions permit.

- The stabilization function is limited when sport mode is switched on. The driving wheels could spin and the vehicle could swerve, especially on slick or slippery road surfaces.
- There is no vehicle stabilization when ESC/ASR are switched off.

Tips

ESC/ASR cannot be switched off or sport mode cannot be switched on when cruise control or adaptive cruise control* is switched on.

Notice about data recorded by the Event Data Recorder and vehicle control modules

Event Data Recorder

This vehicle is equipped with an Event Data Recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less. The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating;
- Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were buckled/fastened;
- How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal; and,
- How fast the vehicle was traveling.

These data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur. NOTE: EDR data are recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data are recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data (e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location) are recorded. However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

Some state laws restrict the retrieval or downloading of data stored by EDRs installed in a vehicle for the express purpose of retrieving data after an accident or crash event without the owner's consent.

Audi will not access the EDR and/or similar data or give it to others -

- unless the vehicle owner (or lessee if the vehicle has been leased) agrees; or
- upon the official request by the police; or
- upon the order of a court of law or a government agency; or
- for the defense of a lawsuit through the judicial discovery process.
- Audi may also use the data for research about vehicle operation and safety performance or provide the data to a third party for research purposes without identifying the specific vehicle or information about the identity of its owner or lessee and only after the recorded vehicle data has been accessed.

Vehicle control modules

Your vehicle is also equipped with a number of electronic control modules for various vehicle systems, such as engine management, emission control, airbags, and safety belts. ▶

8F0012721BB

These electronic control modules record data during normal vehicle operation that may be needed by trained technicians for diagnostic and repair purposes. The recording capability of these modules is limited to data (no sound is recorded). Only a small amount of data is actually recorded over a very limited period of time, or stored when a system fault is detected by a control module. Some of the data stored may relate to vehicle speed, direction, or braking, as well as restraint system use and performance in the event of a crash. Stored data can also only be read and downloaded with special equipment that is directly connected to the vehicle.

Tips

Your vehicle may be equipped with Audi connect. Your use of certain Audi connect features requires wireless services that are provided by a third party wireless telecommunications provider. For details regarding how information obtained through Audi connect is collected, processed, transmitted, used, and shared, please see your contract with the wireless telecommunications provider and the "About Audi connect" tab in your vehicle's MMI: MENU button > **Audi connect** > **About Audi connect**.

Braking

What affects braking efficiency?

New brake pads

During the first 250 miles (400 km), new brake pads do not possess their full braking effect, they have to be "broken in" first ⇨ ⚠. You can compensate for this slightly reduced braking power by pushing harder on the brake pedal. Avoid heavy braking loads during the break-in period.

Operating conditions and driving habits

The brakes on today's automobiles are still subject to wear, depending largely on operating conditions and driving habits ⇨ ⚠. On vehicles that are either driven mostly in stop-and-go city traffic or are driven hard, the brake pads should be checked by your authorized Audi dealer more often than specified in the **Warranty & Maintenance booklet**. Failure to have your brake pads inspected can result in reduced brake performance.

On steep slopes, you should use the braking effect of the engine. This way, you prevent unnecessary wear on the brake system. If you must use your brakes, do not hold the brakes down continuously. Pump the brakes at intervals.

Operating noise

Noises may occur when braking depending on the speed, braking force and outside conditions such as temperature and humidity.

Effect of water and road salt

In certain situations, for example after driving through water, in heavy rain, after overnight condensation or after washing your car, the braking effect can be reduced by moisture or ice on the brake rotors and brake pads. The brakes must be dried first with a few careful brake applications.

At higher speeds and with the windshield wipers turned on, the brake pads press against the brake rotors for a short amount of time. This occurs at regular intervals without the driver noticing and provides for better brake response time under wet conditions.

The effectiveness of the brakes can be reduced when the vehicle is driven on a salt-covered road and the brakes are not used. Likewise, you clean off accumulated salt coating from brake discs and pads with a few cautious applications of the brake ⇨ ⚠.

Corrosion

There may be a tendency for dirt to build up on the brake pads and corrosion to form on the discs if the car is not driven regularly or only for short trips with little use of the brakes.

If the brakes are not used frequently, or if corrosion has formed on the discs, it is advisable to clean off the pads and discs by braking firmly a few times from a moderately high speed ⇨ ⚠. ▶

Faults in the brake system

If you should notice a *sudden* increase in brake pedal travel, then one of the two brake circuits may have failed ⇨ ⚠.

Low brake fluid level

Malfunctions can occur in the brake system if the brake fluid level is too low. The brake fluid level is monitored electronically.

Brake booster

The brake booster increases the pressure that you generate with the brake pedal. It works only when the engine is running .⇨ ⚠

Brake lining wear status

Brake lining wear may be checked by visual inspection of the condition of the brake pads through the openings in the wheel. If necessary, the wheel may be removed for this inspection ⇨ *page 228, Replacing wheels*.

⚠ WARNING

– New brake pads don't have the best stopping power and must be "broken-in" during the initial 250 miles (400 kilometers). You can compensate for this by pressing the brake pedal more firmly. This also applies later when new pads are installed.
– You should perform braking maneuvers for the purpose of cleaning the brake system only if road conditions permit. Other road users must not be put at risk - you may cause an accident!
– Before descending a steep grade, reduce speed and shift transmission into a lower gear or lower driving range. Do not ride the brakes or hold the pedal down too long or too often. This could cause the brakes to get hot and diminish braking efficiency.
– Do not "ride the brakes" by resting your foot on the pedal when you do not intend to brake. This may cause the brakes to overheat, premature wear and increased stopping distance.
– Under certain climatic and operating conditions such as passing through water, driving in heavy rain or after washing the vehicle, the effectiveness of the brakes can be reduced. In winter, ice can accumulate on the brake pads, linings, discs and drums. Carefully apply brakes for a test. Brakes will dry and ice coatings will be cleaned off after a few careful brake applications.
– Driving for an extended period of time on salt-covered roads without using your brakes can also affect braking efficiency. Clean off accumulated salt coating from brake discs and pads with a few careful brake applications.
– If you damage the front spoiler, or if you install a different spoiler, be sure the air flow to the front brakes is not obstructed. Otherwise the brake system could overheat reducing the effectiveness of the entire brake system.
– Failure of one brake circuit will impair the braking capability resulting in an increased stopping distance. Avoid driving the vehicle and have it towed to the nearest authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop.
– Never let the vehicle roll to a stop with the engine shut off.
– If the brake booster is not working, the brake pedal must be pressed considerably harder to make up for the lack of booster assistance.

Electro-mechanical power assist, dynamic steering

The electro-mechanical power assist helps the driver when steering.

Power steering adapts *electronically* based on the vehicle speed.

Indicator lights and messages

Steering defective! Do not drive vehicle!

If this indicator light turns on and stays on and this message appears, the power steering may have failed. ▶

Do **not** continue driving. See your authorized Audi dealer or a qualified repair facility for assistance.

Dynamic steering: System fault! You can continue driving

If the indicator light turns on and the message appears, the steering may be more difficult to move or more sensitive than usual. The steering wheel may also be at an angle when driving straight.

Drive slowly to your authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop to have the malfunction corrected.

Dynamic steering: initializing

If this driver message appears and the indicator light is flashing on the instrument panel, dynamic steering* is being reinitialized. After starting the engine, the steering wheel will move slightly. Re-initialization might be necessary if the steering wheel was moved hard to the left and right while the vehicle was not moving. The display goes out as soon as initialization is complete.

WARNING

Have the dynamic steering* system malfunction repaired as soon as possible by an authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop - risk of accident!

Tips

- If the or indicator light only stays on for a short time, you may continue driving.
- The dynamic steering* stability systems are not available in the event of a system malfunction.
- For additional information on dynamic steering*, refer to ⇨ *page 101*.

Driving with your quattro

Applies to: vehicles with all-wheel drive

With all-wheel drive, all four wheels are driven.

General information

With all-wheel drive, power is distributed to all four wheels. This happens automatically depending on your driving style and the road conditions at the time. See also ⇨ *page 167*.

A center differential distributes the driving power variably to the front and rear axle. It works together with selective wheel torque control, which activates when driving through curves ⇨ *page 167*. With the sport differential*, power distribution to the rear wheels is variable and can be adjusted with drive select ⇨ *page 101*.

The all-wheel drive concept is designed for high engine power. Your vehicle is exceptionally powerful and has excellent driving characteristics both under normal driving conditions and on snow and ice. Always read and follow safety precautions ⇨ ⚠.

Winter tires

When driving in the winter, your vehicle with all-wheel drive has an advantage, even with regular tires. In winter road conditions it may be advisable to mount winter tires (or all-season tires) for improved driveability and braking: these tires must be mounted on **all four wheels**. See also ⇨ *page 222, Winter tires*.

Tire chains

Where tire chains are mandatory on certain roads, this normally also applies to vehicles with all-wheel drive ⇨ *page 222, Snow chains*.

Replacing wheels/tires

Vehicles with all-wheel drive must always have tires of the same size. Also avoid tires with different tread depths. For details see page ⇨ *page 214, New tires or wheels*. ▶

Off-Road driving?

Your Audi does not have enough ground clearance to be used as an off-road vehicle. It is therefore best to avoid rough tracks and uneven terrain as much as possible. Also refer to ⇨ *page 175*.

WARNING

Always adjust your driving to road and traffic conditions. Do not let the extra safety afforded by all-wheel drive tempt you into taking extra risks.

– Although the all-wheel drive is very effective, always remember that braking capacity is limited by tire traction. You should therefore not drive at excessive speeds on icy or slippery road surfaces.
– On wet road surfaces, be careful not to drive too fast because the front wheels could begin to slide on top of the water (aquaplaning). If this should occur, you will have no warning from a sudden increase in engine speed as with a front-wheel drive vehicle. Always drive at speeds which are suited to the road conditions – risk of crash.

Energy management

Starting ability is optimized

Energy management controls the distribution of electrical energy and thus optimizes the availability of electrical energy for starting the engine.

If a vehicle with a conventional energy system is not driven for a long period of time, the battery is discharged by idling current consumers (e.g. immobilizer). In certain circumstances it can result in there being insufficient energy available to start the engine.

Intelligent energy management in your vehicle handles the distribution of electrical energy. Starting ability is markedly improved and the life of the battery is extended.

Basically, energy management consists of **battery diagnosis**, **idling current management** and **dynamic energy management**.

Battery diagnosis

Battery diagnosis continuously determines the state of the battery. Sensors determine battery voltage, battery current and battery temperature. This determines the current state of charge and the power of the battery.

Idling current management

Idling current management reduces energy consumption while the vehicle is standing. With the ignition switched off, it controls the energy supply to the various electrical components. Data from battery diagnosis is considered.

Depending on the battery's state of charge, individual consumers are gradually turned off to prevent excessive discharge of the battery and thus maintain starting capability.

Dynamic energy management

While the vehicle is being driven, dynamic energy management distributes the energy generated according to the needs of the individual components. It regulates consumption, so that more electrical energy is not being used than is being generated and ensures an optimal state of charge for the battery.

Tips

– But even energy management cannot negate the limits of physics. Consider that the power and life of a battery are limited.
– If starting ability is threatened, the indicator light appears ⇨ *page 14*.

What you should know

The highest priority is given to maintaining starting capability.

The battery is severely taxed in short-distance driving, in city traffic and during the cold time of year. Abundant electrical energy is required, but only a little is generated. It is also critical if the engine is not running and electrical components are turned on. In this instance energy is being consumed but none is being generated. ▶

It is in precisely these situations that you will notice energy management actively regulating the distribution of energy.

Vehicle stands for an extended period

If you do not drive your vehicle over a period of several days or weeks, electrical components are gradually cut back or switched off. This reduces energy consumption and maintains starting capability over a longer period. Some of the convenience functions may not operate, such as the interior lights or the power seat adjustment. The convenience functions will be available again when you switch on the ignition and start the engine.

With the engine turned off

If you listen to the radio, for example, with the engine turned off or use other MMI functions, the battery is being discharged.

If starting capability is jeopardized due to energy consumption, a message appears in the MMI display. The message indicates that the system will be switched off automatically in a moment. If you wish to continue using the functions, you have to start the engine.

With the engine running

Although electrical energy is generated when the vehicle is being driven, the battery can become discharged. This happens mostly when little energy is being generated and a great deal consumed and the battery's state of charge is not optimal.

To bring the energy balance back into equilibrium, consumers which require especially large amounts of energy are temporarily cut back or switched off. Heating systems in particular require a great deal of energy. If you notice, for example, that the heated seats* or the heated rear window are not heating, they have been temporarily cut back or switched off. These systems will be available again as soon as the energy balance has been restored.

You will also notice that engine idle speed has been increased slightly. This is normal and not a cause for concern. By increasing engine idle speed the additional energy required is generated and the battery is charged.

Driving and the environment

Breaking in

New engine

The engine needs to be run-in during the first 1,000 miles (1,500 km).

For the first 600 miles (1,000 kilometers):

- ▸ Do not use full throttle.
- ▸ Do not drive at engine speeds that are more than 2/3 of the maximum permitted RPM.

From 600 to 1,000 miles (1,000 to 1,500 kilometers):

- ▸ Speeds can *gradually* be increased to the maximum permissible road or engine speed.

During and after break-in period

- ▸ Do not rev the engine up to high speeds when it is cold. This applies whether the transmission is in N (Neutral) or in gear.

After the break-in period

- ▸ Do not exceed maximum engine speed under any circumstances.
- ▸ Upshift into the next higher gear *before* reaching the red area at the end of the tachometer scale ⇨ *page 8*.

During the first few hours of driving, the engine's internal friction is higher than later when all the moving parts have been broken in. How well this break-in process is done depends to a considerable extent on the way the vehicle is driven during the first 1,000 miles (1,500 kilometers).

Note

Extremely high engine speeds are automatically reduced. However, these rpm limits are programmed for an engine well run-in, not a new engine.

For the sake of the environment

Do not drive with unnecessarily high engine speeds - upshifting early saves fuel, reduces noise and protects the environment.

New tires

If your vehicle is running on new tires, drive very carefully for the first 350 miles (500 kilometers) after fitting.

WARNING

New tires tend to be slippery and must also be "broken-in". Be sure to remember this during the first 350 miles (500 kilometers). Brake gently. Avoid following closely behind other vehicles or other situations that might require sudden, hard braking.

Avoid damaging the vehicle

When you are driving on poor roads, or over curbs, steep ramps, etc., make certain that low-lying parts such as spoilers and exhaust system parts do not bottom out and get damaged.

This is especially true for vehicles with low-slung chassis (sports chassis)* and fully loaded vehicles.

Driving through water on roads

Note the following to avoid vehicle damage when driving through water, for example on flooded roads:

– The water must not be any higher than the bottom of the vehicle body.
– Do not drive faster than walking speed.

WARNING

After driving through water, mud, slush, etc., the brakes may be slow to take effect because of wet brake rotors and pads. Dry the brakes first by braking carefully to restore the full braking effect.

Note

Vehicle components such as the engine, transmission, suspension or electrical system can be severely damaged by driving through water.

Tips

– Check the depth of the water before driving through it.
– Do not stop the vehicle, drive in reverse or switch the engine off when driving through water.
– Keep in mind that oncoming vehicles may create waves that raise the water level and make it too deep for your vehicle to drive through safely.
– Avoid driving through salt water because it can cause corrosion.

Catalytic converter

It is very important that your emission control system (catalytic converter) is functioning properly to ensure that your vehicle is running in an environmentally sound manner.

- ▸ Always use lead-free gasoline ⇨ *page 188, Fuel supply*.
- ▸ Never run the tank down all the way to empty.
- ▸ Never put too much motor oil in your engine ⇨ *page 197*, *Adding engine oil* .
- ▸ Never try to push- or tow-start your vehicle.

The catalytic converter is an efficient “clean-up” device built into the exhaust system of the vehicle. The catalytic converter burns many of the pollutants in the exhaust gas before they are released into the atmosphere.

The exclusive use of unleaded fuel is critically important for the life of the catalytic converter and proper functioning of the engine.

WARNING

– The temperature of the exhaust system is high, both when driving and after stopping the engine.
– Never touch the exhaust tail pipes once they have become hot. This could result in burns.
– Do not park or operate the vehicle in areas where the hot exhaust system may come in contact with dry grass, brush, fuel spill or other material which can cause a fire.
– Do not apply additional undercoating or rustproofing on or near the exhaust manifold, exhaust pipes, catalytic converter or heat shields. During driving, the substance used for undercoating could overheat and cause a fire.

Note

– Be aware that just one tank filling with **leaded** fuel will already seriously degrade the performance of the catalytic converter.
– Do not exceed the correct engine oil level ⇨ *page 197*.
– Do not drive until the fuel tank becomes completely empty. The engine could misfire. Unburned fuel could also get into the exhaust system and this could cause the catalytic converter to overheat.
– Do not turn off the ignition while the vehicle is moving.
– Do not continue to operate your vehicle under these conditions, as otherwise fuel can reach the catalytic converter. This could result in overheating of the converter, requiring its replacement.
– To assure efficient operation of the Emission Control System:
  – Have your vehicle maintained properly and in accordance with the service recommendations in your Warranty & Maintenance booklet.
  – Lack of proper maintenance as well as improper use of the vehicle will impair the function of the emission control system and could lead to damage.

For the sake of the environment

Even when the Emission Control System is operating properly, the exhaust gas can have a sulfur-like exhaust gas smell under some operating states. This depends on the sulfur content of the fuel being used. Using a different brand of fuel may help, or filling the tank with lead-free super grade gasoline.

Shutting down vehicle

If you would like your vehicle to remain inoperative for a longer period of time, contact an Audi or other specialized dealer. They can advise you ▸

on necessary precautions e.g. corrosion prevention, maintenance and storage. Pay attention to additional information concerning the battery. Refer to ⇨ *page 203*.

Economical and environmentally-friendly driving

General

Your personal style of driving will determine the economy of your vehicle, as well as exhaust and noise levels.

Fuel economy, environmental impact, and wear on your engine, brakes and tires largely depend on three factors:

– your personal driving style
– operating conditions
– technical limitations

If you anticipate what you need to do next and drive economically, you can easily cut your fuel consumption by 10-15 percent. This section will give you some tips on how you can help the environment and your pocketbook.

Tips

The consumption estimates as published by ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION AGENCY (EPA) and Transport Canada may not correspond to your actual consumption on the road, which will vary depending upon vehicle load and speed, road and weather conditions, trip length, etc.

Drive smoothly and keep a lookout ahead

Vehicles use the most fuel when they are accelerating.

▸ Avoid unnecessary accelerating and braking.

Vehicles use the most fuel when they are accelerating. If you anticipate what is going to happen next, you will need to brake less and, thus, accelerate less. Let the vehicle coast whenever possible - for example when you see that the next traffic light is red.

Avoid full throttle

Driving at moderate speeds saves fuel and improves your mileage.

▸ Try and keep well below your car's maximum speed.

Accelerating gently reduces fuel consumption, engine wear, and does not disturb the environment.

Fuel consumption, exhaust emissions and engine noise increase disproportionately at high speeds. If you drive at approximately three quarters of top speed, fuel consumption will be reduced by one half. Never drive faster than the posted speed limit and weather conditions permit.

Reducing unnecessary idling

Even when your car is just idling it burns up fuel.

▸ Shut the engine off when you are not driving the vehicle.
▸ Do not warm up the vehicle by letting the engine run at idle.

It makes sense to shut off the engine in traffic jams, when waiting for trains to pass at railroad crossings, or at traffic lights that have long waits on red. Turning the engine off for just 30-40 seconds saves more fuel than is burned starting the engine again.

It takes a long time for the engine to warm up fully when it is running at idle. However, wear and noxious emissions are especially high when the engine is warming up. So you should drive away as soon as you start the engine and avoid running at high rpms while the engine is still warming up.

Note

Do not leave engine idling unattended after starting. If warning lights should come on to indicate improper operation, they would go unheeded. Extended idling also produces heat, which could result in overheating or other damage to the vehicle or other property.

Regular maintenance

A badly tuned engine unnecessarily wastes a lot of fuel.

▶ Have your vehicle serviced at regular intervals.

By having your vehicle regularly serviced by an authorized Audi dealer helps to ensure that it runs properly and economically. The condition of your vehicle not only affects its safety and ability to hold its value, it also affects **fuel consumption**.

Check your oil each time you fill your tank.

The amount of oil used is related to engine load and speed.

It is normal for the oil consumption of a new engine to reach its lowest value after a certain mileage has been driven.

You must drive your vehicle about 3,000 miles (5,000 kilometers) before you can properly assess oil consumption.

This also applies to fuel consumption and engine output.

Note

– Have your vehicle maintained properly and in accordance with the service recommendations in your Warranty & Maintenance booklet. Lack of proper maintenance as well as improper use of the vehicle will impair the function of the emission control system and could lead to damage.
– Do not alter or remove any component of the Emission Control System unless approved by the manufacturer.
– Do not alter or remove any device, such as heat shields, switches, ignition wires, valves, which are designed to protect your vehicle's Emission Control System and other important vehicle components.

Fewer short trips

Fuel consumption will always be relatively high on short trips.

▶ Try to avoid driving short distances with a cold engine.

The engine and catalytic converter have to reach their optimal **operating temperature** to reduce fuel consumption and noxious emissions effectively.

Just after starting, a cold engine in a mid-size car only achieves a fuel economy of 6-8 miles per gallon (30-40 l/100 km). After about a half a mile, fuel economy climbs to 12 mpg (20 l/100 km). After about *2.5* miles (4 km), the engine is at its proper operating temperature and fuel economy has reached a normal level. So you can see that you should avoid short trips whenever possible.

The **outside temperature** is also critical in this regard. Your car consumes more fuel in the winter than in the summer.

Trailer towing

Driving with a trailer

General information

Your Audi was designed primarily for passenger transportation.

If you plan to tow a trailer, please remember that the additional load will affect durability, economy and performance.

Trailer towing not only places more stress on the vehicle, it also calls for more concentration from the driver.

For this reason, always follow the operating and driving instructions provided and use common sense.

Technical requirements

Trailer hitch

Use a weight-carrying hitch conforming to the gross trailer weight. The hitch must be suitable for your vehicle and trailer and must be mounted securely on the vehicle's chassis at a *technically sound* location. Use only a trailer hitch with a removable ball mount. Always check with the trailer hitch manufacturer to make sure that you are using the correct hitch.

Do not use a bumper hitch.

The hitch must be installed in such a way that it does not interfere with the impact-absorbing bumper system. No modifications should be made to the vehicle exhaust and brake systems. From time to time, check that all hitch mounting bolts remain securely fastened.

When you are not towing a trailer, remove the trailer hitch ball mount. This prevents the hitch from causing damage should your vehicle be struck from behind ⇨ ⚠.

Trailer brakes

If your trailer is equipped with a braking system, check to be sure that it conforms to all regulations.

The trailer hydraulic brake system must not be directly connected to the vehicle's hydraulic brake system ⇨ ⚠.

Safety chains

Always use safety chains between your vehicle and the trailer.

Trailer lights

Trailer lights must meet all regulations. Be sure to check with your authorized Audi dealer for correct wiring, switches, and relays.

Mirrors

If you are unable to see the traffic behind you using the regular outside mirrors, then you *must* install extended mirrors. It is important that you *always* have clear vision to the rear.

⚠ WARNING

- If a trailer has electrical brakes please note that these brakes are not activated by the factory-fitted control unit - risk of accident!
- After removing the trailer hitch, do not store it in your vehicle. In case of sudden braking, the hitch could fly forward and injure you or your passengers.

Operating instructions

Maximum trailer weight

A trailer for your vehicle is limited to a typical class 1 or class 2 trailer.

Trailer load distribution

Be sure the load in the trailer is held securely in place to prevent it from shifting forward, backward or sideways.

Never allow a passenger to ride in a trailer ⇨ ⚠ *in Driving instructions on page 180.*

Engine cooling system

Towing a trailer makes the engine work harder. It is important that the cooling system's performance is up to the additional load. Make sure that the cooling system has enough fluid. ▶

8F0012721BB

Tire pressure

When towing a trailer, inflate the tires of your vehicle to the tire pressure listed under "Full load" on the label ⇨ *page 217*. Inflate trailer tires to trailer and tire manufacturers' specifications.

Lights

The headlight settings should be checked with the trailer attached before driving off. Check to make sure both vehicle and trailer lights are working properly.

Safety chains

Be sure trailer safety chains are properly connected from the trailer to the hitch on the vehicle. Leave enough slack in the chains to permit turning corners. When you install safety chains, make sure they will not drag on the road when you are driving.

The chains should cross under the trailer tongue to prevent it from dropping in case of separation from the hitch.

Driving instructions

Driving with a trailer always requires extra care and consideration.

Weight distribution

Towing a loaded trailer with an empty car results in a highly unstable distribution of weight. If this cannot be avoided, drive at very low speeds only to avoid the risk of losing steering control.

A "balanced" rig is easier to operate and control. This means that the tow vehicle should be loaded to the extent possible and permissible, while keeping the trailer as light as possible under the circumstances. Whenever possible, transfer some cargo to the luggage compartment of the tow vehicle while observing tongue load requirements and vehicle loading considerations.

Speed

The higher the speed, the more difficult it becomes for the driver to control the rig. Do not drive at the maximum permissible speed. Reduce your speed even more if load, weather or wind conditions are unfavorable - particularly when going downhill.

Reduce vehicle speed **immediately** if the trailer shows the slightest sign of swaying. **Do not try to stop the swaying by accelerating.**

Observe speed limits. In some areas, speeds for vehicles towing trailers are lower than for regular vehicles.

Always apply brakes early. When driving downhill, shift into a lower gear to use the engine braking effect to slow the vehicle. Use of the brakes alone can cause them to overheat and fail.

Coolant temperature

The coolant temperature gauge ⇨ *page 8* must be observed carefully. If the needle moves close to the upper end of the scale, reduce speed immediately and/or turn off the air conditioner.

If the coolant temperature warning light in the instrument cluster starts flashing , pull off the road, stop and let the engine *idle* for about two minutes to prevent heat build-up.

WARNING

Anyone not properly restrained in a moving vehicle is at a much greater risk in an accident. Never let anyone ride in your car who is not properly wearing the restraints provided by Audi.

Trailer towing information

Important to know

Your vehicle handles differently when towing a trailer because of the additional weight and different weight distribution. Safety, performance and economy will greatly depend on how carefully you load your trailer and operate your rig.

Before you actually tow your trailer, practice turning, stopping and backing up in an area away from traffic. Keep practicing until you have become completely familiar with the way your vehicle-trailer combination behaves and responds. ▶

Backing up is difficult and requires practice. Backing up with a trailer generally requires steering action opposite to that when backing up your vehicle without a trailer.

Maintain a greater distance between your vehicle and the one in front of you. You will need more room to stop. To compensate for the trailer, you will need a larger than normal turning radius.

When passing, remember that you cannot accelerate as fast as you normally would because of the added load. Make sure you have enough room to pass. After passing, allow plenty of room for your trailer before changing lanes again.

Avoid jerky starts, sharp turns or rapid lane changes.

Tips

- Do not tow a trailer during the break-in period of your vehicle.
- If you tow a trailer, your Audi may require more frequent maintenance due to the extra load ⇨ *page 246*.

Tips

If you move the selector lever of the automatic transmission to P before applying the parking brake and before blocking the wheels, you may have to use more force later to move the lever out of the P position.

Parking on a slope

Do not park on a slope with a trailer. If it cannot be avoided, do so only after doing the following:

When parking:

- ▸ Apply the foot brake.
- ▸ Have someone place chocks under both the vehicle and the trailer wheels.
- ▸ With chocks in place, slowly release the brakes until the wheel chocks absorb the load.
- ▸ Turn the wheels towards the curb.
- ▸ Apply the parking brake.
- ▸ Move the selector lever to P.

When restarting after parking:

- ▸ Apply the foot brake.
- ▸ Start the engine.
- ▸ Move the selector lever to D/S.
- ▸ Release the parking brake and slowly pull out and away from the wheel chocks.
- ▸ Stop and have someone retrieve the wheel chocks.

8F0012721BB

Care and cleaning

General information

Regular, proper care helps to maintain your vehicle's value. It can also be a requirement when submitting warranty claims for corrosion damage and paint defects on the body.

The necessary care products can be obtained from an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. Read and follow the instructions for use on the packaging.

WARNING

- Using cleaning and care products incorrectly can be dangerous to your health.
- Always store cleaning and care products out of reach of children to reduce the risk of poisoning.

For the sake of the environment

- Preferably purchase environmentally-friendly cleaning products.
- Do not dispose of leftover cleaning and care products with household trash.

Car washes

The longer that deposits remain on the vehicle, the more the surface may be damaged. High temperatures such as those caused by sunlight increase the damaging effect.

Before washing, rinse off heavy deposits with plenty of water.

Stubborn deposits such as bird droppings or tree sap are best removed with plenty of water and a microfiber cloth.

Also, wash the underside of your vehicle once road salt stops being used for the season.

Pressure washers

When washing your vehicle with a pressure washer, always follow the operating instructions provided with the pressure washer. This is especially important in regard to the pressure and spraying distance. Do not direct the stream of water directly onto seals for the side windows, doors, luggage compartment lid or hood or onto the tires, rubber hoses, insulating material, the power top, sensors* or camera lenses*. Keep a distance of at least 16 inches (40 cm).

Do not remove snow and ice with a pressure washer.

Never use cone nozzles or high pressure nozzles.

The water temperature must not be above 140 °F (60 °C).

Automatic car washes

Spray off the vehicle before washing.

Make sure that the windows and power top are closed and the windshield wipers are off. Follow instructions from the car wash operator, especially if there are accessories attached to your vehicle.

If possible, use car washes that do not have brushes.

Washing by hand

Clean the vehicle starting from the top and working down using a soft sponge or cleaning brush. Use solvent-free cleaning products.

Washing vehicles with matte finish paint by hand

To avoid damaging the paint when washing, first remove dust and large particles from your vehicle. Insects, grease spots and fingerprints are best removed with a special cleaner for matte finish paint.

Apply the product using a microfiber cloth. To avoid damaging the paint surface, do not use too much pressure.

Rinse the vehicle thoroughly with water. Then clean using a neutral shampoo and a soft microfiber cloth.

Rinse the vehicle thoroughly again and let it air dry. Remove any water residue using a chamois.

WARNING

- Only wash the vehicle when the ignition is off and follow the instructions from the car ▶

wash operator to reduce the risk of accidents.
– To reduce the risk of cuts, protect yourself from sharp metal components when washing the underbody or the inside of the wheel housings.
– After washing the vehicle, the braking effect may be delayed due to moisture on the brake rotors or ice in the winter. This increases the risk of an accident. The brakes must be dried first with a few careful brake applications.

Note

– If you wash the vehicle in an automatic car wash, you must fold the exterior mirrors in to reduce the risk of damage. Power folding exterior mirrors* must only be folded in and out using the power folding function.
– To reduce the risk of paint damage, do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight.
– To reduce the risk of damage, do not wash the power top with a pressure washer.
– To reduce the risk of damage to the surface, do not use insect removing sponges, kitchen sponges or similar items.
– Matte finish painted vehicle components:
  – To reduce the risk of damage to the surface, do not use polishing agents or hard wax.
  – Never use protective wax. It can destroy the matte finish effect.
  – Do not place any stickers or magnetic signs on vehicle parts painted with matte finish paint. The paint could be damaged when the stickers or magnets are removed.

For the sake of the environment

Only wash the vehicle in facilities specially designed for that purpose. This will reduce the risk of dirty water contaminated with oil from entering the sewer system.

Cleaning and care information

When cleaning and caring for individual vehicle components, refer to the following tables. The information contained there is simply recommendations. For questions or for components that are not listed, consult an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. Also follow the information found in ⇨ ⚠.

Exterior cleaning

Component	Situation	Solution
Windshield wiper blades	Deposits	⇨ *page 54, Cleaning windshield wiper blades*
Headlights/ Tail lights	Deposits	Soft sponge with a mild soap solution[a)]
Sensors/camera lenses	Deposits	Sensors: soft cloth with solvent-free cleaning solution Camera lenses: soft cloth with alcohol-free cleaning solution
	Snow/ice	Hand brush/solvent-free de-icing spray
Wheels	Road salt	Water
	Brake dust	Acid-free special cleaning solution
Exhaust tail pipes	Road salt	Water, cleaning solution suitable for stainless steel, if necessary

8F0012721BB

Component	Situation	Solution
Power top	Deposits	Clean water, power top cleaning product, if necessary. Clean with the grain of the fabric using a soft brush and allow to air dry.
Wind deflector	Deposits	Water, mild soap solution, if necessary[a)]
Decorative parts/ Trim	Deposits	Mild soap solution [a)], a cleaning solution suitable for stainless steel, if necessary
Carbon parts	Deposits	clean the same way as painted parts ⇨ *page 182, Car washes*
Paint	Paint damage	Refer to the paint number on the vehicle data label, repair with touch up paint ⇨ *page 243*
	Spilled fuel	Rinse with water immediately
	Surface rust	Rust remover, then protect with hard wax; for questions, consult an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
	Corrosion	Have it removed by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
	Water no longer beads on the surface of clean paint	Protect with hard wax (at least twice per year)
	No shine even though paint has been protected/paint looks poor	Treat with suitable polish; then apply paint protectant if the polish that was used does not contain any protectant
	Deposits such as insects, bird droppings, tree sap and road salt	Dampen with water immediately and remove with a microfiber cloth
	Grease-based contaminants such as cosmetics or sunblock	Remove immediately with a mild soap solution [a)] and a soft cloth

a) Mild soap solution: maximum two tablespoons of neutral soap in 1 quart (1 liter) of water

Interior cleaning

Component	Situation	Solution
Windows	Deposits	Glass cleaner, then wipe dry
Decorative parts/ trim	Deposits	Mild soap solution[a)]
Plastic parts	Deposits	Damp cloth
	Heavier deposits	Mild soap solution [a)], detergent-free plastic cleaning solution, if necessary
Displays	Deposits	Soft cloth with LCD cleaner
Controls	Deposits	Soft brush, then a soft cloth with a mild soap solution[a)]
Safety belts	Deposits	Mild soap solution [a)], allow to dry before letting them retract

Component	Situation	Solution
Textiles artificial leather, Alcantara	Deposits adhering to the surface	Vacuum cleaner
	Water-based deposits such as coffee, tea, blood, etc.	Absorbent cloth and mild soap solution[a)]
	Oil-based deposits such as oil, make-up, etc.	Apply a mild soap solution [a)], blot away the dissolved oil or dye, treat afterward with water, if necessary
	Special deposits such as ink, nail polish, latex paint, shoe polish, etc.	Special stain remover, blot with absorbent material, treat afterward with mild soap solution, if necessary [a)]
Natural leather	Fresh stains	Wool cloth with a mild soap solution[a)]
	Water-based deposits such as coffee, tea, blood, etc.	Fresh stains: absorbent cloth dried stains: stain remover suitable for leather
	Oil-based deposits such as oil, make-up, etc.	Fresh stains: absorbent cloth and stain remover suitable for leather dried stains: oil cleaning spray
	Special deposits such as ink, nail polish, latex paint, shoe polish, etc.	Spot remover suitable for leather
	Care	Regularly apply conditioning cream that protects from light and penetrates into the material. Use specially-colored conditioning cream, if necessary.
Carbon parts	Deposits	clean the same way as plastic parts

a) Mild soap solution: maximum two tablespoons of neutral soap in 1 quart (1 liter) of water

WARNING

The windshield may not be treated with water-repelling windshield coating agents. Unfavorable conditions such as wetness, darkness, or low sun can result in increased glare. Wiper blade chatter is also possible.

Note

– **Headlights/tail lights**
  – Never clean headlights or tail lights with a dry cloth or sponge.
  – Do not use any cleaning product that contains alcohol, because they could cause cracks to form.
– **Wheels**
  – Never use any paint polish or other abrasive materials.
  – Damage to the protective layer on the rims such as stone chips or scratches must be repaired immediately.
– **Sensors/camera lenses**
  – Never use warm or hot water to remove snow or ice from the camera lens. This could cause the lens to crack.
  – Never use abrasive cleaning materials or alcohol to clean the camera lens. This could cause scratches and cracks.
– **Power top**
  – Remove bird droppings immediately. ▶

  - Never use gasoline, spot remover, benzene, paint thinner or other solvents to remove.
- **Door windows**
  - Remove snow and ice on windows and exterior mirrors with a plastic scraper. To avoid scratches, move the scraper only in one direction and not back and forth.
  - Never remove snow or ice from door windows and mirrors using warm or hot water because this could cause cracks to form.
  - To avoid damage to the rear window defogger, do not apply any stickers on the heating wires on the inside of the window.
- **Decorative parts/trim**
  - Never use chrome care or cleaning products.
- **Paint**
  - To reduce the risk of scratches, the vehicle must be free of dirt and dust before polishing or waxing.
  - To prevent paint damage, do not polish or wax the vehicle in direct sunlight.
  - To reduce the risk of paint damage, do not polish away rust spots.
  - Remove cosmetics and sunscreen immediately - these could damage the paint.
- **Displays**
  - To avoid scratches, do not use dry cleaning methods on displays.
- **Controls**
  - Make sure that no fluids enter the controls, because this could cause damage.
- **Safety belts**
  - Do not remove the safety belts to clean them.
  - Never clean safety belts or their components chemically or with corrosive fluids or solvents and never allow sharp objects to come into contact with the safety belts. This could cause damage to the belt webbing.
  - If there is damage to the webbing, the connections, the retractors or the buckles, have them replaced by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
- **Textiles/artificial leather/Alcantara**
  - Never treat artificial leather/Alcantara with leather care products, solvents, floor polish, shoe polish, spot remove or similar products.
  - Have a specialist remove stubborn stains to prevent damage.
  - Never use steam cleaners, brushes, hard sponges, etc. when cleaning.
  - Do not turn on the seat heating* to dry the seat.
  - Objects with sharp edges, such as zippers or rivets on clothing or belts, can cause damage to the surface.
  - Open hook and loop fasteners, for example on clothing, can damage seat covers. Make sure hook and loop fasteners are closed.
- **Natural leather**
  - Never treat leather with solvents, floor polish, shoe polish, spot remover or similar products.
  - Objects with sharp edges, such as zippers or rivets on clothing or belts, can cause damage to the surface.
  - Never use steam cleaners, brushes, hard sponges, etc. when cleaning.
  - Do not turn on the seat heating* to dry the seat.
  - To help prevent the leather from fading, do not leave the vehicle in direct sunlight for long periods of time. If leaving the vehicle parked for long periods of time, you should cover the leather to protect it from direct sunlight.

Tips

- Insects are easier to remove from paint that has been freshly waxed.
- Regular waxing can prevent rust spots from forming.

Placing your vehicle out of service

If you would like to take your vehicle out of service for a longer period of time, contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. They will advise you of important measures, ▶

such as corrosion protection, maintenance and storage procedures. Also follow the information about the battery ⇨ *page 203*.

8F0012721BB

Fuel and Refueling

Fuel

Fuel supply

Using the right fuel helps keep the environment clean and prevents engine damage.

Fuel recommendation

The fuel recommended for your vehicle is **unleaded premium** grade gasoline. Audi recommends using TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline with a minimum octane rating of 91 AKI (95 RON). For more information on TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline, please go to the official website (www.toptiergas.com).

The recommended gasoline octane rating for your engine can also be found on a label located on the inside of the fuel filler flap. This rating may be specified as AKI or RON.

Your vehicle may also be operated using unleaded regular gasoline with a minimum octane rating of 87 AKI/91 RON. However, using 87 AKI/91 RON octane fuel will slightly reduce engine performance.

Use unleaded gasoline only. Unleaded gasoline is available throughout the USA, Canada, and in most European countries. We recommend that you do not take your vehicle to areas or countries where unleaded gasoline may not be available.

For more information on refueling your vehicle, see ⇨ *page 190*.

Octane rating

Octane rating indicates a gasoline's ability to resist engine damaging "knock" caused by premature ignition and detonation. Therefore, buying the correct grade of gasoline is very important to help prevent possible engine damage and a loss of engine performance.

Gasoline most commonly used in the United States and Canada has the following octane ratings that can usually be found on the filler pump:

– Premium Grade: 91 - 96 AKI

– Regular Grade: 87 - 90 AKI

Explanation of the abbreviations:

AKI = **A**nti **K**nock **I**ndex = (R+M)/2 = (RON+MON)/2

RON = **R**esearch **O**ctane **N**umber

MON = **M**otor **O**ctane **N**umber.

Note

– Do not use any fuel with octane ratings lower than 87 AKI or 91 RON otherwise expensive engine damage will occur.
– Do **not** use leaded gasoline. The use of leaded gasoline will severely damage your vehicle's catalytic converter and its ability to control exhaust emissions.

Blended gasoline

Use of gasoline containing alcohol or MTBE (methyl tertiary butyl ether)

You may use unleaded gasoline blended with alcohol or MTBE (commonly referred to as oxygenates) if the blended mixture meets the following criteria:

Blend of gasoline methanol (wood alcohol or methyl alcohol)

– Anti-knock index must be 87 AKI or higher.
– Blend must contain no more than 3% methanol.
– Blend must contain more than 2% co-solvents.

Blend of gasoline and ethanol (grain alcohol or ethyl alcohol)

– Anti-knock index must be 87 AKI or higher.
– Blend must not contain more than 15% ethanol.
– Vehicles with flexible fuel engine: blend must not contain more than 85% ethanol.

Blend of gasoline and MTBE

– Anti-knock index must be 87 AKI or higher.
– Blend must contain not more than 15% MTBE.

Seasonally adjusted gasoline

Many gasoline grades are blended to perform especially well for winter or summer driving. During seasonal change-over, we suggest that you ▶

fill up at busy gas stations where the seasonal adjustment is more likely to be made in time.

Note

– Fuels containing a high percentage of ethanol such as E50 and E85 may only be used in vehicles with flexible fuel engines. Using high ethanol fuel in vehicles not equipped with flexible fuel engines can cause severe engine damage.
– Methanol fuels which do not meet these requirements may cause corrosion and damage to plastic and rubber components in the fuel system.
– Do not use fuels that fail to meet the specified criteria in this chapter.
– If you are unable to determine whether or not a particular fuel blend meets the specifications, ask your service station or its fuel supplier.
– Do not use fuel for which the contents cannot be identified.
– Fuel system damage and performance problems resulting from the use of fuels different from those specified are not the responsibility of Audi and are not covered under the New Vehicle or the Emission Control System Warranties.
– If you experience a loss of fuel economy or driveability and performance problems due to the use of one of these fuel blends, we recommend that you switch to unblended fuel.

Ethanol fuel (Bio-ethanol)

Applies to: vehicles with flexible fuel engine

You can recognize vehicles with a flexible fuel engine by looking at the label on the inside of the fuel filler flap.

Vehicles with flexible fuel engines may be operated with bio-ethanol fuels such as E85 (85% ethanol and 15% gasoline) or with unleaded gasoline (91 AKI/ROZ 95). The vehicle may also be operated with a mixture of these fuels.

Your fuel consumption will increase when using bio-ethanol fuels due to the lower amount of energy contained per unit volume in ethanol.

Warming up the flexible fuel engine in low temperatures

Due to the chemical composition of bio-ethanol, a certain amount of fuel ends up in the engine oil when driving short distances in very low temperatures. This fuel evaporates again when the engine is warmed up.

Please warm up engine.

If the driver message appears in the instrument cluster display, drive with a warm engine to reduce the oil level.

Note

– Never fill with methanol or with a higher percentage of bio-ethanol than 85% (E85). A higher percentage of bio-ethanol in the fuel can cause damage to the engine or to the fuel system.
– If you use only E85, it is recommended to fill the fuel tank completely with unleaded premium grade gasoline every 5,000 miles.
– If you experience starting, rough idle or hesitation driveability problems, fill the fuel tank completely with unleaded premium grade gasoline and drive it normally until the gasoline is used. See your authorized Audi dealer if the problem persists.
– Inform your authorized Audi dealer that you are operating or have operated the vehicle with E85.
– Read and follow the information and tips about gasoline ⇨ *page 188*.

Tips

It may take longer to start the engine when the outside temperature is very cold. If possible, use winterized fuel if temperatures are below freezing.

Gasoline additives

A major concern among many auto manufacturers is carbon deposit build-up caused by the type of gasoline you use.

Although gasoline grades differ from one manufacturer to another, they have certain things in common. All gasoline grades contain substances that can cause deposits to collect on vital engine parts, such as fuel injectors and intake valves. Although most gasoline brands include additives to keep engine and fuel systems clean, they are not equally effective.

Audi recommends using TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline. For more information on TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline, please go to the official website (www.toptiergas.com).

After an extended period of using inadequate fuels, built-up carbon deposits can rob your engine of peak performance.

Note

– Damage or malfunction due to poor fuel quality is not covered by the Audi New Vehicle Limited Warranty.
– Do not add aftermarket fuel additive products to your fuel tank.

Refueling

Fuel filler neck

The fuel filler neck is located on the right rear side panel behind the fuel filler flap.

If the power locking system should fail, you can still open the flap manually - for detailed instructions see ⇨ *page 192*.

You can find the fuel tank capacity of your vehicle in ⇨ *page 244*.

The label on the inside of the fuel filler flap tells you the correct fuel for your vehicle. For more information about fuel specifications, see ⇨ *page 188*.

Your vehicle fuel tank has an on-board refuelling vapor recovery system. This feature helps to prevent fuel vapors from escaping from the tank and polluting the environment while you refuel your vehicle. In order to fill the tank properly while protecting the environment, please follow this refueling procedure carefully.

WARNING

Under normal operating conditions, never carry additional fuel containers in your car. Gas canisters and other containers used to transport fuel can be dangerous. Such containers, full or empty, may leak and could cause a fire in a collision. If you must transport fuel to use for your lawn mower, snow blower, etc., be very careful and always observe local and state laws regarding the use, transportation and storage of such fuel containers. Make certain the container meets industry standards (ANSI/ASTM F852 - 86).

Note

Never drive your vehicle until the fuel tank is completely empty. The irregular supply of fuel can cause misfiring. Gasoline could enter the exhaust system and damage the catalytic converter.

Refuelling



Fig. 165 Right rear vehicle side: Opening the fuel filler flap



Fig. 166 Fuel filler flap with attached fuel cap ▶

When activating the central locking, the fuel filler flap is automatically unlocked or locked. Refuel the vehicle with the ignition turned *off*.

Taking the fuel cap off

- ▸ Turn off the ignition.
- ▸ Press the left side of the fuel filler flap to open it ⇨ *fig. 165* -arrow-.
- ▸ Unscrew fuel cap counter-clockwise and hang it on the fuel filler flap ⇨ *fig. 166*.

Refuelling procedure

- ▸ Insert the fuel nozzle from the gasoline pump into the fuel filler neck as far as it will go.
- ▸ Select a medium refuelling rate so that the nozzle switches off automatically when the tank is full.

Putting the fuel cap back on

- ▸ After filling your tank, twist the fuel cap clockwise as far as it will go.
- ▸ Close the fuel filler flap.

To avoid fuel spilling or evaporating from the fuel tank always close fuel cap properly and completely.

WARNING

Improper refueling or handling of fuel can cause fire, explosion and severe burns.

- – Fuel is highly flammable and can cause severe burns and other injuries.
- – Failure to shut the engine off while refueling and/or to insert the pump nozzle fully into the fuel filler neck could cause fuel to spray out of filler neck or to overflow. Fuel spray and overflowing fuel can cause a fire.
- – Never use a cellular telephone while refueling. The electromagnetic radiation can cause sparks that can ignite fuel vapors and cause a fire.
- – Never get back into your vehicle while refueling. If in exceptional circumstances you must get back in your vehicle while refueling, make certain that you close the door and touch metal to discharge static electricity before touching the filler nozzle again. Static electricity can cause sparks that can ignite fuel vapors released during refueling.
- – Never smoke or have an open flame anywhere in or near your vehicle when refueling or filling a portable fuel container.
- – For your safety, we strongly recommend that you do not travel with a portable fuel container in your vehicle. The container, full or empty may leak and could cause a fire, especially in a crash.
- – If, under exceptional circumstances, you must transport a portable fuel container, please observe the following:
  - – Never fill a portable fuel container while it is anywhere in or on the vehicle (for example, in the luggage compartment, or on the trunk). Static electricity can build up while filling and can ignite fuel vapors causing a fire.
  - – Always place a portable fuel container on the ground before filling.
  - – Always keep the filler nozzle completely inside the portable container before and during filling.
  - – If filling a portable container made of metal, the filler nozzle must always be in contact with the container. This will help prevent static electricity from discharging and cause a fire.
  - – Never spill fuel inside the vehicle or luggage compartment. Fuel vapors are highly flammable.
  - – Always observe local and state/provincial laws regarding the use, storage and transportation of fuel containers.
  - – Make certain the fuel container meets industry standards (ANSI / ASTM F852–86).

Note

If any fuel has spilled onto the car, it should be removed immediately to prevent damage to the paint.

For the sake of the environment

As soon as the correctly operated nozzle switches off automatically for the first time, ▸

the tank is full. Do not try to add more fuel because fuel may spill out. In addition, the expansion space in the fuel tank will be filled - causing the fuel to overflow when it becomes warm and pollute the environment.

Tips

- Running your engine while refuelling may cause vapors to escape or even cause fuel to spill out of the tank. This would then shut off the fuel nozzle before the tank is full.
- Do not refuel your vehicle with the ignition turned on. The fuel gauge may otherwise not indicate the correct fuel level after refuelling.
- The fuel filler flap of your vehicle is not locked when you lock the vehicle from the inside.

Unlocking the fuel filler flap by hand

You can open the fuel filler flap by hand if the power locking system should fail.

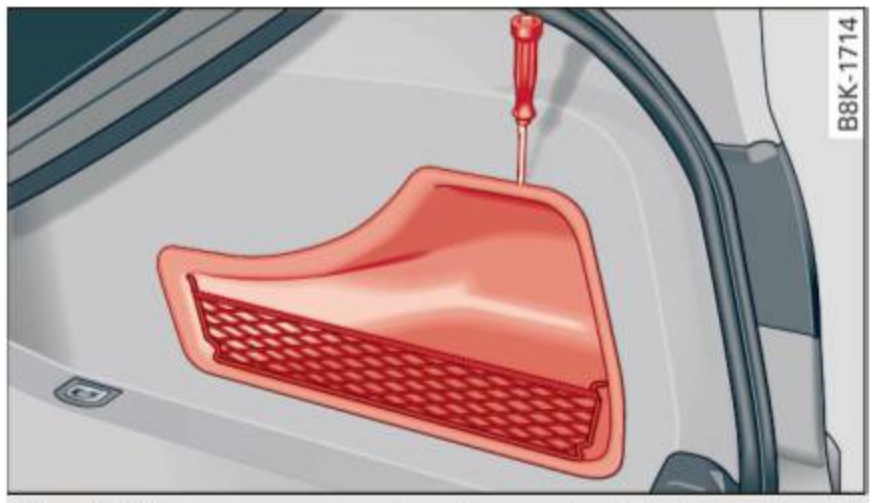


Fig. 167 Luggage compartment: opening the side trim

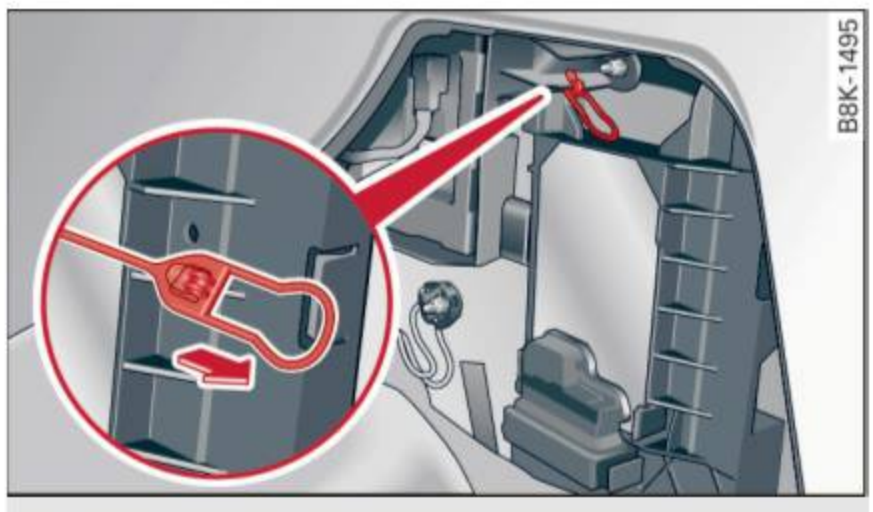


Fig. 168 Luggage compartment: Emergency opening of fuel filler flap

The emergency opening mechanism is located behind the right side trim panel in the luggage compartment.

Opening the side trim

- Insert a tool such as a screwdriver ⇨ *page 227* or the emergency key into the right side of the upper gap ⇨ *fig. 167*.
- Pry upward to release the trim.

Fuel filler door emergency release

- Loosen the strap from its bracket and pull on it ⇨ *fig. 168*. You can now open the fuel filler flap as usual ⇨ *page 190*.

Checking and Filling

Hood

Releasing and opening the engine hood

The engine hood is released from inside the vehicle.

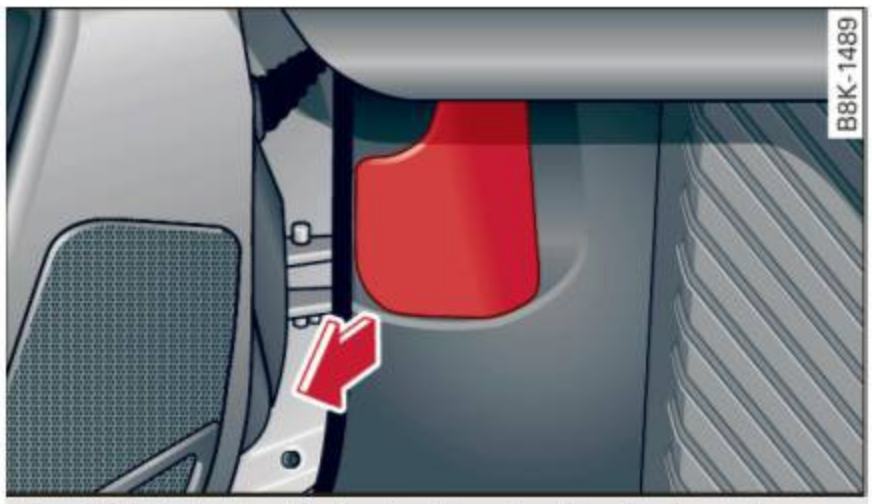


Fig. 169 Driver's side footwell: engine hood release lever



Fig. 170 Release lever under the engine hood

Before opening the engine hood, make sure that the windshield wipers are flat against the windshield. Otherwise, they could damage the paint on the hood.

- ▸ With the driver's door open, pull the lever under the instrument panel in the direction of the arrow ⇨ *fig. 169*.
- ▸ Raise the hood slightly ⇨ ⚠
- ▸ Press the rocker switch under the hood upward ⇨ *fig. 170*. This releases the catch.
- ▸ Open the hood.

⚠ WARNING

Hot engine coolant can burn you.

– To reduce the risk of being burned, never open the hood if you see or hear steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment. Wait until no steam or coolant can be seen or heard before carefully opening the hood.

Closing the engine hood

- ▸ Pull the hood down until the pressure from the struts is reduced.
- ▸ Let the hood *drop down* and latch in place. *Do not try to push it shut*; it may fail to engage ⇨ ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

A hood that is not completely latched could fly up and block your view while driving.

– When you close the engine hood, check it to make sure the safety catch has properly engaged. The hood should be flush with the surrounding vehicle body parts.

– If you notice while driving that the hood is not secured properly, stop at once and close it.

Working in the engine compartment

Be especially careful whenever you work in the engine compartment.

Whenever you must perform any work in the engine compartment, for example checking and filling different fluids, there is a risk of injury, burns and accidents. To prevent personal injury always observe the following WARNINGS. The engine compartment of any vehicle is a hazardous area ⇨ ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

To help avoid injury, before you check anything under the hood:

– Turn off the engine.

– Remove the ignition key.

– Apply the parking brake.

– Move selector lever of automatic transmission to “P” (Park).

– Always let the engine cool down. Hot components will burn skin on contact.

– To reduce the risk of being burned, never open the hood if you see or hear steam or coolant escaping from the engine ▸

compartment. Wait until no steam or coolant can be seen or heard before carefully opening the hood.
- Keep children away from the engine compartment.
- Never spill fluids on hot engine components. They can cause a fire.
- Never touch the radiator fan. The auxiliary electric fan is temperature controlled and can switch on suddenly.
- Never open the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is still warm. The coolant system is pressurized and hot coolant could spray out.
- Protect your face, hands and arm from steam or hot engine coolant by placing a thick rag over the cap when you open the coolant reservoir.
- Do not remove the engine cover under any circumstances. This increases the risk of burns.
- If work on the fuel system or the electrical system is necessary:
  - Always disconnect the battery.
  - Never smoke or work near heaters or open flames. Fluids in the engine compartment could start a fire.
  - Keep an approved fire extinguisher immediately available.
- To avoid electrical shock and personal injury while the engine is running or being started, never touch:
  - Ignition cables
  - Other components of the high voltage electronic ignition system.
- If you must perform a check or repair with the engine running:
  - First, fully apply the parking brake, move selector lever of automatic transmission to “P” (Park).
  - Always use extreme caution to prevent clothing, jewelry, or long hair from getting caught in the radiator fan, V-belts or other moving parts, or from contacting hot parts. Tie back hair before starting, and do not wear clothing that will hang or droop into the engine.
- Minimize exposure to emission and chemical hazards ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

California Proposition 65 Warning:
- Engine exhaust, some of its constituents, and certain vehicle components contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects and reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm.
- Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harms. Wash hands after handling.

Note

When adding fluids, always make sure that they are poured into the proper container or filler opening, otherwise serious damage to vehicle systems will occur.

For the sake of the environment

To detect leaks in time, inspect the vehicle floor pan from underneath regularly. If you see spots from oil or other vehicle fluids, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized Audi dealer.

Engine compartment

Engine compartment

These are the most important items that you can check.

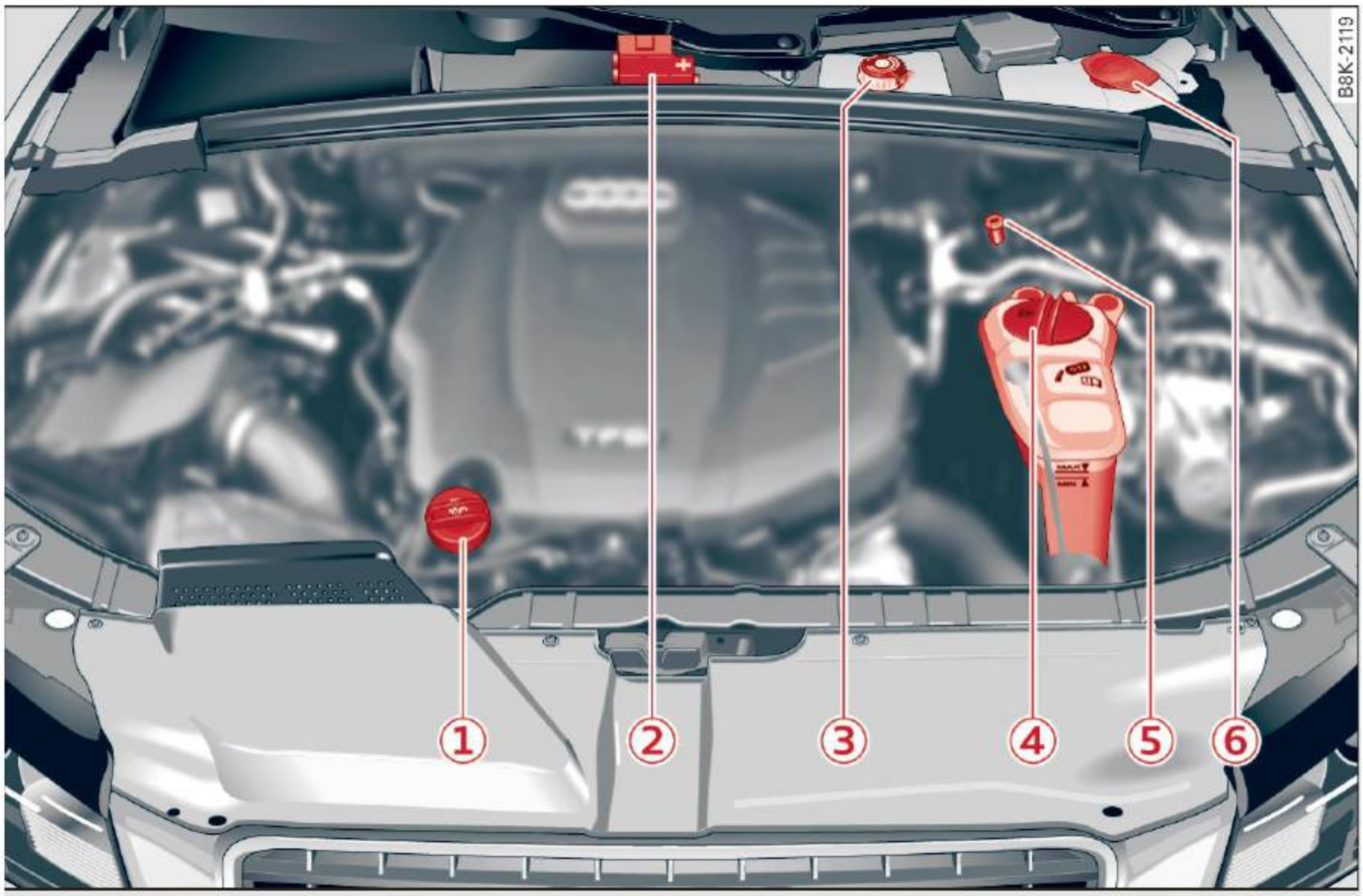


Fig. 171 Typical layout for containers and engine oil filler cap

① Engine oil filler cap (🛢) 197
② Jump start point (+) under a cover 205, 239
③ Brake fluid reservoir (🛞) 202
④ Coolant expansion tank (🌡) 200
⑤ Jump start point (-) with hex head screw 205, 239
⑥ Windshield/headlight* washer container (🚿) 206

The position of the engine oil filling hole ⇨ *fig. 171* (item ③) can differ depending on the engine design.

⚠ WARNING

Before you check anything in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇨ ⚠ *in Working in the engine compartment on page 193*.

Engine oil

Engine oil specifications

The engine oil used must conform to exact specifications.

The service interval display in the instrument cluster of your vehicle will inform you when it is time for an oil change. We recommend that you have your oil changed by an authorized Audi Service Advisor.

If you have to top off the oil between oil changes, use the Audi oil quality standard specified in the table. ▶

	Audi oil quality standard
Gasoline engine	VW 502 00 or VW 504 00
Audi recommends Castrol EDGE Professional	
Audi recommends LongLife high performance engine oil from Audi Genuine Parts	

Using the proper engine oil is important for the functionality and service life of the engine. Your engine was factory-filled with a high-quality oil which can usually be used throughout the entire year.

Note

Your Limited New Vehicle Warranty does not cover damage or malfunctions due to failure to follow recommended maintenance and use requirements as set forth in the Audi Owner's Manual and Warranty & Maintenance booklet.

– Use only a high quality engine oil that expressly complies with the Audi oil quality standard specified for your vehicle's engine. Using any other oil can cause serious engine damage.
– Do not mix any lubricants or other additives into the engine oil. Doing so can cause engine damage.

Tips

If you need to add oil and there is none available that meets the Audi oil quality standard your engine requires, you may add a total of no more than 0.5 quart/liter of a high-quality "synthetic"oil that meets the following specifications.

– Vehicles with gasoline engine: ACEA A3 or API SM with a viscosity grade of SAE 0W-30, SAE 5W-30 or SAE 5W-40.
– For more information about engine oil that has been approved for your vehicle, please contact either your authorized Audi dealer or Audi Customer Relations at 1 (800) 822-2834 or visit our web site at www.audiusa.com or www.audicanada.ca.

Engine oil consumption

The engine in your vehicle depends on an adequate amount of oil to lubricate and cool all of its moving parts.

In order to provide effective lubrication and cooling of internal engine components, all internal combustion engines consume a certain amount of oil. Oil consumption varies from engine to engine and may change significantly over the life of the engine. Typically, engines with a specified break-in period (see ⇨ *page 175*) consume more oil during the break-in period than they consume after oil consumption has stabilized.

Under normal conditions, the rate of oil consumption depends on the quality and viscosity of the oil, the RPM (revolutions per minute) at which the engine is operated, the ambient temperature and road conditions. Further factors are the amount of oil dilution from water condensation or fuel residue and the oxidation level of the oil. As any engine is subject to wear as mileage builds up, the oil consumption may increase over time until replacement of worn components may become necessary.

With all these variables coming into play, no standard rate of oil consumption can be established or specified. There is no alternative to regular and frequent checking of the oil level, see **Note**.

If the yellow engine oil level warning symbol in the instrument cluster lights up, you should check the oil level as soon as possible ⇨ *page 197*. Top off the oil at your earliest convenience ⇨ *page 197*.

WARNING

Before you check anything in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇨ ⚠ *in Working in the engine compartment on page 193*.

Note

Driving with an insufficient oil level is likely to cause severe damage to the engine. ▶

Tips

– **The oil pressure warning display is not an indicator of the oil level. Do not rely on it. Instead, check the oil level in your engine at regular intervals, preferably each time you refuel, and always before going on a long trip.**
– If you have the impression your engine consumes excessive amounts of oil, we recommend that you consult an authorized Audi dealer to have the cause of your concern properly diagnosed. Keep in mind that the accurate measurement of oil consumption requires great care and may take some time. An authorized Audi dealer has instructions about how to measure oil consumption accurately.

Checking the engine oil level



Fig. 172 MMI Display: Oil level indicator

Read oil level

- Park your vehicle so that it is horizontally level.
- Shut the engine off when it is at operating temperature.
- Switch only the ignition back on.
- Wait approx. two minutes.
- Select: Function button CAR > **Oil level**. Or
- Select: Function button CAR > **Car systems*** control button > **Servicing & checks** > **Oil level**.
- Read the oil level in the MMI* Display ⇨ *fig. 172*. Add engine oil if the bar of the oil level indicator is near "min" ⇨ *page 197*

Depending on the way the vehicle is driven and the operating conditions, oil consumption can be up to a 1/2 quart per 600 miles (0.5 liter per 1,000 km). Consumption may be higher within the first 3,000 miles (5,000 km).

Tips

The oil level indicator in the MMI* Display is only an information display. If the oil level is too low, a minimum oil warning appears in the instrument cluster. Add oil ⇨ *page 197*. If the hood has been opened, the current oil level is shown in the instrument cluster the next time the ignition is switched on.

Adding engine oil



Fig. 173 Engine compartment: Cover on the oil filler neck

- Before you check anything in the engine compartment, **always read and heed all WARNINGS** ⇨ ⚠ *in Working in the engine compartment on page 193*.
- Shut the engine off.
- Unscrew the cap to the engine oil filling hole ⇨ *fig. 173*, ⇨ *page 195, fig. 171*.
- Carefully top off with 0.5 quarts (0.5 liters) of the appropriate oil ⇨ *page 195*.
- Check the oil level again after two minutes ⇨ *page 197, Checking the engine oil level.*
- Top off the oil again, if necessary.
- Screw the cap back on the filling hole.

WARNING

– While topping off, the oil must not come in contact with hot engine parts - fire hazard!
– The oil filler cap must be properly secured to prevent oil from being sprayed on the hot engine and exhaust system when the engine is running - fire hazard!

– If your skin has come in contact with the engine oil, you must subsequently cleanse it thoroughly.

Note

– Check the oil level using the radio or MMI*. If the message **Please reduce oil level** appears, contact your authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop to have excess oil extracted if necessary.
– **Audi does not recommend the use of oil additives. They may damage the engine and adversely affect your New Vehicle Warranty.**

For the sake of the environment

– Under no circumstances can the oil come in contact with the sewage network or the soil.
– Observe and follow legal regulations when disposing of empty oil containers.

Changing the engine oil

We recommend that have your oil changed by an authorized Audi dealer or a qualified service station.

Before you check anything in the engine compartment, **always read and heed all WARNINGS** ⇨ ⚠ *in Working in the engine compartment on page 193*.

The engine oil must be changed according to the intervals specified in your Warranty & Maintenance booklet. This is very important because the lubricating properties of oil diminish gradually during normal vehicle use.

Under some circumstances the engine oil should be changed more frequently. Change oil more often if you drive mostly short distances, operate the vehicle in dusty areas or under predominantly stop-and-go traffic conditions, or have your vehicle where temperatures remain below freezing for extended periods.

Detergent additives in the oil will make fresh oil look dark after the engine has been running for a short time. This is normal and is not a reason to change the oil more often than recommended.

Because of the problem of proper disposal, along with the special tools and necessary expertise required, we strongly recommend that you have your oil changed by an authorized **Audi dealer** or a qualified service station.

If you choose to change your oil yourself, please note the following important information:

WARNING

To reduce the risk of personal injury if you must change the engine oil in your vehicle yourself:
– Wear eye protection.
– To reduce the risk of burns from hot engine oil, let the engine cool down to the touch.
– When removing the oil drain plug with your fingers, stay as far away as possible. Always keep your forearm parallel to the ground to help prevent hot oil from running down your arm.
– Drain the oil into a container designed for this purpose, one large enough to hold at least the total amount of oil in your engine.
– Engine oil is poisonous. Keep it well out of the reach of children.
– Continuous contact with used engine oil is harmful to your skin. Always protect your skin by washing oil off thoroughly with soap and water.

Note

Never mix oil additives with your engine oil. These additives can damage your engine and adversely affect your Audi Limited New Vehicle Warranty.

For the sake of the environment

– Before changing your oil, first make sure you know where you can properly dispose of the used oil.
– Always dispose of used engine oil properly. Do not dump it on garden soil, wooded areas, into open streams or down sewage drains.
– Recycle used engine oil by taking it to a used engine oil collection facility in your area, or contact a service station.

Cooling system

Coolant

The engine coolant performs two functions: it keeps the engine from overheating and it protects the engine from freezing in the winter.

The cooling system is sealed and generally requires little attention.

The cooling system has been filled at the factory with a permanent coolant which does not need to be changed. The coolant consists of a mixture of specially conditioned water and the manufacturer's glycol-basedcoolant additive G13 antifreeze with anticorrosion additives (50% for USA models; 60% for Canadian models). This mixture both assures the necessary frost protection and protects metal components in the engine's cooling system from corrosion and scaling. It also raises the boiling point of the coolant.

Do not reduce the concentration of the coolant in the summer by adding plain water. **The proportion of coolant additive must be at least 50% but not more than 60%** to maintain antifreeze protection and cooling efficiency. If the coolant frost protection is too low, the coolant could freeze and damage the vehicle heating and engine cooling system.

For year-round driving, antifreeze is added at the factory for temperatures down to:

– - 31 °F (- 35 °C) USA
– - 40 °F (- 40 °C) Canada.

If you must add coolant, use a mixture of water and coolant additive. Mixing the coolant additive with distilled water is recommended.

WARNING

Before you check anything in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇨ ⚠ *in Working in the engine compartment on page 193*.

Note

– Before winter sets in, have the coolant checked to see if the coolant additive in your vehicle is sufficient to meet the climate conditions. This is especially important if you live in a region where the winter is extremely cold. If necessary, increase the proportion of coolant additive to 60%.
– When adding coolant additive to your cooling system, remember:
  – We recommend using only coolant additive G12++ or G13 for your vehicle. This coolant additive is available at authorized Audi dealers. Other types of antifreeze can significantly reduce corrosion protection. The resulting corrosion can cause a loss of coolant and serious engine damage.
– Do not add any type of radiator leak sealant to your vehicle's engine coolant. Adding radiator repair fluid may adversely affect the function and performance of your cooling system and could result in damage not covered by your New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

Checking the engine coolant level

The engine coolant level can be checked with a quick glance.



Fig. 174 Engine compartment: Cover on the coolant expansion tank

▸ Before you check anything in the engine compartment, **always read and heed all WARNINGS** ⇨ ⚠ *in Working in the engine compartment on page 193*.
▸ Park your vehicle on a level surface.
▸ Turn off the ignition.
▸ Read the engine coolant level from the coolant expansion tank ⇨ *fig. 174*, ⇨ *page 195, fig. 171*. With a cold engine, the coolant level should be between the "MIN" and "MAX" markings. When the engine is warm, the level may be slightly above the "MAX" marking. ▶

The location of the coolant expansion tank can be seen in the engine compartment illustration ⇨ *page 195*.

To obtain an accurate reading, the engine must be switched off.

The expansion tank in your vehicle is equipped with an electric coolant level sensor.

When the coolant level is too low, the warning light in the Auto-Check System ⇨ *page 15* will blink until you add coolant and the level has been restored to normal. Even though there is an electric coolant level sensor, we still recommend you check the coolant level from time to time.

Coolant loss

Coolant loss may indicate a **leak** in the cooling system. In the event of coolant loss, the cooling system should be inspected immediately by your authorized Audi dealer. It is not enough merely to add coolant.

In a **sealed** system, losses can occur only if the boiling point of the coolant is exceeded as a result of overheating.

WARNING

The cooling system is under pressure and can get very hot. Reduce the risk of scalding from hot coolant by following these steps.

– Turn off the engine and allow it to cool down.
– Protect your face, hands and arms from escaping fluid and steam by covering the cap with a large, thick rag.
– Turn the cap slowly and very carefully in a counter-clockwise direction while applying light, downward pressure on the top of the cap.
– To avoid being burned, do not spill antifreeze or coolant on the exhaust system or hot engine parts. Under certain conditions, the ethylene glycol in engine coolant can catch fire.

Note

Do not add any type of radiator leak sealant to your vehicle's engine coolant. Adding radiator repair fluid may adversely affect the function and performance of your cooling system and could result in damage not covered by your New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

Adding coolant

Be very careful when adding engine coolant.

Before you check anything in the engine compartment, **always read and heed all WARNINGS** ⇨ ⚠ *in Working in the engine compartment on page 193*.

Requirement: There must be a residual amount of coolant in the expansion tank ⇨ (!).

- ▸ Turn off the engine.
- ▸ Let the engine cool down.
- ▸ Place a thick rag over the coolant expansion tank ⇨ *page 199, fig. 174* and **carefully** turn the cap counter-clockwise ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Add coolant mixed in the correct ratio ⇨ *page 199, Coolant* up to the MAX marking.
- ▸ Make sure that the fluid level remains stable. Add more coolant if necessary.
- ▸ Twist the cap on again *tightly*.

Replacement engine coolant must conform to exact specifications ⇨ *page 199, Coolant*.

We recommend using only coolant additive G12++, G13 or in an emergency G12+. Do **not** use a different additive. In an emergency use plain water until you can get the correct additive and can restore the correct ratio. This should be done as soon as possible.

If you have lost a considerable amount of coolant, then you should add cold antifreeze and cold water only when the engine is cold.

Always use *new* engine coolant when refilling.

Do not fill coolant above the “MAX” mark. Excess coolant will be forced out through the pressure relief valve in the cap when the engine becomes hot. ▶

WARNING

– The cooling system is under pressure and can get very hot. Reduce the risk of scalding from hot coolant by following these steps.
  – Turn off the engine and allow it to cool down.
  – Protect your face, hands and arms from escaping fluid and steam by covering the cap with a large, thick rag.
  – Turn the cap slowly and very carefully in a counter-clockwise direction while applying light, downward pressure on the top of the cap.
  – To avoid being burned, do not spill anti-freeze or coolant on the exhaust system or hot engine parts. Under certain conditions, the ethylene glycol in engine coolant can catch fire.
– Antifreeze is poisonous. Always store anti-freeze in its original container and well out of the reach of children.
– If you drain the coolant, it must be caught and safely stored in a proper container clearly marked “poison”.

Note

– Do not add coolant if the expansion tank is empty. Air could enter the cooling system and damage the engine. If this is the case, do not continue driving. Seek professional assistance.
– Coolant pollutes the environment and could cause an engine fire. Excess coolant will be forced out through the pressure relief valve in the cap when the engine becomes hot.
– If, in an emergency, only water can be added, the correct ratio between water and antifreeze ⇨ *page 199* must be restored as soon as possible.

For the sake of the environment

Drained coolant should not be reused. Always dispose of used coolant while observing all environmental regulations.

Radiator fan

The radiator fan switches on automatically by itself.

The radiator fan is driven by the engine via the V-belt. The viscous clutch regulates the speed of the fan according to the temperature of the coolant.

An auxiliary electric radiator fan* switches on and off depending on coolant temperature and other vehicle operating conditions.

After you switch the engine off, the auxiliary fan can continue running for up to 10 minutes - even with the ignition off. It can even switch on again later by itself ⇨ ⚠, if

– the temperature of the engine coolant rises due to the heat build-up from the engine in the engine compartment, or
– the engine compartment heats up because the vehicle is parked in intense sunlight.

WARNING

– To reduce the risk of personal injury never touch the radiator fan.
– The auxiliary electric fan is temperature controlled and can switch on suddenly even when the engine is not running.
– The auxiliary radiator fan switches on automatically when the engine coolant reaches a certain temperature and will continue to run until the coolant temperature drops.

Brake fluid

Checking brake fluid level

The brake fluid level can be checked with a quick glance.



Fig. 175 Engine compartment: Cover on the brake fluid reservoir

Before you check anything in the engine compartment, **always read and heed all WARNINGS** ⇨ ⚠ *in Working in the engine compartment on page 193*.

- Read the brake fluid level from the brake fluid reservoir ⇨ *fig. 175*, ⇨ *page 195, fig. 171*. The brake fluid level must be between the "MIN" and "MAX" markings.

The brake fluid reservoir is located at the rear partition of the engine compartment on the left side ⇨ *page 195*.

The fluid level may drop *slightly* after some time due to the automatic adjustment of the brake pads. This is not cause for alarm.

If the brake fluid level falls *considerably* below the "MIN" mark, the brake warning/indicator light (U.S. models: BRAKE, Canadian models: ⓘ) will come on ⇨ *page 13*. Do not continue to operate the vehicle. The complete brake system should be thoroughly checked by an authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop and the cause corrected. If the brake fluid level is too low, the brake warning/indicator light will illuminate. Contact an authorized Audi dealer **immediately**.

Tips

The brake fluid reservoir is located underneath the cover.

Changing brake fluid

Have the brake fluid changed by an experienced technician.

Brake fluid absorbs moisture from the air. If the water content in the brake fluid is too high, corrosion in the brake system may result after a period of time. The boiling point of the brake fluid will also decrease considerably and decrease braking performance.

Therefore, the brake fluid must be changed **every two years**. Always use new brake fluid which conforms to Federal Motor Vehicle Standard "FMVSS 116 DOT 4".

The brake fluid reservoir can be difficult to reach, therefore, we recommend that you have the brake fluid changed by your authorized **Audi dealer**. Your dealer has the correct tools, the right brake fluid and the know-how to do this for you.

WARNING

- Brake fluid is poisonous. It must be stored only in the closed original container out of the reach of children!
- Brake failure can result from old or inappropriate brake fluid. Observe these precautions:
  - Use only brake fluid that meets SAE specification J 1703 and conforms to Federal Motor Vehicle Standard 116. Always check with your authorized Audi dealer to make sure you are using the correct brake fluid. The correct type of brake fluid is also indicated on the brake fluid reservoir.
  - The brake fluid must be new. Heavy use of the brakes can cause a vapor lock if the brake fluid is left in the system too long. This can seriously affect the efficiency of the brakes as well as your safety. This could result in an accident.

Note

Brake fluid will damage the paint of your vehicle. ▶

For the sake of the environment

Because of the problem of proper disposal of brake fluid as well as the special tools required and the necessary expertise, we recommend that you have the brake fluid changed by your authorized Audi dealer.

Battery

General information

Under **normal** operating conditions, the battery in your Audi does not need any maintenance. With *high* outside temperatures or long daily drives we recommend that you have the electrolyte level checked by an authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop. The electrolyte level should also be checked each time the battery is charged ⇨ *page 205*.

Have the battery checked when you take your vehicle in for service. You are well advised to replace a battery that is older than 5 years.

Disconnecting the battery terminals

Some vehicle functions (power window regulators, for example) are lost if the battery terminals are disconnected. These functions have to be relearned after the battery terminals are connected again. To prevent this, the battery should only be disconnected from the vehicle electrical system when absolutely necessary for repairs.

Vehicles not driven for long periods

If you do not drive your vehicle over a period of several days or weeks, electrical components are gradually cut back or switched off. This reduces energy consumption and maintains starting capability over a longer period ⇨ *page 173*.

Some of the convenience functions may not operate, such as the interior lights or the power seat adjustment. The convenience functions will be available again when you turn on the ignition and start the engine.

Winter operation

During the winter months, battery capacity tends to decrease as temperatures drop. This is because more power is also consumed while starting, and the headlights, rear window defogger, etc., are used more often.

Avoid unnecessary power consumption, particularly in city traffic or when traveling only short distances. Let your authorized Audi dealer check the capacity of the vehicle battery before winter sets in ⇨ *page 205*. A well charged battery will not only prevent starting problems when the weather is cold, but will also last longer.

Tips

If your vehicle is left standing for several weeks at extremely low temperatures, the vehicle battery should be removed and stored where it will not freeze. This will prevent it from being damaged and having to be replaced.

Working on the battery

Be especially careful when working on or near the battery.

The battery is located in the luggage compartment under the floor. Before you check anything in the luggage compartment, **read and heed all WARNINGS** ⇨ ⚠.

Always heed the **safety warnings**, when working on the vehicle battery or the vehicle electrical system to prevent injury.

The following WARNINGS are very important when working on the battery:

Always heed the following WARNING SYMBOLS and safety precautions when working on the battery.	
	**Always wear eye protection.**
	**Battery acid contains sulfuric acid. Always wear gloves and eye protection.**
	**No** **- sparks** **- flames** **- smoking.**

8F0012721BB

	**When a battery is charged, it produces hydrogen gas which is explosive and could cause personal injury.**
	**Always keep the battery well out of reach of children.**

WARNING

Whenever working on the battery or on the electrical system, there is the risk of injury, accident and even fire. Read and heed the following WARNINGS:

- Always wear eye protection. Do not let battery acid or any lead particles get on your skin or clothing. Shield your eyes. Explosive gases can cause blindness or other injury.
- Battery acid contains sulfuric acid. Sulfuric acid can cause blindness and severe burns.
  - Always wear gloves and eye protection. Do not tilt the battery because acid could leak out of the ventilation openings.
  - If you get battery acid in your eyes or on your skin, immediately rinse with cold water for several minutes and get medical attention.
  - If you should ingest any battery acid, seek medical attention immediately.
- Do not expose the battery to an open flame, electric sparks or an open light.
- Do not smoke.
- Do not interchange the positive and negative cables.
- When working on the battery, be sure not to short-circuit the terminals with tools or other metal objects. This would cause the battery to heat up very quickly, which could lead to damage or explosion and personal injury.
- When a battery is charged, it produces hydrogen gas which is explosive and could cause personal injury.
- Always keep the battery well out of the reach of children.
- Before work is done on the electrical system, disconnect the negative ground cable.
- Before performing any work on the electrical system, switch off the engine and ignition as well as any electrical equipment. The negative cable on the battery must be disconnected. If you are just going to replace a light bulb, then it is enough to switch off the lights.
- Before disconnecting the battery, switch off the anti-theft alarm system! Otherwise you will set off the alarm.
- When disconnecting the battery, first disconnect the negative cable and then the positive cable.
- Before reconnecting the battery, make sure all electrical consumers are switched off. Reconnect the positive cable first and then the negative cable. Never interchange the cables - this could start a fire!
- Never charge a frozen or a thawed-out battery. It could explode! If a battery has frozen, then it must be replaced. A discharged battery can freeze over at 32°F (0°C).
- Make sure the vent hose is always attached to the opening on the side of the battery.
- Never use batteries which are damaged. There is the danger of an explosion! Always replace a damaged battery.

WARNING

California Proposition 65 Warning:

- Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive problems. Wash hands after handling.

Note

- Do not disconnect the vehicle battery when the ignition is switched on or when the engine is running, otherwise, you will damage electronic components in the electrical system.
- If your vehicle is going to stand for a long period of time without being driven, protect the battery from “freezing”, otherwise it will be damaged and will then have to be replaced.

Battery charging

Starting the engine requires a well charged battery.

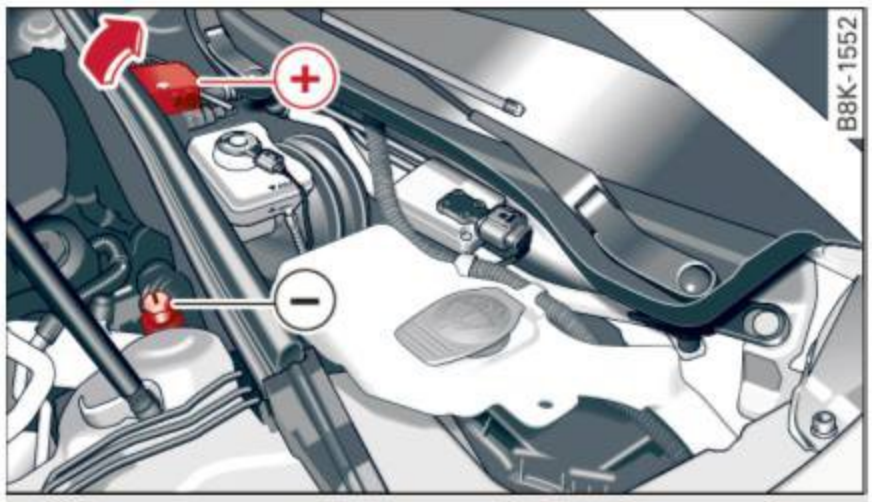


Fig. 176 Engine compartment: Connectors for charger and jumper cables

Always read and heed all WARNINGS below ⇨ ⚠ and ⇨ ⚠ *in Working on the battery on page 204*.

- ▸ Turn off the ignition and all electrical consumers.
- ▸ Make sure the area is well ventilated when you charge the battery.
- ▸ Open the engine hood ⇨ *page 193*.
- ▸ Open the cover on the positive pole ⇨ *fig. 176*.
- ▸ Connect the charger connectors according to the instructions to the **jump start bolts**. (Bolts under the cover = "positive", Bolts with hex head = "negative").
- ▸ Only now plug the mains lead for the charging equipment into the wall outlet and turn it on ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ **Make sure the charging rate is not over 30 amps/14.8 Volt.**
- ▸ When the battery is fully charged: Turn the charging equipment off and remove the mains lead from the wall outlet.
- ▸ Now remove the clamps for the charging equipment.
- ▸ Close the cover on the positive pole.
- ▸ Close the hood ⇨ *page 193*.

A discharged battery can **freeze** at temperatures of only 32 °F (0 °C). Allow a frozen battery to thaw completely before attempting to charge it ⇨ ⚠. However, we recommend not using a thawed battery again because the battery casing can be cracked due to ice formation and can leak battery acid.

Battery charging (Maximum charging rate of 30 amps/14.8 Volt)

When charging at *low* voltages (e.g. with a **trickle charger**), the battery cables do not have to be disconnected first. The battery caps should *not* be opened when charging a battery.

It is not necessary to remove the battery from the luggage compartment.

Fast charging the battery (charging rate above 14.8 Volts)

For technical reasons do not use a battery charger that uses voltage greater than 14.8 Volts to charge your vehicle's battery.

⚠ WARNING

Charging a battery can be dangerous.

- – Always follow the operating instructions provided by the battery charger manufacturer when charging your battery.
- – Never charge a frozen battery. It may explode because of gas trapped in the ice. Allow a frozen battery to thaw out first.
- – Do not reuse batteries which were frozen. The battery housing may have cracked and weakened when the battery froze.
- – Charge the battery in a well ventilated area. Keep away from open flame or electrical spark. Do not smoke. Hydrogen gas generated by the battery is explosive.
- – To reduce the danger of explosion, never connect or disconnect charger cables while the charger is operating.
- – Fast charging a battery is dangerous and should only be attempted by a competent technician with the proper equipment.
- – Battery acid that may spill during charging should be washed off with a solution of warm water and baking soda to neutralize the acid.

▸

Note

Never use a fast charger as a booster to start the engine. This will seriously damage sensitive electronic components, such as control units, relays, radio, etc., as well as the battery charger.

Battery replacement

The new battery must have the same specifications and dimensions as the original equipment battery.

Intelligent energy management in your vehicle is responsible for distributing the electrical energy throughout your vehicle ⇨ *page 173*. The intelligent energy management system will keep the engine battery charged better then vehicles without this system. To make sure the additional electrical energy is available once again after you have changed the battery, we recommend that you install batteries of the same type and manufacture only (the same as those installed at the time your vehicle was delivered). Specifications are listed on the battery housing. Your authorized Audi dealer must code the battery in the energy management system to enable you to use the energy management functions correctly after replacing the battery.

If it is not possible to use a battery of this type, the new battery must have the same capacity, voltage (12-volts), amperage, construction and plug sealing.

When installing the battery, make sure the ignition and all electrical consumers are turned off.

Note

Make sure the ventilation hose on the side of the battery is connected, otherwise fumes or battery acid can leak out.

For the sake of the environment

Because of the problem of proper disposal of a battery, we recommend your authorized Audi dealer change the battery for you. Batteries contain sulfuric acid and lead and must always be disposed of properly in compliance with all environmental regulations. Disposing of vehicle batteries improperly is very dangerous to the environment.

Windshield/headlight* washer container



Fig. 177 Engine compartment: Cover on the windshield and headlight* washer fluid container

The washer fluid container is marked with the symbol on its cap ⇨ *fig. 177*, ⇨ *page 195, fig. 171*.

- ▸ Before you check anything in the engine compartment, **always read and heed all WARNINGS** ⇨ ⚠ *in Working in the engine compartment on page 193*.
- ▸ Lift the filler cap tongue to add washer fluid. You can fill the container to the top.
- ▸ Press the cap back onto the filler neck after filling the container.

You can find the reservoir **capacity** in the table in ⇨ *page 244*.

Clean water should be used when filling up. If possible, use soft water to prevent scaling on the washer jets. Always add a glass cleaner solution (with frost protection in the winter).

Note

Do not mix engine coolant antifreeze or any other additives to fill up the windshield washer reservoir.

Wheels

Wheels and Tires

General information

- ▸Check your tires regularly for damage (punctures, cuts, cracks and bulges). Remove foreign objects from the tire tread.
- ▸If driving over curbs or similar obstacles, drive slowly and approach the curb at an angle.
- ▸Have faulty tires or rims replaced immediately.
- ▸Protect your tires from oil, grease and fuel.
- ▸Mark tires before removing them so that the same running direction can be maintained if they are reinstalled.
- ▸Lay tires flat when storing and store them in a cool, dry location with as little exposure to light as possible.

Note

–Please note that summer and winter tires are designed for the conditions that are typical in those seasons. Audi recommends using winter tires during the winter months. Low temperatures significantly decrease the elasticity of summer tires, which affects traction and braking ability. If summer tires are used in very cold temperatures, cracks can form on the tread bars, resulting in permanent tire damage that can cause loud driving noise and unbalanced tires.

–Burnished, polished or chromed rims must not be used in winter driving conditions. The surface of the rims does not have sufficient corrosion protection for this and could be permanently damaged by road salt or similar substances.

Tire designations

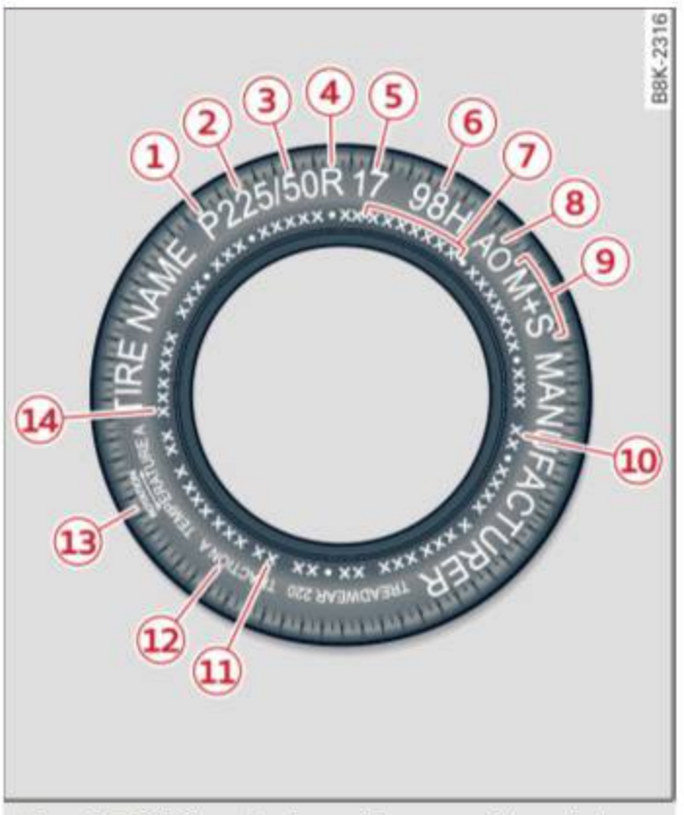


Fig. 178 Tire designations on the sidewall ▸

① Tires for passenger vehicles (if applicable)

P indicates a tire for a passenger vehicle. T indicates a tire designated for temporary use.

② Nominal width

Nominal width of the tire between the sidewalls in millimeters. In general: the larger the number, the wider the tire.

③ Aspect ratio

Height/width ratio expressed as a percentage.

④ Tire construction

R indicates a radial tire.

⑤ Rim diameter

Size of the rim diameter in inches.

⑥ Load index and speed rating

The load index indicates the tire's load-carrying capacity.

The speed rating indicates the maximum permitted speed ⇨ ⚠ *in Winter tires on page 222*.

“EXTRA LOAD”, “xl” or “RF” indicates that the tire is reinforced or is an Extra Load tire.

Speed rating	Maximum permitted speed
P	up to 93 mph (150 km/h)
Q	up to 99 mph (160 km/h)

Speed rating	Maximum permitted speed
R	up to 106 mph (170 km/h)
S	up to 110 mph (180 km/h)
T	up to 118 mph (190 km/h)
U	up to 124 mph (200 km/h)
H	up to 130 mph (210 km/h)
V	up to 149 mph (240 km/h)[a]
Z	above 149 mph (240 km/h)[a]
W	up to 168 mph (270 km/h)[a]
Y	up to 186 mph (300 km/h)[a]

a) For tires above 149 mph (240 km/h), tire manufacturers sometimes use the code “ZR”.

⑦ US DOT number (TIN) and manufacture date

The manufacture date is listed on the tire sidewall (it may only appear on the inner side of the tire):

DOT ... 2216 ...

means, for example, that the tire was produced in the 22nd week of the year 2016.

⑧ Audi Original Tires

Audi Original Tires with the designation “AO” or “RO” have been specifically matched to your Audi. When used correctly, these tires meet the highest standards for safety and handling. An authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility will be able to provide you with more information. ▶

⑨ Mud and snow capability

"M/S" or "M+S" indicates the tire is suitable for driving on mud and snow. ⛷ indicates a winter tire.

⑩ Composition of the tire cord and materials

The number of plies indicates the number of rubberized fabric layers in the tire. In general: the more layers, the more weight a tire can carry. Tire manufacturers must also specify the materials used in the tire. These include steel, nylon, polyester and other materials.

⑪ Maximum permitted load

This number indicates the maximum load in kilograms and pounds that the tire can carry.

⑫ Uniform tire quality grade standards for treadwear, traction and temperature resistance

Treadwear, traction and temperature ranges ⇨ *page 224*.

⑬ Running direction

The arrows indicate the running direction of unidirectional tires. You must always follow the specified running direction ⇨ *page 233*.

⑭ Maximum permitted inflation pressure

This number indicates the maximum pressure to which a tire can be inflated under normal operating conditions.

Glossary of tire and loading terminology

Accessory weight

means the combined weight (in excess of those standard items which may be replaced) of automatic transmission, power steering, power brakes, power windows, power seats, radio, and heater, to the extent that these items are available as factory-installed equipment (whether installed or not).

Aspect ratio

means the ratio of the height to the width of the tire in percent. Numbers of 55 or lower indicate a low sidewall for improved steering response and better overall handling on dry pavement.

Bead

means the part of the tire that is made of steel wires, wrapped or reinforced by ply cords and that is shaped to fit the rim. ▶

Bead separation

means a breakdown of the bond between components in the bead.

Cord

means the strands forming the plies in the tire.

Cold tire inflation pressure

means the tire pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer for a tire of a designated size that has not been driven for more than a couple of miles (kilometers) at low speeds in the three hour period before the tire pressure is measured or adjusted.

Curb weight

means the weight of a motor vehicle with standard equipment including the maximum capacity of fuel, oil, and coolant, air conditioning and additional weight of optional equipment.

Extra load tire

means a tire designed to operate at higher loads and at higher inflation pressures than the corresponding standard tire. Extra load tires may be identified as "XL", "xl", "EXTRA LOAD", or "RF" on the sidewall.

Gross Axle Weight Rating ("GAWR")

means the load-carrying capacity of a single axle system, measured at the tire-ground interfaces.

Gross Vehicle Weight Rating ("GVWR")

means the maximum total loaded weight of the vehicle.

Groove

means the space between two adjacent tread ribs.

Load rating (code)

means the maximum load that a tire is rated to carry for a given inflation pressure. You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by law.

Maximum load rating

means the load rating for a tire at the maximum permissible inflation pressure for that tire.

Maximum loaded vehicle weight

means the sum of:

(a) Curb weight
(b) Accessory weight
(c) Vehicle capacity weight, and
(d) Production options weight ▸

Maximum (permissible) inflation pressure

means the maximum cold inflation pressure to which a tire may be inflated. Also called "maximum inflation pressure."

Normal occupant weight

means 150 lbs. (68 kilograms) times the number of occupants seated in the vehicle up to the total seating capacity of your vehicle.

Occupant distribution

means distribution of occupants in a vehicle.

Outer diameter

means the overall diameter of an inflated new tire.

Overall width

means the linear distance between the exteriors of the sidewalls of an inflated tire, including elevations due to labeling, decorations, or protective bands or ribs.

Ply

means a layer of rubber-coated parallel cords.

Production options weight

means the combined weight of those installed regular production options weighing over 5 lbs. (2.3 kg) in excess of those standard items which they replace, not previously considered in curb weight or accessory weight, including heavy duty brakes, ride levelers, heavy duty battery, and special trim.

Radial ply tire

means a pneumatic tire in which the ply cords that extend to the beads are laid at substantially 90 degrees to the centerline of the tread.

Recommended inflation pressure

see ⇨ *page 210, Cold tire inflation pressure*.

Reinforced tire

means a tire designed to operate at higher loads and at higher inflation pressures than the corresponding standard tire. Reinforced tires may be identified as "XL", "xl", "EXTRA LOAD", or "RF" on the sidewall. ▶

Rim

means a metal support for a tire or a tire and tube assembly upon which the tire beads are seated.

Rim diameter

means nominal diameter of the bead seat. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new rim diameter.

Rim size designation

means rim diameter and width.

Rim width

means nominal distance between rim flanges.

Sidewall

means that portion of a tire between the tread and bead.

Speed rating (letter code)

means the speed at which a tire is designed to be driven for extended periods of time. The ratings range from 93 mph (150 km/h) to 186 mph (298 km/h) ⇨ *table on page 208*. You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by law.

The speed rating letter code, where applicable, is molded on the tire sidewall and indicates the maximum permissible road speeds ⇨ ⚠ *in Winter tires on page 222*.

Tire pressure monitoring system*

means a system that detects when one or more of a vehicle's tires are underinflated and illuminates a low tire pressure warning telltale.

Tread

means that portion of a tire that comes into contact with the road.

Tread separation

means pulling away of the tread from the tire carcass.

Treadwear indicators (TWI)

means the projections within the principal grooves designed to give a visual indication of the degrees of wear of the tread. See ⇨ *page 215, Treadwear indicator* for more information on measuring tire wear.

Uniform Tire Quality Grading

is a tire information system developed by the United States National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) that is designed to help buyers make relative ▶

comparisons among tires. The UTQG is not a safety rating and not a guarantee that a tire will last for a prescribed number of miles (kilometers) or perform in a certain way. It simply gives tire buyers additional information to combine with other considerations, such as price, brand loyalty and dealer recommendations. Under UTQG, tires are graded by the tire manufacturers in three areas: treadwear, traction, and temperature resistance. The UTQG information on the tires, molded into the sidewalls.

U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number (TIN)

This is the tire's "serial number". It begins with the letters "DOT" and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters indicate the plant where it was manufactured, and the last four numbers represent the week and year of manufacture. For example,

DOT ... 2216 ...

means that the tire was produced in the 22nd week of 2016. The other numbers are marketing codes that may or may not be used by the tire manufacturer. This information is used to contact consumers if a tire defect requires a recall.

Vehicle capacity weight

means the rated cargo and luggage load plus 150 lbs. (68 kilograms) times the vehicle's designated seating capacity.

Vehicle maximum load on the tire

means that load on an individual tire that is determined by distributing to each axle its share of the maximum loaded vehicle weight and dividing by two.

Vehicle normal load on the tire

means that load on an individual tire that is determined by distributing to each axle its share of the curb weight, accessory weight, and normal occupant weight (distributed in accordance with ⇨ *page 218*) and dividing by two.

Occupant loading and distribution for vehicle normal load for various designated seating capacities

Refer to the tire inflation pressure label ⇨ *page 217, fig. 181* for the number of seating ▶

8F0012721BB

positions. Refer to the table ⇨ *page 218* for the number of people that correspond to the vehicle normal load.

New tires or wheels

Audi recommends having all work on tires or wheels performed by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. These facilities have the proper knowledge and are equipped with the required tools and replacement parts.

- ▸New tires do not yet have the optimum gripping properties. Drive carefully and at moderate speeds for the first 350 miles (500 km) with new tires.
- ▸Use tires of the same construction, size (rolling circumference) and as close to the same tread pattern as possible on all four wheels.
- ▸Do not replace tires individually. At least replace both tires on the same axle at the same time.
- ▸Audi recommends that you use Audi Original Tires. If you would like to use different tires, please note that the tires may perform differently even if they are the same size ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸If you would like to equip your vehicle with a tire/rim combination that is different from what was installed at the factory, consult with an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility before making a purchase ⇨ ⚠.

The spare tire* is different from the regular tires installed on the vehicle - for example, if winter tires or wide tires are installed - so only use the spare tire* temporarily in case of emergency and drive carefully while it is in use. It should be replaced with a regular tire as soon as possible.

On **all wheel drive** vehicles, all four wheels must be equipped with tires that are the same brand and have the same construction and tread pattern so that the drive system is not damaged by different tire speeds. For this reason, in case of emergency, only use a spare tire* that is the same circumference as the regular tires.

⚠ WARNING

–Only use tire/rim combinations and suitable wheel bolts that have been approved by ▸

Audi. Otherwise, damage to the vehicle and an accident could result.

–For technical reasons, it is not possible to use tires from other vehicles - in some cases, you cannot even use tires from the same vehicle model.

–Make sure that the tires you select have enough clearance to the vehicle. Replacement tires should not be chosen simply based on the nominal size, because tires with a different construction can differ greatly even if they are the same size. If there is not enough clearance, the tires or the vehicle can be damaged and this can reduce driving safety and increase the risk of an accident.

–Only use tires that are more than six years old when absolutely necessary and drive carefully when doing so.

–If you install wheel covers on the vehicle, make sure they allow enough air circulation to cool the brake system. If they do not, this could increase the risk of an accident.

Tire wear/damage



Fig. 179 Tire profile: treadwear indicator

Tire wear

Check the tires regularly for wear.

–Inflation pressure that is too low or high can increase tire wear considerably.

–Driving quickly through curves, rapid acceleration and heavy braking increase tire wear.

–Have an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility check the wheel alignment if there is unusual wear.

–Have the wheels rebalanced if an imbalance is causing noticeable vibration in the steering wheel. If you do not, the tires and other vehicle components could wear more quickly.

Treadwear indicator

Original equipment tires contain treadwear indicators in the tread pattern, which are bars that are ▶

1/16 inch (1.6 mm) high and are spaced evenly around the tire perpendicular to the running direction ⇨ *fig. 179*. The letters "TWI" or triangles on the tire sidewall indicate the location of the treadwear indicators.

The tires have reached the minimum tread depth [1] when they have worn down to the treadwear indicators. Replace the tires with new ones ⇨ ⚠.

Tire rotation

Rotating the tires regularly is recommended to ensure the tires wear evenly. To rotate the tires, install the tires from the rear axle on the front axle and vice versa. This will allow the tires to have approximately the same length of service life.

For unidirectional tires, make sure the tires are installed according to the running direction indicated on the tire sidewall ⇨ *page 233*.

Hidden damage

Damage to tires and rims can often occur in locations that are hidden. Unusual vibrations in the vehicle or pulling to one side may indicate that there is tire damage. Reduce your speed immediately. Check the tires for damage. If no damage is visible from the outside, drive slowly and carefully to the nearest authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the vehicle inspected.

⚠ WARNING

Tread that has worn too low or different tread depths on the tires can reduce driving safety. This can especially have a negative effect on handling, on the risk aquaplaning when driving through water, when driving through curves and when braking, which increases the risk of an accident.

[1] Obey any applicable regulations in your country.

Tire pressure



Fig. 180 Driver's side B-pillar: tire pressure label

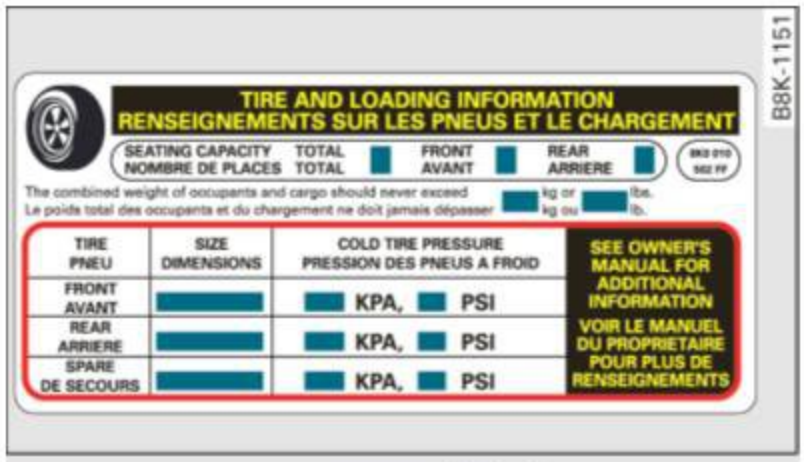


Fig. 181 Tire pressure label

The correct tire pressure for tires mounted in the factory and for the spare tire* is indicated on a label. The label is located on the B-pillar ⇨ *fig. 180*, ⇨ *fig. 181*.

Use the tire pressure specified for a normal vehicle load when the vehicle is partially loaded ⇨ *page 218*. If driving the vehicle when fully loaded, you must increase the tire pressure to the maximum specified pressure ⇨ ⚠.

Checking/correcting tire pressure

- ▸Check the tire pressure at least once per month and also check it before every long drive.
- ▸Always check the tire pressure when the tires are *cold*. Do not reduce the pressure if it increases when the tires are warm.
- ▸Check the label ⇨ *fig. 181* for the correct tire pressure based on vehicle load.
- ▸Correct the tire pressure if necessary.
- ▸Vehicles with Tire Pressure Monitoring System*: store the modified tire pressure in the Infotainment system ⇨ *page 226*.
- ▸Check the pressure in the emergency tire*/spare tire*. Always maintain the maximum temperature that is specified for the tire.

⚠ WARNING

Always adapt the tire pressure to your driving style and vehicle load.

–Overloading can lead to loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of an accident. Read ▸

and follow the important safety precautions in ⇨ *page 219, Tires and vehicle load limits*.

– The tire must flex more if the tire pressure is too low or if the vehicle speed or load are too high. This heats the tire up too much. This increases the risk of an accident because it can cause the tire to burst and result in loss of vehicle control.

– Incorrect tire pressure increases tire wear and has a negative effect on driving and braking behavior, which increases the risk of an accident.

Note

Replace lost valve caps to reduce the risk of damage to the tire valves.

For the sake of the environment

Tire pressure that is too low increases fuel consumption.

Tips

Audi recommends using the tire pressure specified for a normal load ⇨ *page 218* or for a full load when the vehicle is partially loaded.

Tire pressure table

Please note that the information contained in the following table was correct at the time of printing, and the information is subject to change. If there are differences between this information and the tire pressures specified on the label on the driver's side B-pillar, always follow the specification on the B-pillar label ⇨ *page 217, fig. 180*.

Make sure that the tire designation on your tire matches the designation on the tire pressure label and the tire pressure table.

The following table lists recommended tire pressures in cold tires according to the load and the size of the tires installed. ▶

Model Engine	Tire designation	Tire pressure							
		normal load condition (up to 2 occupants)[a]				full load condition			
		front		rear		front		rear	
		PSI	kPA	PSI	kPA	PSI	kPA	PSI	kPA
A5 Cabriolet: 2.0 liter 4-cylinder	225/50 R17 94H All Season	33	230	30	210	36	250	39	270
	245/40 R18 93H All Season	35	240	32	220	38	260	41	280
	245/45 R17 95H All Season	32	220	29	200	35	240	38	260
	255/35 R19 96Y High Performance	32	220	32	220	35	240	38	260
S5 Cabriolet: 3.0 liter 6-cylinder	245/40 R18 97Y High Performance	39	270	35	240	42	290	44	300
	255/35 R19 96Y High Performance	39	270	35	240	42	290	44	300
XL = reinforced or extra load tire. It may also appear as xl, EXTRA LOAD, or RF on the tire sidewall.									

a) 2 people in the front

WARNING

Please note the important safety precautions regarding tire pressure ⇨ *page 217* and load limits ⇨ *page 219*.

Tires and vehicle load limits

There are limits to the amount of load or weight that any vehicle and any tire can carry. A vehicle that is overloaded will not handle well and is more difficult to stop. Overloading can not only lead to loss of vehicle control, but can also damage important parts of the vehicle and can lead to sudden tire failure, including a blowout and sudden deflation that can cause the vehicle to crash.

Your safety and that of your passengers also depends on making sure that load limits are not exceeded. Vehicle load includes everybody and everything in and on the vehicle. These load limits are technically referred to as the vehicle's **Gross Vehicle Weight Rating** ("GVWR").

The "GVWR" includes the weight of the basic vehicle, all factory installed accessories, a full tank of fuel, oil, coolant and other fluids plus maximum load. The maximum load includes the number of ▶

8F0012721BB

passengers that the vehicle is intended to carry ("seating capacity") with an assumed weight of 150 lbs. (68 kg) for each passenger at a designated seating position and the total weight of any luggage in the vehicle. If you tow a trailer, the weight of the trailer hitch and the tongue weight of the loaded trailer must be included as part of the vehicle load.

The **Gross Axle Weight Rating** ("GAWR") is the maximum load that can be applied at each of the vehicle's two axles.

The fact that there is an upper limit to your vehicle's Gross Vehicle Weight Rating means that the total weight of whatever is being carried in the vehicle (including the weight of a trailer hitch and the tongue weight of the loaded trailer) is limited. The more passengers in the vehicle or passengers who are heavier than the standard weights assumed mean that less weight can be carried as luggage.

The Gross Vehicle Weight Rating and the Gross Axle Weight Rating are listed on the safety compliance sticker label located on the driver's side B-pillar ⇨ *page 217, fig. 180*.

⚠ WARNING

Overloading a vehicle can cause loss of vehicle control, a crash or other accident, serious personal injury, and even death.

–Carrying more weight than your vehicle was designed to carry will prevent the vehicle from handling properly and increase the risk of the loss of vehicle control.

–The brakes on a vehicle that has been overloaded may not be able to stop the vehicle within a safe distance.

–Tires on a vehicle that has been overloaded can fail suddenly, including a blowout and sudden deflation, causing loss of control and a crash.

–Always make sure that the total load being transported – including the weight of a trailer hitch and the tongue weight of a loaded trailer – does not make the vehicle heavier than the vehicle's Gross Vehicle Weight Rating.

Determining correct load limit

Use the example below to calculate the total weight of the passengers and luggage or other things that you plan to transport so that you can make sure that your vehicle will not be overloaded.

Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit

1. Locate the statement “THE COMBINED WEIGHT OF OCCUPANTS AND CARGO SHOULD NEVER EXCEED XXX KG OR XXX LBS”on your vehicle’s placard (tire inflation pressure label) ⇨ *page 217, fig. 180*.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from “XXX” kilograms or “XXX” pounds shown on the sticker ⇨ *page 217, fig. 180*.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the “XXX” amount equals 1400 lbs. and there will be five 150 lbs. passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs. (1400-750 (5 x 150) = 650 lbs.)
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

▶ Check the tire sidewall (⇨ *page 207, fig. 178*) to determine the designated load rating for a specific tire.

Wheel bolts and rims

Wheel bolts

Wheel bolts must be clean and loosen/tighten easily.

Rims

Rims with a bolted rim ring* or with bolted wheel covers* consist of multiple pieces. These components were bolted together using special bolts ▶

8F0012721BB

and a special procedure. You must not repair or disassemble them ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

Wheel bolts that are tightened or repaired incorrectly can become loose and result in loss of vehicle control, which increases the risk of an accident. For the correct tightening specification, see ⇨ *page 229, After changing a wheel*.

– Always keep the wheel bolts and the threads in the wheel hub clean and free of grease.
– Only use wheel bolts that fit the rim.
– Always have damaged rims repaired by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. Never repair or disassemble rims yourself, because this increases the risk of an accident.

Winter tires

Winter tires significantly improve the vehicle's handling when driving in winter conditions. Because of their construction (width, compound, tread pattern), summer tires provide less traction on ice and snow.

- ▸ Use winter tires on all four wheels.
- ▸ Only use winter tires that are approved for your vehicle.
- ▸ Please note that the maximum permitted speed may be lower with winter tires ⇨ ⚠. An authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility can inform you about the maximum permitted speed for your tires.
- ▸ Check the tire pressure after installing wheels ⇨ *page 217*.

The effectiveness of winter tires is reduced greatly when the tread is worn down to a depth of 0.157 inch (4 mm). The characteristics of winter tires also decrease greatly as the tire ages, regardless of the remaining tread.

WARNING

– Never drive faster than the maximum permitted speed for your tires. This could cause the tires to heat up too much. This increases the risk of an accident because it can cause the tire to burst.
– Always adapt your driving to the road and traffic conditions. Drive carefully and reduce your speed on icy or slippery roads. Even winter tires can lose traction on black ice.

For the sake of the environment

Reinstall summer tires at the appropriate time, because they provide better handling when roads are free of snow and ice. Summer tires cause less road noise, tire wear and fuel consumption.

Tips

You can also use all season tires instead of winter tires. Please note that in some countries where winter tires are required, only winter tires with the ⛷ symbol may be permitted.

Snow chains

Snow chains improve traction in the snow.

- ▸ Only install snow chains on the *front* wheels. This applies also to vehicles with all wheel drive*.
- ▸ Check and correct the seating of the snow chains if necessary after driving a few feet. Follow the instructions from the manufacturer.
- ▸ Note the maximum permitted speed when driving with snow chains. Do not exceed 30 mph (50 km/h).

Snow chains not only improve the *driving* in winter road conditions, but also the *braking*.

Use of snow chains is only permitted with certain rim/tire combinations due to technical reasons. Check with an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to see if you may use snow chains.

Use **fine-mesh snow chains**. They must not add more than 0.53 inch (13.5 mm) in height, including the chain lock.

You must remove the chains when driving on roads that are *free* of snow. When roads are free ▶

of snow, snow chains can impair handling and damage the tires, and the chains will quickly be destroyed.

WARNING

Using incorrect snow chains or installing snow chains incorrectly can result in loss of vehicle control, which increases the risk of an accident.

Note

Snow chains can damage the rims/wheel covers* if the chains come into direct contact with them. Remove the wheel covers* first. Use coated snow chains.

Tips

When using snow chains, it may be useful to switch on sport mode ⇨ *page 168*.

Low aspect ratio tires

Your Audi is factory-equipped with low aspect ratio tires. These tires have been thoroughly tested and been selected specifically for your model for their superb performance, road feel and handling under a variety of driving conditions. Ask your authorized Audi dealer for more details.

The low aspect ratio of these tires is indicated by a numeral of **55 or less** in the tire's size designation. The numeral represents the ratio of the tire's sidewall height in relation to its tread width expressed in percentage. Conventional tires have a height/width ratio of 60 or more.

The performance of low-aspect-ratio tires is particularly sensitive to improper inflation pressure. It is therefore important that low aspect ratio tires are inflated to the specified pressure and that the inflation pressure is regularly checked and maintained. Tire pressures should be checked at least once a month and always before a long trip ⇨ *page 217*.

What you can do to avoid tire and rim damage

Low aspect ratio tires can be damaged more easily by impact with potholes, curbs, gullies or ridges on the road, particularly if the tire is underinflated.

In order to minimize the occurrence of impact damage to the tires of your vehicle, we recommend that you observe the following precautions:

– Always maintain recommended inflation pressures. Check your tire pressure every 2,000 miles (3,000 km) and add air if necessary.
– Drive carefully on roads with potholes, deep gullies or ridges. The impact from driving through or over such obstacles can damage your tires. Impact with a curb may also cause damage to your tires.
– After any impact, immediately inspect your tires or have them inspected by the nearest authorized Audi dealer. Replace a damaged tire as soon as possible.
– Inspect your tires every 2,000 miles (3,000 km) for damage and wear. Damage is not always easy to see. Damage can lead to loss of air and underinflation, which could eventually cause tire failure. If you believe that a tire may have been damaged, replace the tire as soon as possible.
– These tires may wear more quickly than others.
– Please also remember that, while these tires deliver responsive handling, they may ride less comfortably and make more noise than other choices.

Reduced performance in winter/cold season conditions

All tires are designed for certain purposes. The low aspect ratio, ultra high performance tires originally installed on your vehicle are intended for maximum dry and wet road performance and handling. They are not suitable for cold, snowy or icy weather conditions. If you drive under those circumstances, you should equip your vehicle with all-season or winter tires, which offer better traction under those conditions. We suggest you use the recommended snow or all-season tires specified for your vehicle, or their equivalent.

Refer to ⇨ *page 222* for more detailed information regarding winter tires.

8F0012721BB

Uniform tire quality grading

– Tread wear
– Traction AA A B C
– Temperature A B C

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire side wall between tread shoulder and maximum section width ⇨ *page 207, fig. 178*.

For example: Tread wear **200**, Traction **AA**, Temperature **A**.

All passenger car tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades.

Tread wear

The *tread wear* grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course.

For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one half (1 1/2) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100.

The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction

The *traction* grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B and C. Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance ⇨ ⚠.

Temperature

The *temperature* grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure ⇨ ⚠.

The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

⚠ WARNING

The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning or peak traction characteristics.

⚠ WARNING

The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

⚠ WARNING

Temperature grades apply to tires that are properly inflated and not over or underinflated.

Tire pressure monitoring system

(!) General notes

Applies to: vehicles with tire pressure monitoring system

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires).

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and ▶

check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

If the Tire Pressure Monitoring System indicator appears

Applies to: vehicles with Tire Pressure Monitoring System

The tire pressure indicator in the instrument cluster informs you if the tire pressure is too low or if there is a system malfunction.

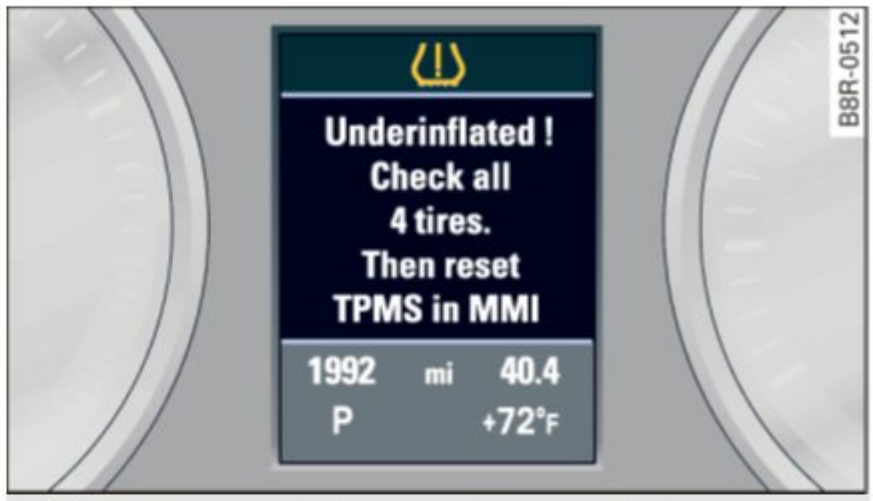


Fig. 182 Instrument cluster: indicator light with message

Using the ABS sensors, the tire pressure monitoring system compares the tire tread circumference and vibration characteristics of the individual tires. If the pressure changes in one or more tires, this is indicated in the instrument cluster display with an indicator light and a message. If only one tire is affected, the location of that tire will be indicated.

The tire pressures must be stored in the Infotainment system again each time the pressures change (switching between partial and full load pressure) or after changing or replacing a tire on your vehicle ⇨ *page 226*. The tire pressure monitoring system only monitors the tire pressure you have stored. Refer to the tire pressure label for the recommended tire pressure for your vehicle ⇨ *page 217, fig. 181*.

Tire tread circumference and vibration characteristics can change and cause a tire pressure warning if:

– the tire pressure in one or more tires is too low.
– the tire has structural damage.
– the tire was replaced or the tire pressure was changed and it was not stored ⇨ *page 226*.
– the spare tire* is installed.

Indicator lights

Loss of pressure in at least one tire ⇨ ⚠.
Check the tires and replace or repair if necessary. ▶

8F0012721BB

Check/correct the pressures of all four tires and store the pressure again in the Infotainment system ⇨ *page 226*.

TPMS (**T**ire **P**ressure **M**onitoring **S**ystem) **Tire pressure: System malfunction!**. If **TPMS** appears after switching the ignition on or while driving and the (!) indicator light in the instrument cluster blinks for approximately one minute and then stays on, there is system malfunction. Try to store the correct tire pressures ⇨ *page 226*. If the indicator light does turn off or turns on again after a short period of time, drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

WARNING

– If the tire pressure indicator appears in the display, reduce your speed immediately and avoid any hard steering or braking maneuvers. Stop as soon as possible and check the tires and their pressure.
– The driver is responsible for maintaining the correct tire pressure. You must check the tire pressure regularly.
– Under certain conditions (such as a sporty driving style, winter conditions or unpaved roads), the tire pressure monitoring system indicator may be delayed.
– Do not use run-flat tires on your vehicle. Using them when not permitted can lead to vehicle damage or accidents.

Tips

– The tire pressure monitoring system can also stop working when there is an ESC malfunction.
– Using snow chains may result in a system malfunction.
– The tires with the identification “AO” or “RO” ⇨ *page 214* have been matched with your Audi tire pressure monitoring system. We recommend that you use these tires.

Storing tire pressures

Applies to: vehicles with Tire Pressure Monitoring System

If the tire pressure changes or a tire is replaced, it must be confirmed in the Infotainment system.

- Make sure before storing that the tire pressures of all four tires meet the specified values and are adapted to the load ⇨ *page 217*.
- Switch the ignition on.
- Select: the CAR function button > **Tire pressure monitoring** control button. Or
- Select: the CAR function button > **Car Systems*** control button > **Service & checks** > **Tire pressure monitoring**.

Tips

Do not store the tire pressures if snow chains are installed.

Emergency assistance

Vehicle tool kit

The tools are stored underneath the floor panel in the luggage compartment.

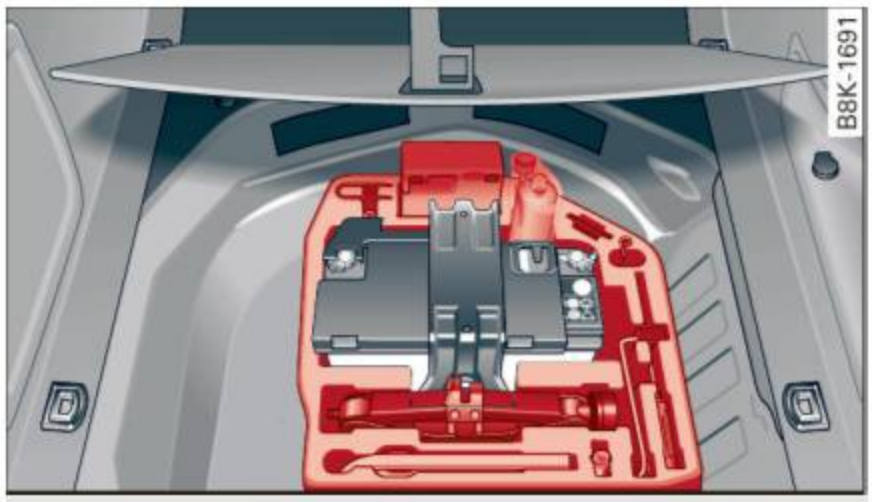


Fig. 183 Luggage compartment: tool kit

When you need access to the vehicle tool kit or jack*, you will need to take out the spare tire* and cover ⇨ *page 227*.

The vehicle tool kit includes:

– Hook for removing wheel covers*
– Plastic hook to remove wheel bolt covers*
– Alignment pin for changing the wheel
– Screwdriver with reversible blade
– Tool for changing light bulbs
– Reversible bit (reversible Torx bit for changing light bulbs)
– Rod for jack
– Jack*
– Lug wrench
– Towing eye

Some of the vehicle items listed above are provided on certain models only or are optional extras.

Before returning the jack* to its place, retract the jack arm fully.

WARNING

– Never use the screw driver hex head to tighten wheel bolts, since the bolts cannot attain the necessary tightening torque if you use the hex head, potentially causing an accident.
– The factory-supplied jack is intended only for your vehicle model. Under no circumstances should it be used to lift heavy vehicles or other loads; you risk injuring yourself.
– Never start the engine when the vehicle is raised, which could cause an accident.
– Support the vehicle securely with appropriate stands if work is to be performed underneath the vehicle; otherwise, there is a potential risk for injury.

Tips

The vehicle jack* in your vehicle is maintenance-free.

Space-saving spare tire (compact spare tire)

Applies to: vehicles with space-saving spare tire

The spare tire/wheel is located in the luggage compartment under the cargo floor cover. It is intended for short-term use only.



Fig. 184 Spare tire

Removing the spare tire

▸ Lift the cargo floor by the plastic handle ⇨ *fig. 184*.
▸ Hook the handle into the luggage compartment weather strip.
▸ Turn the large screw ⇨ *fig. 184* counter-clockwise.
▸ Take out the spare tire.
▸ Always store the vehicle tool kit, the jack*, and the replaced tire in the luggage compartment ⇨ *page 116*.
▸ Unhook the cargo floor before closing the rear lid.

Using the spare tire (compact spare tire)

The compact spare tire is only intended for emergencies until you can reach a repair shop. Replace it as quickly as possible with a standard wheel and tire.

There are some restrictions on the use of the compact spare tire. The compact spare tire has been designed specifically for your type of vehicle. It must not be swapped with a compact spare tire from another type of vehicle.

Snow chains

For technical reasons, the use of snow chains on the compact spare tire is **not permitted**.

If you do have to drive with snow chains and a *front tire* fails, mount the spare wheel with tire instead of a rear tire. Install the snow chains on the rear tire and use it to replace the defective front tire.

WARNING

- Never use the spare tire if it is damaged or if it is worn down to the tread wear indicators.
- If the spare tire is more than 6 years old, use it only in an emergency and with extreme caution and careful driving.
- The spare tire is intended only for temporary and short-term use. It should be replaced as soon as possible with the normal wheel and tire.
- After mounting the compact spare tire, the tire pressure must be checked as soon as possible. The tire pressure of the compact spare tire must be 4.2 bar; otherwise, you risk having an accident.
- Do not drive faster than 50 mph (80 km/h). You risk having an accident.
- Avoid full-throttle acceleration, heavy braking, and fast cornering. You risk having an accident.
- Never drive using more than one spare wheel and tire. You risk having an accident.
- Normal summer or winter tires must not be mounted on the compact spare wheel rim.
- For technical reasons, the use of tire chains on the spare tire is not permitted. If it is necessary to drive with tire chains, the spare wheel must be mounted on the front axle in the event of a flat in a rear tire. The newly available front wheel must then be installed in place of the rear wheel with the flat tire. Installing the tire chain before mounting the wheel and tire is recommended.
- Loose items in the passenger compartment can cause serious personal injury during hard braking or in an accident. Never store the spare tire or jack and tools in the passenger compartment.

Replacing wheels

Before changing a wheel

Observe the following precautions for your own and your passenger's safety when changing a wheel.

- ▸ After you experience a tire failure, pull the car well away from moving traffic and try to reach **level** ground before you stop ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ All passengers should **leave the car** and move to a safe location (for instance, behind the guardrail) ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Engage the **parking brake** to prevent your vehicle from rolling unintentionally ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Move the **selector lever to the P position**.
- ▸ If you are towing a trailer: unhitch the trailer from your vehicle.
- ▸ Take the **jack** ⇨ *page 227* and the **spare tire** ⇨ *page 227* out of the luggage compartment.

WARNING

You or your passengers could be injured while changing a wheel if you do not follow these safety precautions:

- If you have a flat tire, move a safe distance off the road. Turn off the engine, turn the emergency flashers on and use other warning devices to alert other motorists.
- Make sure that passengers wait in a safe place away from the vehicle and well away from the road and traffic.
- To help prevent the vehicle from moving suddenly and possibly slipping off the jack, ▸

always fully set the parking brake and block the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel being changed with the folding chocks or other objects. When one front wheel is lifted off the ground, placing the Automatic Transmission in "P" (Park) will *not* prevent the vehicle from moving.

– Before you change a wheel, be sure the ground is level and firm. If necessary, use a sturdy board under the jack.
– Always store the vehicle tool kit, the jack* and the replaced tire in the luggage compartment ⇨ *page 116*.

Note

If you are changing the wheel on a steep incline, use a rock or similar object to block the opposite wheel to prevent the vehicle from moving.

Tips

Obey all laws.

Changing a wheel

When you change a wheel, follow the sequence described below step-by-step and in exactly that order.

1. Remove the **decorative wheel cover*** or the **wheel bolt caps***. For more details see also ⇨ *page 229, Decorative wheel covers* or ⇨ *page 230, Wheels with wheel bolt caps*.
2. Loosen the **wheel bolts** ⇨ *page 230*.
3. Locate the proper mounting point for the jack and align the jack below that point ⇨ *page 231*.
4. **Lift** the car with the jack ⇨ *page 231*.
5. Remove the **wheel with the flat tire** and then install the **spare tire** ⇨ *page 232*.
6. Tighten all wheel bolts lightly.
7. **Lower** the vehicle with the jack.
8. Use the wheel bolt wrench and **firmly** tighten all wheel bolts in a crisscross pattern ⇨ *page 230*.
9. Replace the **decorative wheel cover*** or the **wheel bolt caps***.

WARNING

Always read and follow all WARNINGS and information ⇨ ⚠ *in Raising the vehicle on page 231* and ⇨ *page 233*.

After changing a wheel

A wheel change is not complete without the doing the following.

- Always store the vehicle tool kit, the jack*, and the replaced tire in the luggage compartment ⇨ *page 116*.
- Check the **tire pressure** of the spare tire as soon as possible.
- As soon as possible, have the **tightening torques** on all wheel bolts checked with a torque wrench. The correct tightening torque is 90 ft lbs. (120 Nm).
- Have the flat tire **replaced** as soon as possible.

Tips

– If you notice that the wheel bolts are corroded and difficult to turn while changing a tire, they should be replaced before you check the tightening torque.
– Drive at reduced speed until you have the tightening torques checked.

Decorative wheel covers

Applies to: vehicles with decorative wheel covers

The decorative wheel covers must be removed first to access the wheel bolts.

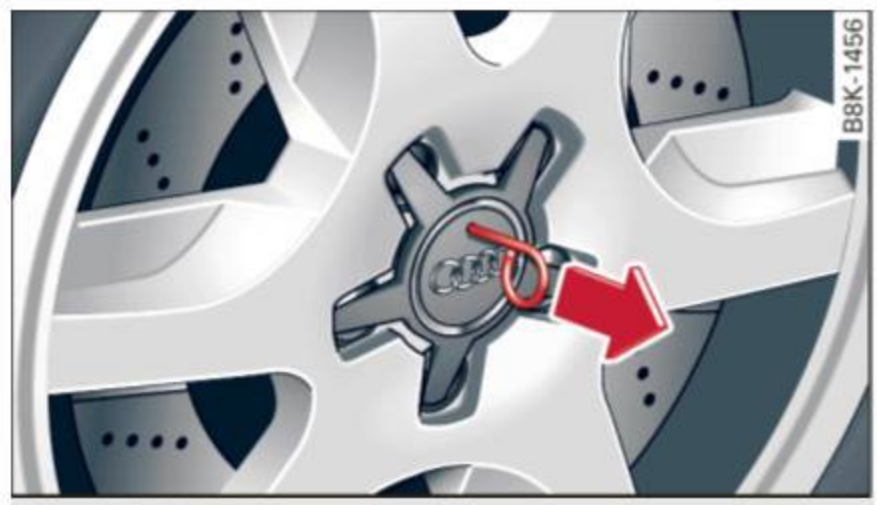


Fig. 185 Changing a wheel: removing the wheel cover

8F0012721BB

Removing

- Insert the **hook** provided with the vehicle tool kit in the hole in the hub.
- Pull off the **decorative wheel cover** ⇨ *fig. 185*.

Wheels with wheel bolt caps

Applies to: vehicles with wheel bolts with caps

The caps must be removed first from the wheel bolts before the bolts can be unscrewed.

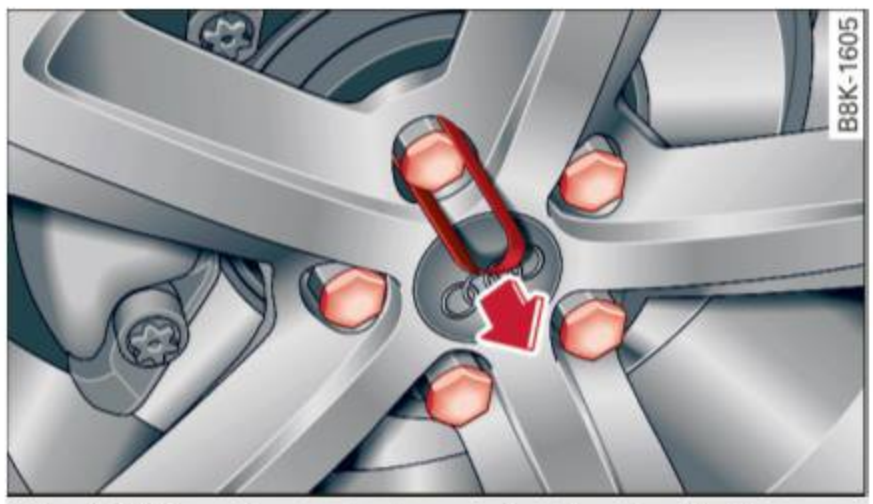


Fig. 186 Changing a wheel: removing the wheel bolt caps

Removing

- Push the **plastic clip** provided with the vehicle tool kit over the wheel bolt cap until it engages.
- Pull on the **plastic clip** to remove the cap ⇨ *fig. 186*.

Refitting

- Place the caps over the wheel bolts and push them back on.

The caps are to protect and keep the wheel bolts clean.

Loosening and tightening the wheel bolts

The wheel bolts must be loosened before raising the vehicle.



Fig. 187 Changing a wheel: loosening the wheel bolts

Loosening

- Install the **wheel bolt wrench** over the wheel bolt and push it down as far as it will go.
- Take tight hold of the *end* of the wrench handle and turn the wheel bolts **counter-clockwise** about *one single* turn in the direction of arrow ⇨ *fig. 187*.

Tightening

- Install the **wheel bolt wrench** over the wheel bolt and push it down as far as it will go.
- Take tight hold of the *end* of the wrench handle and turn each wheel bolt **clockwise** until it is seated.

WARNING

– Do not use force or hurry when changing a wheel - you can cause the vehicle to slip off the jack and cause serious personal injuries.
– *Do not* loosen the wheel bolts *more than one turn* before you raise the vehicle with the jack. - You risk an injury.

Tips

– Never use the hexagonal socket in the handle of the screwdriver to loosen or tighten the wheel bolts.
– If a wheel bolt is very tight, you may find it easier to loosen by carefully pushing down on the end of the wheel bolt wrench with *one foot only*. As you do so, hold on to the car to keep your balance and take care not to slip.

Raising the vehicle

The vehicle must be lifted with the jack first before the wheel can be removed.

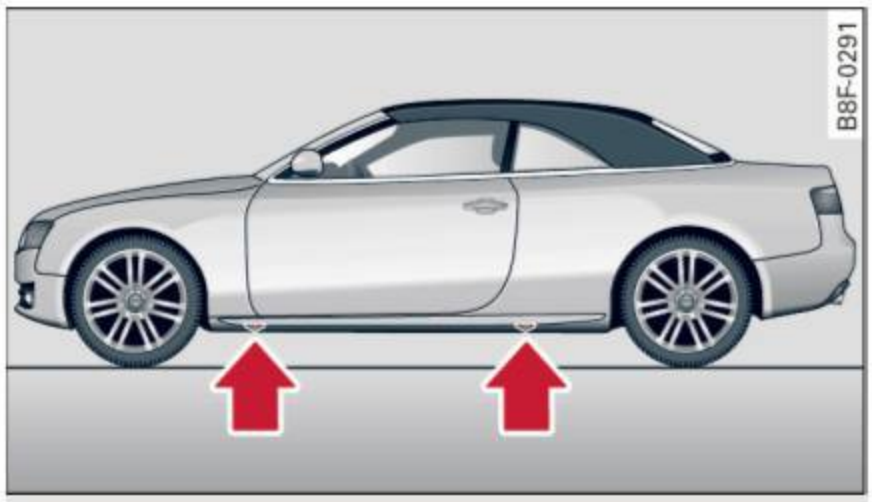


Fig. 188 Sill panels: markings

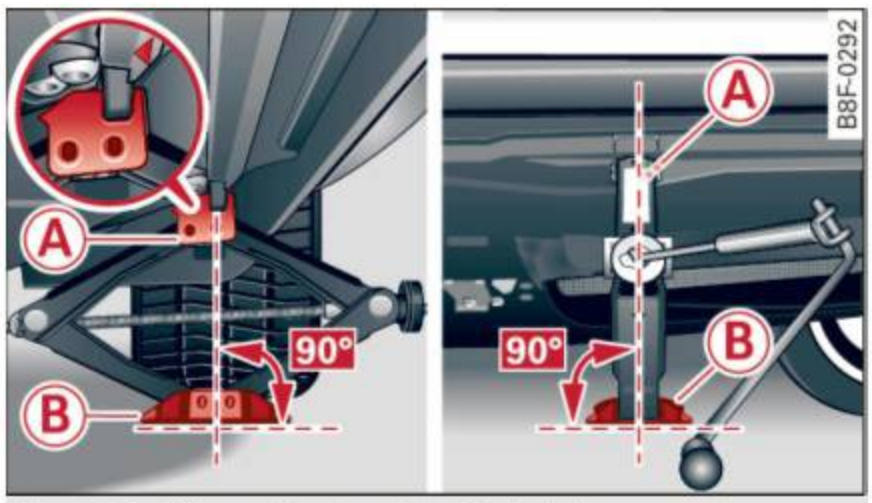


Fig. 189 Sill: positioning the vehicle jack

The location of the jack point is indicated by an indentation on the underside of the vehicle ⇨ *fig. 188*.

- ▸ Activate the **parking brake** to prevent the vehicle from rolling unintentionally.
- ▸ Move the selector lever to position P.
- ▸ Find the **marking** (imprint) on the sill that is nearest the wheel that will be changed ⇨ *fig. 188*. Behind the marking, there is a **lifting point** on the sill for the vehicle jack.
- ▸ Turn the **vehicle jack** located under the lifting point on the sill to raise the jack until the jaw ⇨ *fig. 189* Ⓐ covers the **notch** on the vehicle ⇨ ⚠ ⇨ Ⓘ.
- ▸ Align the vehicle jack so the jaw Ⓐ covers the notch and the base plate Ⓑ is flat on the floor. The base plate Ⓑ must be *vertical* under the lifting point Ⓐ.
- ▸ Install the rod on the vehicle jack: Insert the rod into the opening on the handwheel. Turn the rod left or right to secure it.
- ▸ Continue raising the jack with the rod until the wheel lifts off the ground slightly.

Position the vehicle jack **only** under the designated lifting points on the sill ⇨ *fig. 188*. There is exactly *one* location for each wheel. The jack must not be positioned at any other location ⇨ ⚠ ⇨ Ⓘ.

Soft ground under the jack can cause the vehicle to slip off the jack. Always place the jack on firm ground. Use a flat, stable support if necessary. Use a non-slip surface such as a rubber mat on a **slippery surface** such as tile.

⚠ WARNING

- – You or your passengers could be injured while changing a wheel if you do not follow these safety precautions:
  - – Position the vehicle jack only at the designated lifting points and align the jack. Otherwise, the vehicle jack could slip and cause an injury if it does not have sufficient hold on the vehicle.
  - – A soft or unstable surface under the jack may cause the vehicle to slip off the jack. Always provide a firm base for the jack on the ground. If necessary, use a sturdy board under the jack.
  - – On hard, slippery surface (such as tiles) use a rubber mat or similar to prevent the jack from slipping.
- – To help prevent injury to yourself and your passengers:
  - – Do not raise the vehicle until you are sure the jack is securely engaged.
  - – Passengers must not remain in the vehicle when it is jacked up.
  - – Make sure that passengers wait in a safe place away from the vehicle and well away from the road and traffic.
  - – Make sure jack position is correct, adjust as necessary and then continue to raise the jack.

Ⓘ Note

Do not lift the vehicle by the sill. Position the vehicle jack only at the designated lifting ▸

points on the sill. Otherwise, your vehicle will be damaged.

Taking the wheel off/installing the spare tire

Follow these instructions step-by-step for changing the wheel.

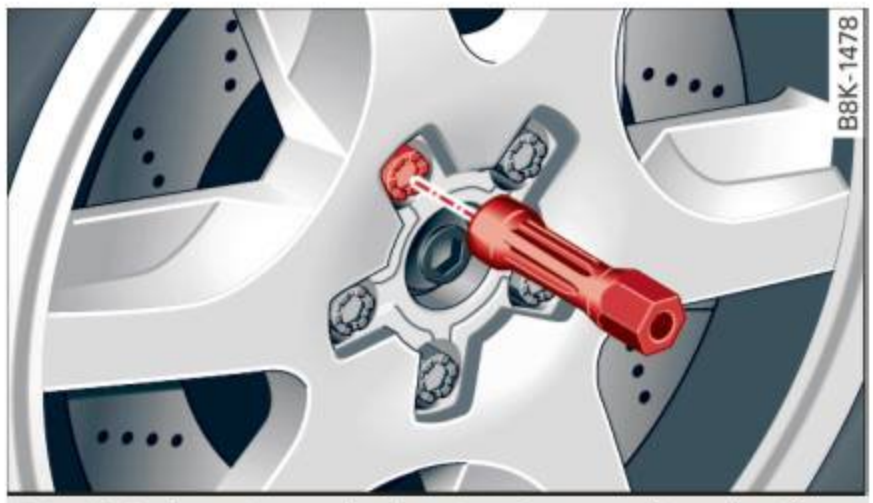


Fig. 190 Changing a wheel: using the screwdriver handle (with the blade removed) to turn the bolts

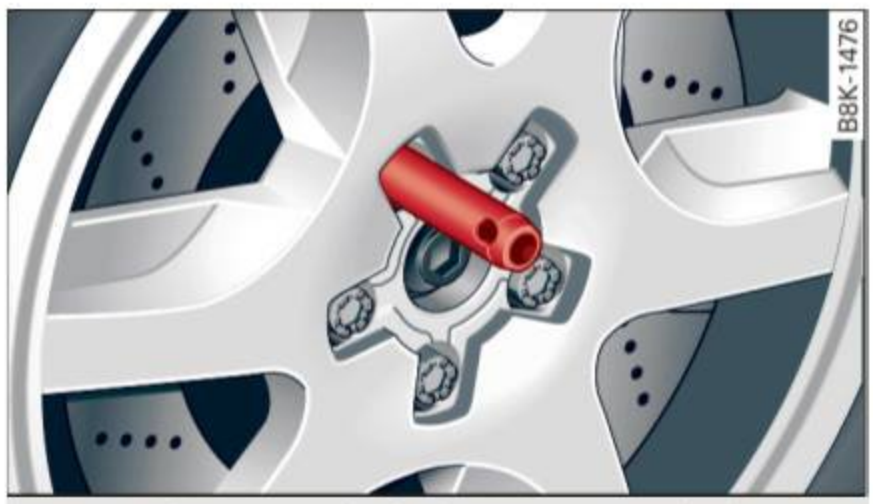


Fig. 191 Changing a wheel: alignment pin inside the top hole

After you have loosened all wheel bolts and raised the vehicle off the ground, remove and replace the wheel as follows:

Removing the wheel

- ▸ Remove the topmost wheel bolt completely with the **hexagonal socket** in the screwdriver handle (vehicle tool kit) ⇨ *fig. 190* and set it aside on a *clean* surface.
- ▸ Screw the threaded end of the **alignment pin** from the tool kit hand-tight into the empty bolt hole ⇨ *fig. 191*.
- ▸ Then remove the other wheel bolts as described above.
- ▸ Take off the wheel leaving the alignment pin in the bolt hole ⇨ (!).

Putting on the spare tire

- ▸ Push the spare tire over the alignment pin.
- ▸ Screw on the wheel bolts and tighten them *slightly* using the hexagonal socket.
- ▸ Remove the alignment pin and insert and tighten the remaining wheel bolt slightly like the rest.
- ▸ Turn the jack handle counter-clockwise to lower the vehicle until the jack is fully released.
- ▸ Use the wheel bolt wrench to tighten all wheel bolts firmly ⇨ *page 230*. Tighten them *in a crisscross pattern*, from one bolt to the (approximately) opposite one, to keep the wheel centered.
- ▸ Perform the steps required after changing the wheel ⇨ *page 229, After changing a wheel*.

The hexagonal socket makes it easier to remove the wheel bolts from the rim. Care should be taken when removing the reversible blade.

Note

When removing or installing the wheel, the rim could hit the brake rotor and damage the rotor. Work carefully and have a second person to help you.

Tips

– When mounting tires with **unidirectional tread design** make sure the tread pattern is pointed the right way ⇨ *page 233*.
– The wheel bolts should be clean and easy to turn. Check for dirt and corrosion on the mating surfaces of both the wheel and the hub. Remove all dirt from these surfaces before remounting the wheel.
– Do not use the hexagonal socket in the screwdriver handle to loosen or tighten the wheel bolts.

Tires with unidirectional tread design

Tires with unidirectional tread design must be mounted with their tread pattern pointed in the right direction.

Using a spare tire with a tread pattern intended for use in a specific direction

When using a spare tire with a tread pattern intended for use in a specific direction, please note the following:

- The direction of rotation is marked by an **arrow on the side of the tire**.
- If the spare tire has to be installed in the incorrect direction, use the spare tire only temporarily since the tire will not be able to achieve its optimum performance characteristics with regard to aquaplaning, noise and wear.
- We recommend that you pay particular attention to this fact during wet weather and that you adjust your speed to match road conditions.
- Replace the flat tire with a new one and have it installed on your vehicle as soon as possible to restore the handling advantages of a unidirectional tire.
- **Replace the flat tire with a new one and have it installed on your vehicle as soon as possible. Remount the wheel cover.**

Until then, drive with extra care and at reduced speeds.

WARNING

- If you are going to equip your vehicle with tires or rims which differ from those which were factory installed, then be sure to read the information ⇨ *page 214, New tires or wheels*.
- Always make sure the damaged wheel or even a flat tire and the jack and tool kit are properly secured in the luggage compartment and are not loose in the passenger compartment.
- In an accident or sudden maneuver they could fly forward, injuring anyone in the vehicle.
- Always store damaged wheel, jack and tools securely in the luggage compartment. Otherwise, in an accident or sudden maneuver they could fly forward, causing injury to passengers in the vehicle.

Notes on wheel changing

Please read the information ⇨ *page 214, New tires or wheels* if you are going to use a spare tire which is different from the tires on your vehicle.

After you change a tire:

- **Check the tire pressure on the spare immediately after installation.**
- **Have the wheel bolt tightening torque checked with a torque wrench as soon as possible by your authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop.**
- **With steel and alloy wheel rims, the wheel bolts are correctly tightened at a torque of 90 ft lbs. (120 Nm).**
- **If you notice that the wheel bolts are corroded and difficult to turn while changing a tire, they should be replaced before you check the tightening torque.**

Note

Do not use commercially available tire sealants. Otherwise, the electrical components of the tire pressure monitoring system* will no longer work properly and the sensor for the tire pressure monitoring system* will have to be replaced by qualified workshop.

8F0012721BB

Fuses and bulbs

Fuses

Replacing a fuse

A fuse that hast blown will have metal strips that have burned through.

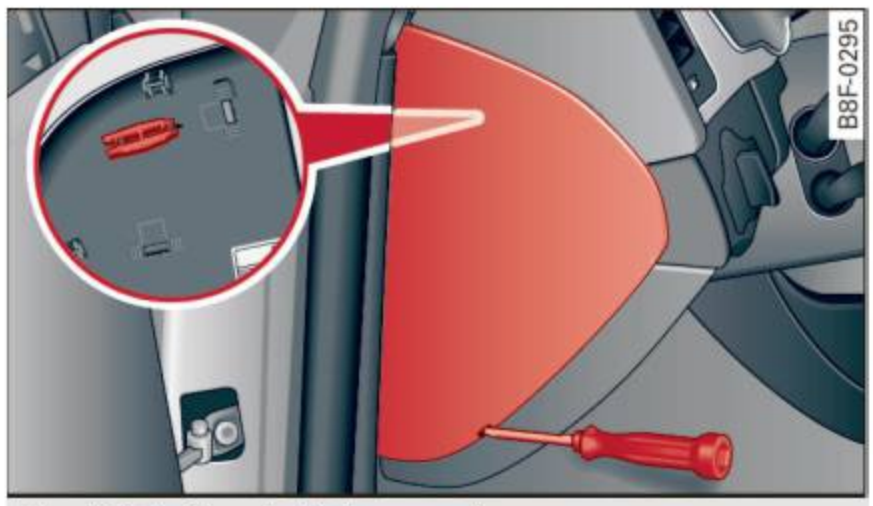


Fig. 192 Left cockpit: fuse panel cover

The fuses are located at the front left and right of the cockpit and behind the trim on the right side of the luggage compartment.

- ▸ Switch the ignition and all electrical equipment off.
- ▸ Check the following table to see which fuse belongs to the equipment.
- ▸ Remove the appropriate cover.
- ▸ Remove the colored plastic clip from the fuse panel, if necessary ⇨ *page 234, fig. 193*. You can dispose of the plastic clip.
- ▸ Remove the clamp from the rear side of the cover ⇨ *fig. 192*.
- ▸ Remove the fuse using the clamp.
- ▸ Replace the blown fuse only with an identical new one.
- ▸ Install the cover.

Fuse color identification

Color	Current in amps
Black	1
Purple	3
Light brown	5
Brown	7.5
Red	10
Blue	15
Yellow	20
White or transparent	25

Color	Current in amps
Green	30
Orange	40

WARNING

Do not repair fuses and never replace a blown fuse with one that has a higher amp rating. This can cause damage to the electrical system and a fire.

Note

If a new fuse burns out again after shortly have you have installed it, have the electrical system checked by your authorized Audi dealer.

Tips

- The following table does not list fuse locations that are not used.
- Some of the equipment items listed are optional or only available on certain model configurations.

Left cockpit fuse assignment

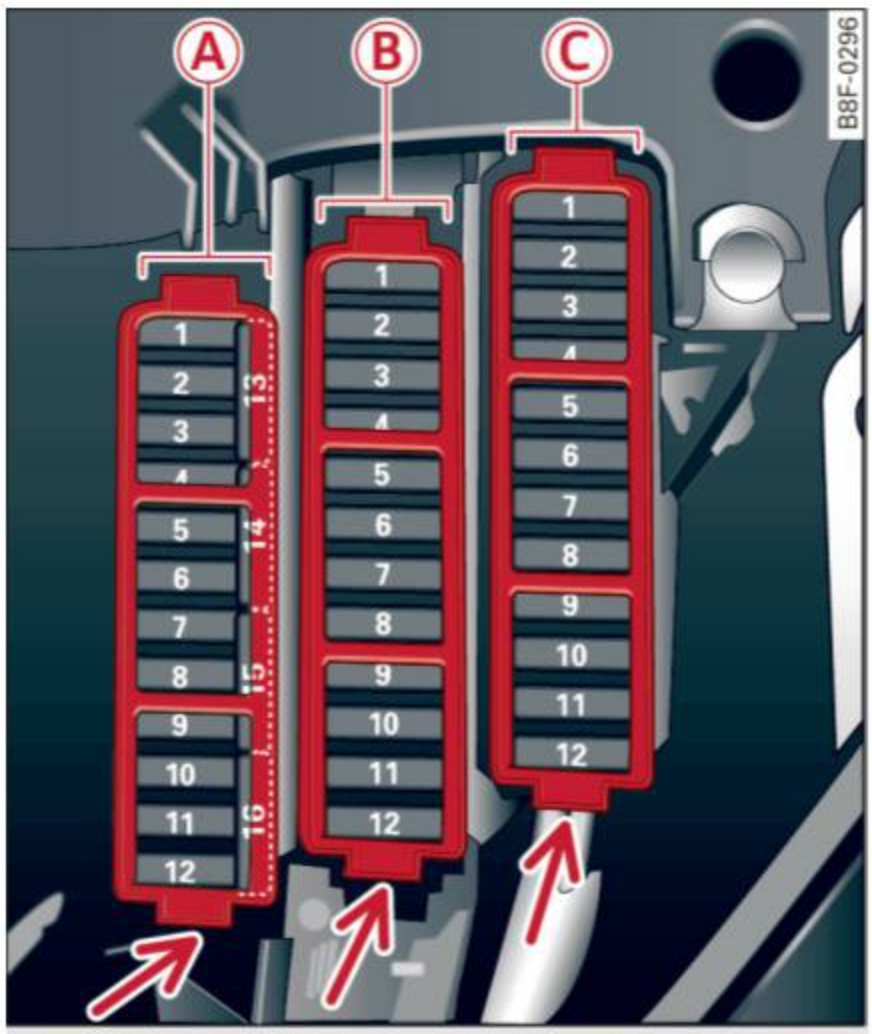


Fig. 193 Left cockpit: fuse panel with plastic clip

Fuse panel Ⓐ (black)

No.	Consumer
1	Dynamic steering
2	Electronic Stabilization Control (module)
3	A/C system pressure sensor, electromechanical parking brake, HomeLink, automatic dimming interior rear view mirror, air quality/outside air sensor, Electronic Stabilization Control (button)
5	Sound actuator
6	Headlight range control/headlight (cornering light)
7	Headlight (cornering light)
8	Control modules (electromechanical parking brake, shock absorber, quattro sport), DCDC converter
9	Adaptive cruise control
10	Shift gate/clutch sensor
11	Side assist
12	Headlight range control, parking system
13	Airbag
14	Rear wiper (allroad)
15	Auxiliary fuse (instrument panel)
16	Auxiliary fuse terminal 15 (engine area)

Fuse panel Ⓑ (brown)

No.	Consumer
2	Brake light sensor
3	Fuel pump
4	Clutch sensor
5	Left seat heating with/without seat ventilation
6	Electronic Stabilization Control (electric)
7	Horn
8	Front left door (window regulator, central locking, mirror, switch, lighting)
9	Windshield wiper motor
10	Electronic Stabilization Control (valves)
11	Two-door models: rear left window regulator; Four-door models: rear left door (window regulator, central locking, switch, lighting)
12	Rain and light sensor

Fuse panel Ⓒ (red)

No.	Consumer
3	Lumbar support
4	Dynamic steering
5	Interior lighting (Cabriolet)
6	Windshield washer system, headlight washer system
7	Vehicle electrical system control module 1
8	Vehicle electrical system control module 1
9	Left rear window regulator motor (Cabriolet)/sunroof
10	Vehicle electrical system control module 1
11	Right rear window regulator (Cabriolet)/ sun shade motor
12	Anti-theft alarm warning system

Right cockpit fuse assignment

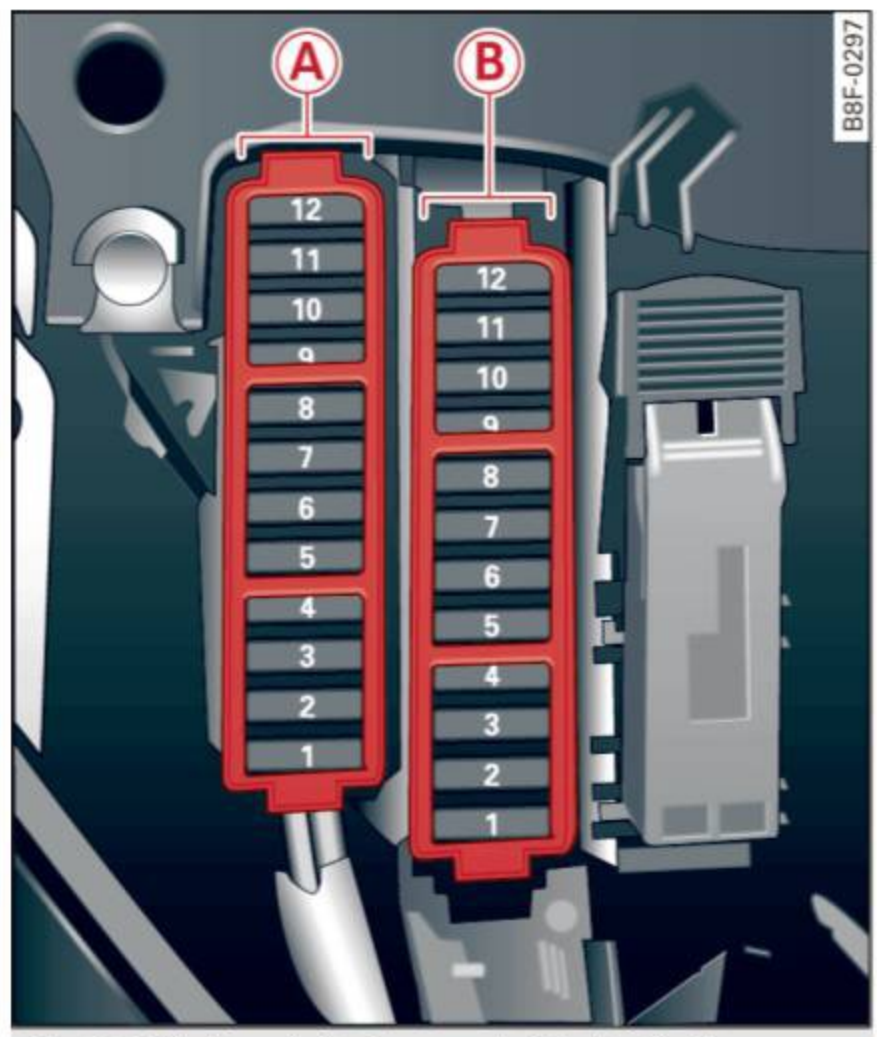


Fig. 194 Right cockpit: fuse panel with plastic clip

8F0012721BB

Fuse panel Ⓐ (black)

No.	Consumer
5	Steering column switch module
7	Terminal 15 diagnostic connector
8	Gateway (Databus diagnostic interface)
9	Supplementary heater

Fuse panel Ⓑ (brown)

No.	Consumer
1	CD/DVD player
2	Wi-Fi
3	MMI/Radio
4	Instrument cluster
5	Gateway (instrument cluster control module)
6	Ignition lock
7	Light switch
8	Climate control system blower
9	Steering column lock
10	Climate control system
11	Terminal 30 diagnostic connector
12	Steering column switch module

Right luggage compartment fuse assignment

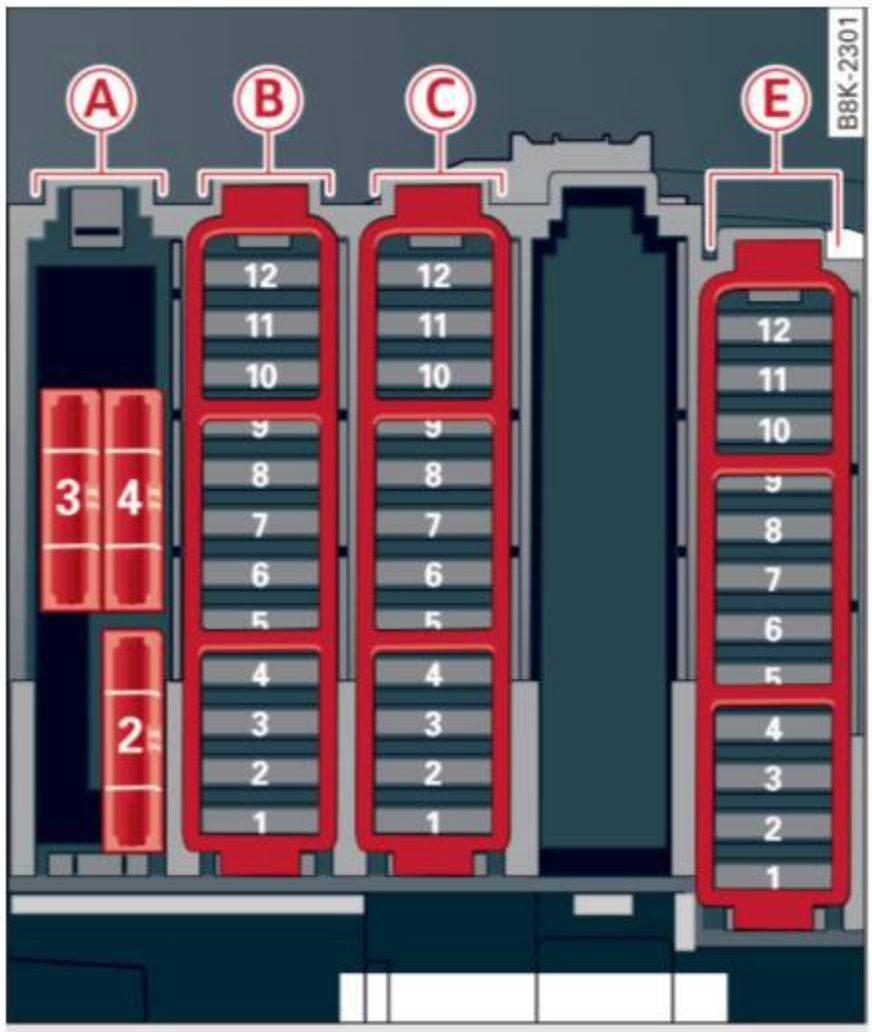


Fig. 195 Right luggage compartment: fuse panel with plastic clip

Fuse panel Ⓐ (black)

No.	Consumer
2	Rear window heater (Cabriolet)
3	Power top latch (Cabriolet)
4	Power top hydraulics (Cabriolet)

Fuse panel Ⓑ (black)

No.	Consumer
1	Luggage compartment lid control module (allroad)/Power top control module (Cabriolet)
2	Retractable rear spoiler (RS 5 Coupe)
5	Electromechanical parking brake
6	Electronic damping control
7	Electromechanical parking brake
8	Rear exterior lighting
9	quattro sport
10	Rear exterior lighting
11	Central locking
12	Terminal 30

▶

Fuse panel Ⓒ (brown)

No.	Consumer
1	Luggage compartment lid control module (allroad)
2	12-volt socket, cigarette lighter
3	DCDC converter path 1
4	DCDC converter path 2, sound amplifier, radio
6	Right upper cabin heating (Cabriolet)
7	Electromechanical parking brake
9	Right front door (window regulator, central locking, mirror, switch, lighting)
10	Left upper cabin heating (Cabriolet)
11	Two-door models: rear right window regulator; Four-door models: rear right door (window regulator, central locking, switch, lighting)
12	Cell phone prep

Fuse panel Ⓔ (black)

No.	Consumer
1	Right front seat heating
4	MMI
5	Radio
6	Rear view camera
7	Rear window heater (allroad)
8	Rear Seat Entertainment

Bulbs

Replacing bulbs

For your safety, we recommend that you have your authorized Audi dealer replace any bulbs for you.

It is becoming increasingly more and more difficult to replace vehicle light bulbs since in many cases, other parts of the car must first be removed before you are able to get to the bulb. This applies especially to the light bulbs in the front of your car which you can only reach through the engine compartment.

Sheet metal and bulb holders can have sharp edges that can cause serious cuts, parts must be correctly taken apart and then properly put back together to help prevent breakage of parts and long term damage from water that can enter housings that have not been properly resealed.

For your safety, we recommend that you have your authorized Audi dealer replace any bulbs for you, since your dealer has the proper tools, the correct bulbs and the expertise.

Gas discharge lamps (Xenon lights)*:

Due to the high electrical voltage, have the bulbs replaced by a qualified technician. Headlights with Xenon light are identified by the high voltage sticker.

WARNING

Changing Xenon lamps without the necessary equipment can cause serious personal injury.

- Bulbs are pressurized and can explode when being changed. Potential risk of injury!
- On vehicles equipped with gas discharge bulbs (Xenon light)* life-threatening injuries can result from improper handling of the high-voltage portions of such lamps!
- Only your authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop should change the bulbs in gas discharge lamps. There are parts with sharp edges on the openings and on the bulb holders that can cause serious cuts. If you are uncertain about what to do, have the work performed by an authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop. Serious personal injury may result from improperly performed work.

Tips

- If you still prefer to replace the light bulbs yourself, be aware that the engine compartment is a hazardous area to work in⇨ *page 193* ⇨ ⚠.
- It is best to ask your authorized Audi dealer whenever you want to change a bulb.

8F0012721BB

Emergency situations

General

This chapter is intended for trained emergency crews and working personnel who have the necessary tools and equipment to perform these operations.

Starting by pushing or towing

Note

Vehicles with an automatic transmission cannot be started by pushing or towing.

Starting with jumper cables

If necessary, the engine can be started by connecting it to the battery of another vehicle.

If the engine should fail to start because of a discharged or weak battery, the battery can be connected to the battery of *another* vehicle, using a **pair of jumper cables** to start the engine.

Jumper cables

Use *only* jumper cables of sufficiently large**cross section** to carry the starter current safely. Refer to the manufacturer's specifications.

Use only jumper cables with *insulated* terminal clamps which are distinctly marked:

plus (+) cable in most cases colored **red**

minus (-) cable in most cases colored **black**.

WARNING

Batteries contain electricity, acid, and gas. Any of these can cause very serious or fatal injury. Follow the instructions below for safe handling of your vehicle's battery.

- Always shield your eyes and avoid leaning over the battery whenever possible.
- A dead battery can freeze at temperatures around 32 °F (0 °C). If the vehicle battery is frozen, you must thaw it before connecting the jump start cables. If you do not, this increases the risk of an explosion and chemical burns. After jump starting the vehicle, drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the vehicle battery checked.
- Do not allow battery acid to contact eyes or skin. Flush any contacted area with water immediately.
- Improper use of a booster battery to start a vehicle may cause an explosion.
- Vehicle batteries generate explosive gases. Keep sparks, flame and lighted cigarettes away from batteries.
- Do not try to jump start any vehicle with a low acid level in the battery.
- The voltage of the booster battery must also have a 12-Volt rating. The capacity (Ah) of the booster battery should not be lower than that of the discharged battery. Use of batteries of different voltage or substantially different "Ah" rating may cause an explosion and personal injury.
- Never charge a frozen battery. Gas trapped in the ice may cause an explosion.
- Never charge or use a battery that has been frozen. The battery case may have be weakened.
- Use of batteries of different voltage or substantially different capacity (Ah) rating may cause an explosion and injury. The capacity (Ah) of the booster battery should not be lower than that of the discharged battery.
- Before you check anything in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇨ *page 193*.

Note

- Applying a higher voltage booster battery will cause expensive damage to sensitive electronic components, such as control units, relays, radio, etc.
- There must be no electrical contact between the vehicles as otherwise current could already start to flow as soon as the positive (+) terminals are connected. ▶

Tips

The discharged battery must be properly connected to the vehicle's electrical system. When jump starting or charging the battery, never connect the negative ground cable to the battery negative post because the battery manager system must be able to detect the battery's state of charge. Always connect the negative ground cable to the negative ground post of the battery manager control unit.

Use of jumper cables

Make sure to connect the jumper cable clamps in exactly the order described below!

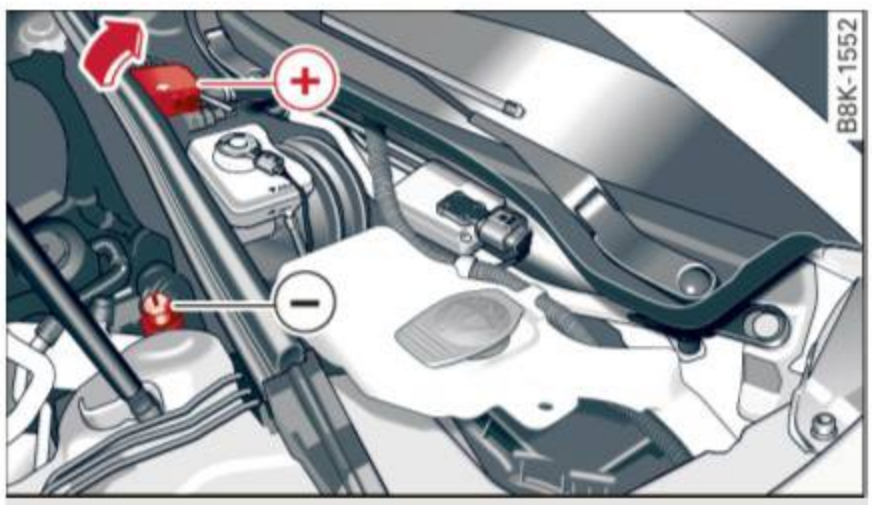


Fig. 196 Engine compartment: Connectors for jumper cables and charger

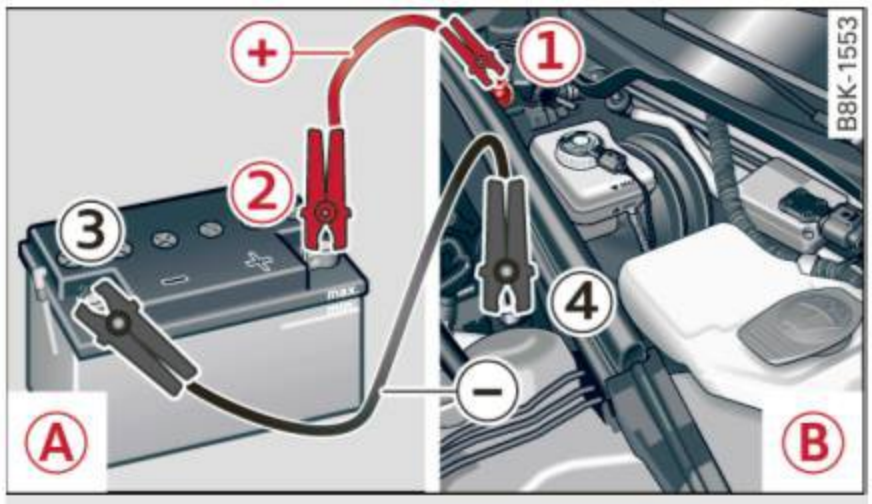


Fig. 197 Jump starting with the battery of another vehicle: Ⓐ booster battery, Ⓑ discharged vehicle battery

The procedure described below for connecting jumper cables is intended to provide a jump start for your vehicle.

Vehicle with discharged battery:

- ▸ Turn off lights and accessories, move lever of automatic transmission to N (Neutral) or P (Park) and set parking brake.

Connect POSITIVE (+) to POSITIVE (+) (red)

- ▸ Remove the cover above the jump start connection.
- ▸ Open the cover on the positive pole ⇨ *fig. 196*.

1. Connect one end of the red positive cable on the **jump start bolt** ⇨ *fig. 197* ① (Bolts under cover = “positive”) of the vehicle to be started Ⓑ.
2. Connect the other end to the positive terminal ② of the booster battery Ⓐ.

Connect NEGATIVE (–) to NEGATIVE (–) (black)

3. Connect one end of the black negative cable to the negative terminal ③ of the booster battery Ⓐ.
4. Connect the other end to the **jump start bolt** ④ (Bolts with hex head = “negative”) of the vehicle to be started Ⓑ.

Starting the engine

- ▸ Start the engine of the vehicle with the booster battery Ⓐ. Run the engine at a moderate speed.
- ▸ Start engine with discharged vehicle battery Ⓑ in the usual manner.
- ▸ If the engine fails to start: do not keep the starter cranking for longer than 10 seconds. Wait for about 30 seconds and then try again.
- ▸ With engine running, remove jumper cables from both vehicles in the exact *reverse* order.
- ▸ Close the cover on the positive pole.

The battery is vented to the outside to prevent gases from entering the vehicle interior. Make sure that the jumper clamps are well connected with their *metal parts in full contact* with the battery terminals.

WARNING

To avoid serious personal injury and damage to the vehicle, heed all warnings and instructions of the jumper cable manufacturer. If in doubt, call for road service.

– Jumper cables must be long enough so that the vehicles do not touch. ▶

– When connecting jumper cables, make sure that they cannot get caught in any moving parts in the engine compartment.
– Do not bend over the batteries - danger of chemical burns!
– The battery cell locking screws must be tightened securely.
– Before you check anything in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇨ *page 193*.

Note

Improper hook-up of jumper cables can ruin the generator.

– Always connect POSITIVE (+) to POSITIVE (+), and NEGATIVE (–) to NEGATIVE (–) ground post of the battery manager control unit.
– Check that all screw plugs on the battery cells are screwed in firmly. If not, tighten plugs prior to connecting clamp on negative battery terminal.
– Please note that the procedure for connecting a jumper cable as described above applies specifically to the case of your vehicle being jump started. When you are giving a jump start to another vehicle, do *not* connect the negative **(–)** cable to the negative **(–)** terminal on the discharged battery ④ ⇨ *fig. 197*. Instead, securely connect the negative **(–)** cable to either a solid metal component that is firmly bolted to the engine block or to the engine block itself. If the battery that is being charged does not vent to the outside, escaping battery gas could ignite and explode!

Towing with a tow truck

General hints

Your Audi requires special handling for towing.

The following information is to be used by commercial tow truck operators who know how to operate their equipment safely.

– **Never tow your Audi, towing will cause damage to the engine and transmission.**
– **Never wrap the safety chains or winch cables around the brake lines.**
– **To prevent unnecessary damage, your Audi must be transported with a flat bed truck.**
– **To load the vehicle on to the flat bed, use the towing loop found in the vehicle tools and attach to the front or rear anchorage** ⇨ *page 240* and ⇨ *page 241*.

WARNING

A vehicle being towed is not safe for passengers. Never allow anyone to ride in a vehicle being towed, for any reason.

Front towing loop

Do not install the front towing loop until it is needed.



Fig. 198 Front bumper: removing the cover cap



Fig. 199 Front bumper: screwing in the towing loop

The towing loop fits into the threaded hole located on the right side of the front bumper and covered by a small cover when not in use.

▸ Remove the towing loop from the vehicle toolkit ⇨ *page 227*.
▸ Press the cover in by applying short strong pressure to the bottom part to release it from the bumper ⇨ *fig. 198*. ▶

▸ Screw the towing loop tightly into the threaded hole as far as it will go ⇨ *fig. 199* and tighten it with the wheel wrench.

When it is no longer needed, unscrew the towing loop and put it back into the vehicle toolkit. Be sure to have the towing loop stored in the vehicle at all times.

WARNING

If the towing loop is not screwed in as far as it will go, the thread can pull out when the vehicle is towed - potential risk of an accident.

Rear towing loop

Do not install the rear towing loop until it is needed.



Fig. 200 Rear bumper: cover

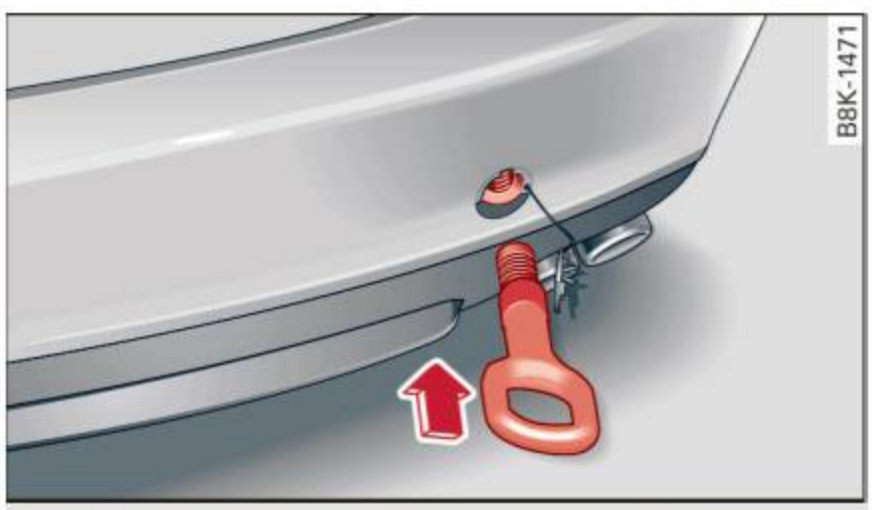


Fig. 201 Rear bumper: Screwing in towing loop

On the right side of the rear bumper there is a threaded hole for the towing loop. The threaded hole is protected by a cover.

▸ Remove the towing loop from the vehicle toolkit ⇨ *page 227*.
▸ Press the cover in by applying short strong pressure to the bottom part to release it from the bumper ⇨ *fig. 200*.

▸ Screw the towing loop tightly into the threaded hole as far as it will go ⇨ *fig. 201* and tighten it with the wheel wrench.

Unscrew the towing loop again after use and install the cover in the bumper. Install the cover in the bumper. Return the towing loop to the toolkit. Be sure to have the towing loop stored in the vehicle at all times.

WARNING

If the towing loop is not screwed in as far as it will go, the thread can pull out when the vehicle is towed - potential risk of an accident.

Loading the vehicle onto a flat bed truck

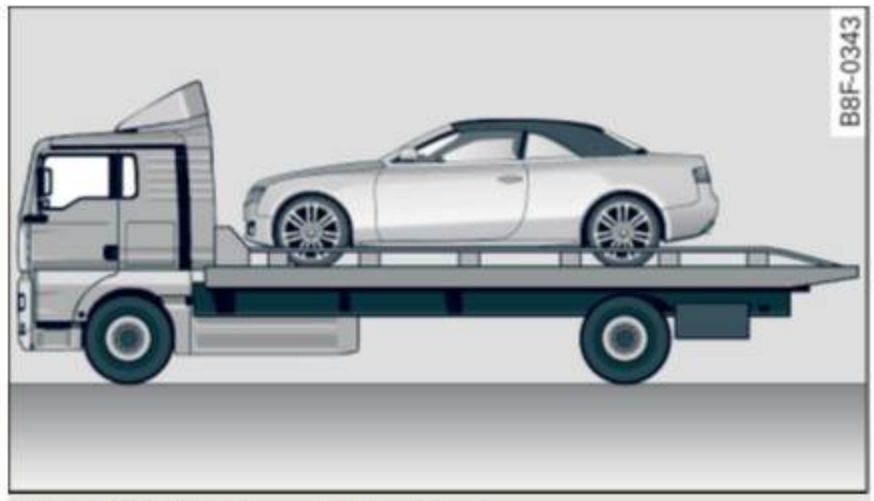


Fig. 202 Vehicle on flat bed truck

Front hook up

▸ Align the vehicle with the centerline of the car carrier ramp.
▸ Attach the winch hook to the front towline eye previously installed.

Rear hook up

▸ Align the vehicle with the centerline of the car carrier ramp.
▸ Attach the winch hook to the rear towline eye previously installed.

Tips

Check carefully to make sure the hook-up is secure before moving the car up the flatbed truck ramp.

Raising the vehicle

Lifting with workshop hoist and with floor jack

The vehicle may only be lifted at the lifting points illustrated.

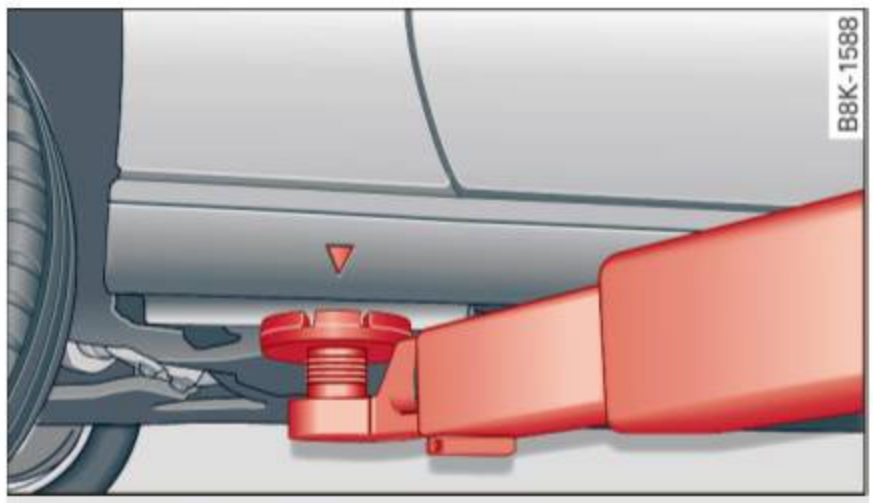


Fig. 203 Front lifting point

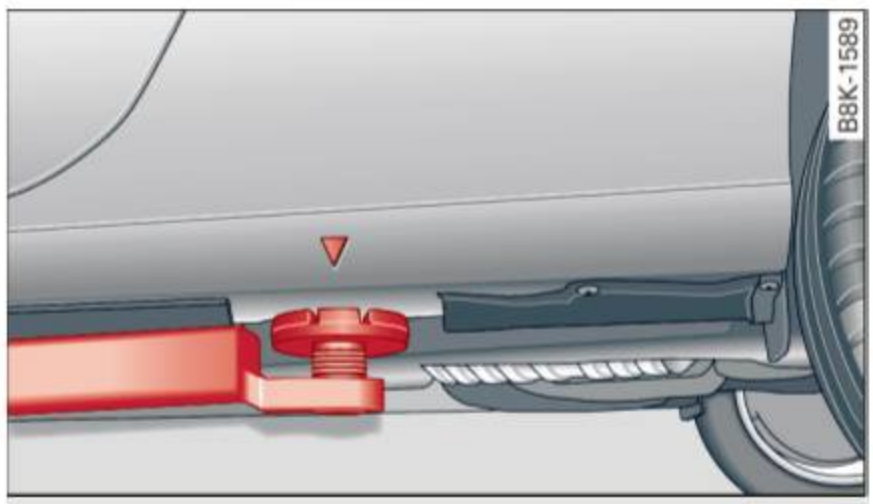


Fig. 204 Rear lifting point

- ▸ Read and heed WARNING ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Locate lifting points ⇨ *fig. 203* and ⇨ *fig. 204*.
- ▸ Adjust lifting arms of workshop hoist or floor jack to match vehicle lifting points.
- ▸ Insert a rubber pad between the floor jack/ workshop hoist and the lifting points.

If you must lift your vehicle with a floor jack to work underneath, be sure the vehicle is safely supported on stands intended for this purpose.

Front lifting point

The lifting point is located on the floor pan reinforcement about at the same level as the jack mounting point ⇨ *fig. 203*. **Do not lift the vehicle at the vertical sill reinforcement.**

Rear lifting point

The lifting point is located on the vertical reinforcement of the lower sill for the onboard jack ⇨ *fig. 204*.

Lifting with vehicle jack

Refer to ⇨ *page 231*.

⚠ WARNING

- To reduce the risk of serious injury and vehicle damage.
  - Always lift the vehicle only at the special workshop hoist and floor jack lift points illustrated ⇨ *fig. 203* and ⇨ *fig. 204*.
  - Failure to lift the vehicle at these points could cause the vehicle to tilt or fall from a lift if there is a change in vehicle weight distribution and balance. This might happen, for example, when heavy components such as the engine block or transmission are removed.
- When removing heavy components like these, anchor vehicle to hoist or add corresponding weights to maintain the center of gravity. Otherwise, the vehicle might tilt or slip off the hoist, causing serious personal injury.

Note

- Be aware of the following points before lifting the vehicle:
  - **The vehicle should never be lifted or jacked up from underneath the engine oil pan, the transmission housing, the front or rear axle or the body side members. This could lead to serious damage.**
  - **To avoid damage to the underbody or chassis frame, a rubber pad must be inserted between the floor jack and the lift points.**
  - **Before driving over a workshop hoist, check that the vehicle weight does not exceed the permissible lifting capacity of the hoist.**
  - **Before driving over a workshop hoist, ensure that there is sufficient clearance between the hoist and low parts of the vehicle.**

Technical data

Vehicle identification

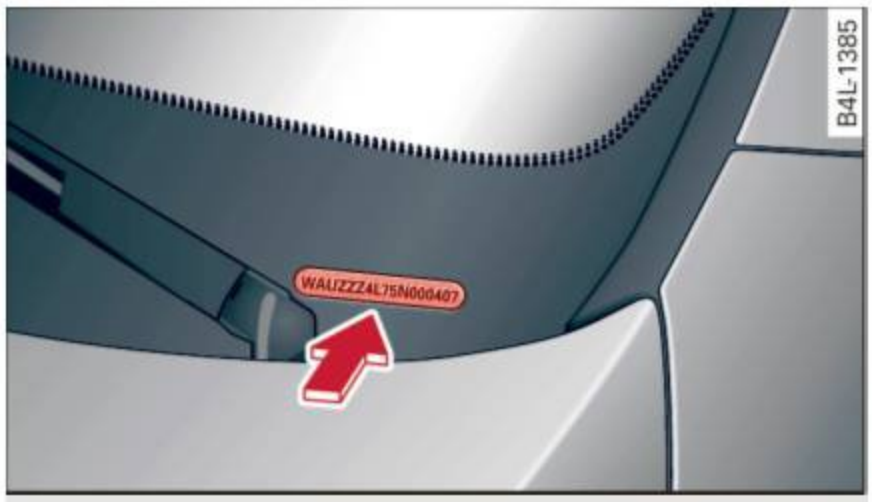


Fig. 205 Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) plate: location on driver's side dash panel

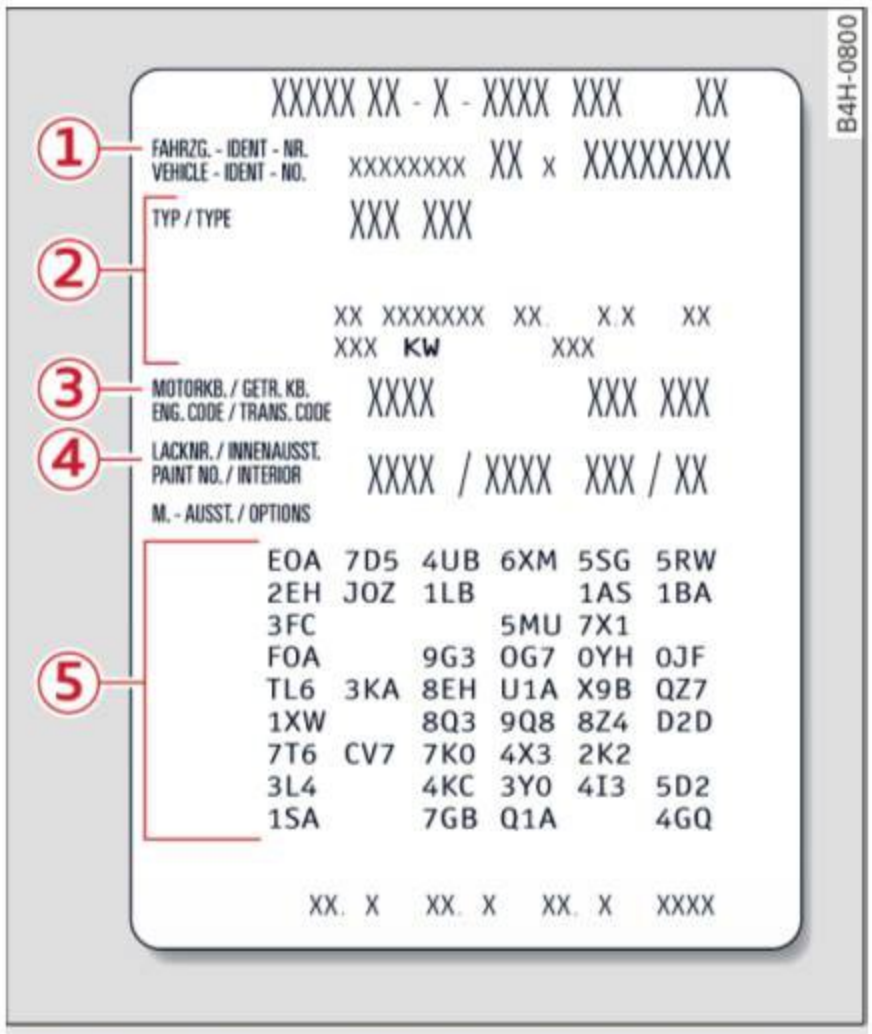


Fig. 206 The vehicle identification label: inside the luggage compartment

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

The Vehicle Identification Number is located in different places:

– under the windshield on the driver's side ⇨ *fig. 205*.
– in the radio or in the MMI*: Select: CAR function button > **Vehicle ID number (VIN)** or select: CAR function button > **Car systems*** control button > **Servicing & checks** > **VIN number**.
– on the vehicle identification label.

Vehicle identification label

The vehicle identification label is located in the luggage compartment near the battery.

The label ⇨ *fig. 206* shows the following vehicle data:

① Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)
② Vehicle type, engine output, transmission
③ Engine and transmission code
④ Paint number and interior
⑤ Optional equipment numbers

The information of the vehicle identification label can also be found in your Warranty & Maintenance booklet.

Safety compliance sticker

The safety compliance sticker is your assurance that your new vehicle complies with all applicable Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards which were in effect at the time the vehicle was manufactured. You can find this sticker on the door jamb on the driver's side. It shows the month and year of production and the vehicle identification number of your vehicle (perforation) as well as the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) and the Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR).

High voltage warning label

The high voltage warning label is located in the engine compartment next to the engine hood release. The spark ignition system complies with the Canadian standard ICES-002.

Weights

Gross Vehicle Weight Rating

The Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR), and the Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) for front and rear are listed on a sticker on the door jamb on the driver's side.

The Gross Vehicle Weight Rating includes the weight of the basic vehicle plus full fuel tank, oil and coolant, plus maximum load, which includes passenger weight (150 lbs/68 kg per designated seating position) and luggage weight ⇨ ⚠. ▶

Gross Axle Weight Rating

The Gross Axle Weight Rating is the maximum load that can be applied at each axle of the vehicle ⇨ ⚠.

Vehicle capacity weight

The vehicle capacity weight (max. load) is listed on the driver's side B-pillar.

WARNING

- The actual Gross Axle Weight Rating at the front and rear axles should not exceed the permissible weights, and their combination must not exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating.
- Exceeding permissible weight ratings can result in vehicle damage, accidents and personal injury.

Note

- The vehicle capacity weight figures apply when the load is distributed evenly in the vehicle (passengers and luggage). When transporting a heavy load in the luggage compartment, carry the load as near to the rear axle as possible so that the vehicle's handling is not impaired.
- Do not exceed the maximum permissible axle Ioads or the maximum gross vehicle weight. Always remember that the vehicle's handling will be affected by the extra load. Therefore, adjust your speed accordingly.
- Always observe local regulations.

Dimensions

		A5 Cabriolet	S5 Cabriolet
Length	in (mm)	182.1 (4626)	182.7 (4640)
Width	in (mm)	73.0 (1854)	73.0 (1854)
Width (across mirrors)	in (mm)	79.5 (2020)	79.5 (2020)
Height (unloaded)[a)]	in (mm)	54.4 (1383)	54.3 (1380)

a) The height of the vehicle depends on the tires and the suspension.

When driving up steep ramps, on rough roads, over curbs, etc. it is important to remember that some parts of your vehicle, such as spoilers or exhaust system components, may be close to the ground. Be careful not to damage them.

Capacities

Fuel tank: total capacity	gal (liters)	16.1 (61.0)
Windshield and headlight* washer fluid container	quarts (liters)	4.8 (4.5)

Gasoline engines

A5 Cabriolet 2.0, 4 cylinder

Maximum output SAE net	hp @ rpm	220 @ 4450-6000
Maximum torque SAE net	lb-ft @ rpm	259 @ 1500-4300
Displacement	CID (cm^3)	121 (1984)
Engine oil with filter change[1)]		
Fuel	**Premium unleaded (91 AKI)** ⇨ *page 188, Fuel* or **Bio-ethanol (E85)** ⇨ *page 189, Ethanol fuel (Bio-ethanol).*	

S5 Cabriolet 3.0, 6 cylinder

Maximum output SAE net	hp @ rpm	333 @ 5500-6500
Maximum torque SAE net	lb-ft @ rpm	325 @ 2900-5300
Displacement	CID (cm^3)	182.8 (2995)
Engine oil with filter change[1)]		
Fuel	**Premium unleaded (91 AKI)** ⇨ *page 188, Fuel*	

[1)] For specific engine oil capacities, please see the most current information for the USA at http://www.audiusa.com/help/maintenance or for Canada at http://www.audi.ca/ca/brand/ en/your_audi/audi_services_and/Care_and_Maintenance/schedule.html or call 800-822-2834.

8F0012721BB

Consumer information

Warranty coverages

Your Audi is covered by the following warranties:

– *New Vehicle Limited Warranty*
– *Limited Warranty Against Corrosion Perforation*
– *Emissions Control System Warranty*
– *Emissions Performance Warranty*
– *California Emissions Control Warranty (USA vehicles only)*
– *California Emissions Performance Warranty (USA vehicles only)*

Detailed information regarding your warranties can be found in your **Warranty & Maintenance booklet**.

Operating your vehicle outside the U.S.A. or Canada

Government regulations in the United States and Canada require that automobiles meet specific emission regulations and safety standards. Therefore, vehicles built for the U.S.A. and Canada differ from vehicles sold in other countries.

If you plan to take your vehicle outside the continental limits of the United States or Canada, there is the possibility that:

– unleaded fuels for vehicles with catalytic converter may not be available;
– fuel may have a considerably lower octane rating. Improper fuel may cause engine damage;
– service may be inadequate due to lack of proper service facilities, tools or testing equipment;
– replacement parts may not be readily available.
– Navigation systems for vehicles built for the U.S.A. and Canada will not necessarily work in Europe, and may not work in other countries outside of North America.

Note

Audi cannot be responsible for mechanical damage that could result from inadequate fuel, service or parts availability.

Audi Service Repair Manuals and Literature

Audi Official Factory Service Manuals and Literature are published as soon as possible after model introduction. Service manuals and literature are available to order from the Audi Technical Literature Ordering Center at:

www.audi.techliterature.com

Maintenance

General

Your vehicle has been designed to help keep maintenance requirements to a minimum. However, a certain amount of regular maintenance is still necessary to assure your vehicle's safety, economy and reliability. For detailed vehicle maintenance consult your Warranty & Maintenance booklet.

Under difficult operating conditions, for example at extremely low outside temperatures, in very dusty regions, when towing a trailer very frequently, etc., some service work should be performed between the intervals specified. This applies particularly to:

– oil changes, and
– cleaning or replacing the air filter.

For the sake of the environment

By regularly maintaining your vehicle, you help make sure that emission standards are maintained, thus minimizing adverse effects on the environment.

Important considerations for you and your vehicle

The increasing use of electronics, sophisticated fuel injection and emission control systems, and the generally increasing technical complexity of ▶

today's automobiles, have steadily reduced the scope of maintenance and repairs which can be carried out by vehicle owners. **Also, safety and environmental** concerns place very strict limits on the nature of repairs and adjustments to engine and transmission parts which an owner can perform.

Maintenance, adjustments and repairs usually require special tools, testing devices and other equipment available to specially trained workshop personnel in order to assure proper performance, reliability and safety of the vehicle and its many systems.

Improper maintenance, adjustments and repairs can impair the operation and reliability of your vehicle and even void your vehicle warranty. Therefore, proof of servicing in accordance with the maintenance schedule may be a condition for upholding a possible warranty claim made within the warranty period.

Above all, operational safety can be adversely affected, creating unnecessary risks for you and your passengers.

If in doubt about any servicing, have it done by your authorized Audi dealer or any properly equipped and qualified workshop. We strongly urge you to give your authorized Audi dealer the opportunity to perform all scheduled maintenance and necessary repairs. Your dealer has the facilities, original parts and trained specialists to keep your vehicle running properly.

Performing limited maintenance yourself

The following pages describe a limited number of procedures which can be performed on your vehicle with ordinary tools, should the need arise and trained personnel be unavailable. Before performing any of these procedures, always thoroughly read all of the applicable text and carefully follow the instructions given. Always rigorously observe the **WARNINGS** provided.

Before you check anything in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇨ ⚠ **and** ⇨ ⚠ *in Working in the engine compartment on page 193*.

WARNING

- Serious personal injury may occur as a result of improperly performed maintenance, adjustments or repairs.
- Always be extremely careful when working on the vehicle. Always follow commonly accepted safety practices and general common sense. Never risk personal injury.
- Do not attempt any of the maintenance, checks or repairs described on the following pages if you are not fully familiar with these or other procedures with respect to the vehicle, or are uncertain how to proceed.
- Do not do any work without the proper tools and equipment. Have the necessary work done by your authorized Audi dealer or any properly equipped and qualified workshop.
- The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a potentially hazardous area. Never reach into the area around or touch the radiator fan. It is temperature controlled and can switch on suddenly - even when the engine is off and the ignition key has been removed. The radiator fan switches on automatically when the coolant reaches a certain temperature and will continue to run until the coolant temperature drops.
- Always remove the ignition key before anyone gets under the vehicle.
- Always support your vehicle with safety stands if it is necessary to work underneath the vehicle. The jack supplied with the vehicle is not adequate for this purpose and could collapse causing serious personal injury.
- If you must work underneath the vehicle with the wheels on the ground, always make sure the vehicle is on level ground, that the wheels are always securely blocked and that the engine cannot be started.
- Always make sure the transmission selector lever (automatic transmission) is in "P" (Park position) and the park brake is firmly applied.

▶

8F0012721BB

For the sake of the environment

– Changing the engine settings will adversely affect emission levels. This is detrimental to the environment and increases fuel consumption.
– Always observe environmental regulations when disposing of old engine oil, used brake fluid, dirty engine coolant, spent batteries or worn out tires.
– Undeployed airbag modules and pretensioners might be classified as Perchlorate Material -special handling may apply, see www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate. When the vehicle or parts of the restraint system including airbag modules safety belts with pretensioners are scrapped, all applicable laws and regulations must be observed. Your authorized Audi dealer is familiar with these requirements and we recommend that you have your dealer perform this service for you.

Accessories and technical changes

Additional accessories and parts replacement

Always consult an authorized Audi dealer before purchasing accessories.

Your vehicle incorporates the latest safety design features ensuring a high standard of active and passive safety.

This safety could be compromised by non-approved changes to the vehicle. For this reason, if parts have to be replaced, please observe the following points when installing additional accessories:

Approved Audi accessories and genuine Audi parts are available from authorized Audi dealer.

These dealers also have the necessary facilities, tools and trained specialists to install the parts and accessories properly.

WARNING

Using the wrong spare parts or using non-approved accessories can cause damage to the vehicle and serious personal injury.
– Use only accessories expressly approved by Audi and genuine Audi spare parts
– These parts and accessories have been specially designed to be used on your vehicle.
– Never install accessories such as telephone cradles or beverage holders on airbag covers or within the airbag deployment zones. Doing so will increase the risk of injury if airbags are triggered in an accident!
– Before you check anything in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇨ *page 193*.

Note

– If items other than genuine Audi spare parts, add-on equipment and accessory items are used or if repair work is not performed according to specified methods, this can result in severe damage to your vehicle's engine and body (such as corrosion) and adversely affect your vehicle's warranty.
– If emergency repairs must be performed elsewhere, have the vehicle examined by an authorized Audi dealer as soon as possible.
– The manufacturer cannot be held liable for damage which occurs due to failure to comply with these stipulations.

Technical Modifications

Our guidelines must be complied with when technical modifications are made.

Always consult an authorized Audi dealer **before** starting work on any modifications.

This will help ensure that vehicle function, performance and safety are not impaired ⇨ ⚠.

Attempting to work on electronic components and the software used with them can cause malfunctions. Because of the way electronic components are interconnected with each other, such malfunctions can also have an adverse affect on other systems that are not directly involved. This ▶

means that you risk both a substantial reduction in the operational safety of your vehicle and an increased wear of vehicle parts ⇨ ⚠.

Authorized Audi dealers will perform this work in a professional and competent manner or, in special cases, refer you to a professional company that specializes in such modifications.

⚠ WARNING

Improper repairs and modifications can change the way vehicle systems work and cause serious personal injury.

Note

If emergency repairs must be performed elsewhere, have the vehicle examined by an authorized Audi dealer as soon as possible.

Declaration of Compliance, Telecommunications and Electronic Systems

Radio Frequency Devices and Radiocommunication Equipment User Manual Notice.

The manufacturer is not responsible for any radio or TV interference caused by unauthorized modifications to this equipment.

Devices

The following devices each comply with FCC Part 15.19, FCC Part 15.21 and RSS-Gen Issue 1:

– Adaptive cruise control*
– Convenience key*
– Side assist*
– Cell phone package*
– Electronic immobilizer
– HomeLink universal remote control*
– Remote control key

FCC Part 15.19

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and

(2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC Part 15.21

CAUTION:

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

RSS-Gen Issue 1

Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) this device may not cause interference, and

(2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

8F0012721BB

A

A/C (automatic climate control) 67
Accessories 248
Active lane assist
  Cleaning the camera area 183
Active rollover protection system 119
  Retracting rollover protection 120
Adaptive cruise control 88
  Cleaning the sensor 183
  Messages 95
  Request for driver intervention 93
  Setting the driving program 93
Adaptive dampers 101
Adaptive light 48
Adaptive Light (defective) 19
Adding
  Engine coolant 200
  Engine oil 197
  Windshield washer fluid 206
Additional accessories 248
Additives
  Engine oil 197
Adjustable steering column 71
Adjusting
  Air distribution (automatic climate control) .68
  Instrument illumination 51
  Steering column 71
  Temperature (automatic climate control) . 68
Airbag 130
  Warning/indicator lights 17
Airbag system 148
  Advanced Airbag-System 134
  Advanced Airbag System components . . . 136
  Care 143
  Children 151
  Child restraints 152
  Components (front airbags) 136
  Danger of fitting a child safety seat on the front passenger seat 131
  Disposal 143
  Front airbags 134, 135
  How do the front airbags work? 138
  How many airbags does my vehicle have? 136
  How the Advanced Airbag System components work together 138
  Important information 130
  Important safety instructions on the knee airbag system 146
  Knee airbags 144
  Monitoring 140
  PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light 140
  Repairs 143
  Safety instructions 142
  Side airbags 146
  Warning/Indicator lights 140
  Weight-sensing mat 151
  When must the system be inspected? . . . 140
all-wheel drive 172
All season tires 222
Alternator
  refer to Generator 14
Anti-freeze
  refer to Engine coolant system 199
Anti-lock braking system
  Warning/indicator lights 16, 17
Anti-Lock Braking System 167
Anti-slip regulation
  Warning/indicator lights 16
Anti-Slip Regulation 167
Anti-theft alarm system 27
Anti-theft systems
  Electronic immobilizer 33
Armrest 60
Ashtray 62
Audi braking guard
  refer to braking guard 88
Audi drive select 101
  Adaptive dampers 101
  Description 101
  Dynamic steering 101
  Setting the driving mode 102
  Sport differential 101
Audi Service Repair Manuals and Literature 246
AUTO
  Automatic climate control 68
  Automatic headlights 48
Automatic belt retractor 126
Automatic climate control
  Air vents 68
  Operation 67
  Setup 69
Automatic power top 40
Automatic Shift Lock (ASL) 82

Automatic transmission 81
Automatic Shift Lock (ASL) 82
Driving 83
Emergency mode 86
Emergency release 87
Kick-down 85
Manual shift program 85
Removal lock (ignition key) 71
Selector lever 81
Automatic wipers 53
Auto Safety Hotline 118
Average speed 22
Avoid damaging the vehicle 175

B

Battery 14
Battery location inside the luggage compartment 203
Charge level 173
Charging 205
Energy management 173
Important warnings when working on the battery 203
Jump starting 238
Replacing the battery 206
Working on the battery 203
Before driving 111
Belt positioner 125
Belt tensioners 128
Bio-ethanol (Fuel) 189
Blended gasoline 188
Blower (automatic climate control) 68
Booster seats 158
Brake fluid
Changing the brake fluid 202
Checking the brake fluid level 202
Brake system
Anti-lock braking system 17
Brake fluid specifications for refill and replacement 202
Brake light defective 19
Brake power assist unit 170
Brakes 170
Ceramic brakes 170
Electromechanical parking brake 76
Warning/indicator lights 13
Worn brake pads symbol 18
Braking
Brake assist 167
Emergency braking function 77
braking guard 88
Messages 95
Settings 95
Break-in period
Brake pads 170
Tires 175
Breaking in 175
New tires 214
Bulbs 237

C

California Proposition 65 Warning 194
Battery specific 204
Capacities 244
Engine oil 195
Care 182
Cargo area
refer to Luggage compartment 63, 116
Catalytic converter 176
Center armrest 60
Central locking 27
Central locking switch 31
Convenience key 30
Remote control key 30
Ceramic brake rotors
New brake pads 170
Certification 249
Changing engine oil 198
Checking
Engine coolant level 199
Child restraints
Danger of using child restraints in the front seat 131
Where can I get additional information about child restraints and their use? 166
Child restraint system anchors 163
Child safety 150
Important safety instructions for using child safety seats 153
Installing a child restraint using the LATCH system 165

Lower anchorages 164
Mounting and releasing the anchorage hook 165
Child safety seats
Booster seats 158
Convertible child seats 156
Danger of using child restraints in the front seat 131
How do I properly install a child safety seat in my vehicle? 153
Infant seats 155
LATCH system 165
Safety instructions 153
Unused safety belts on the rear seat 155
Child seats 155
Securing 159
Cigarette lighter 62
Cleaning 182
Cleaning/removing ice from windows 184
Cleaning Alcantara 185
Cleaning artificial leather 185
Cleaning carbon parts 184, 185
Cleaning controls 184
Cleaning decorative parts/trim 184
Cleaning decorative parts and trim 184
Cleaning displays 184
Cleaning exhaust tail pipes 183
Cleaning plastic parts 184
Cleaning rims 183
Cleaning seat covers 185
Cleaning textiles 185
Cleaning the tail lights 183
Cleaning the wind deflector 184
Climate control system 66
Automatic recirculation 69
Supplementary heater 69
synchronizing 69
Clock 10
Closing/opening
at the lock cylinder 32
by remote control 30
with the central locking switch 31
with the convenience key 30
Coming home 49
Compact spare tire 227
also refer to Spare tire 227
Compass in the mirror 55
Compliance 249
Consumer information 246
Consumer Information 118
Contacting NHTSA 118
Convenience key
Indicator lights 75
Starting engine (START ENGINE STOP button) 73
Stopping the engine (START ENGINE STOP button) 74
Switching on ignition 73
unlocking/locking 30
Convenience opening/closing 35
Convertible child safety seats 156
Convertible locking retractor
Activating 161
Deactivating 162
Using to secure a child safety seat 161
Coolant system 199
Cooling mode (automatic climate control) . . 67
Cooling System
Expansion tank 199
Cornering light 48
Cruise control
Changing speed 80
Presetting your speed 80
Switching off 80
Switching on 79
Cruising range 22
Cupholder 63

D

Data recorder 169
Date display 10
Daytime running lights 48, 49
Declaration of compliance
Adaptive cruise control 249
Audi side assist 249
Cell phone package 249
Convenience key 249
Electronic immobilizer 249
HomeLink universal remote control 249
Remote control key 249
Defective light bulb warning 19
Defrosting (windows) 68

Determining correct load limit 221
Digital clock 10
Digital compass 55
Dimensions 244
Dimming the rearview mirror 52
Doors
emergency locking 32
Driver information system 21
Open door or front lid warning 21
Outside temperature display 21
Sound system display 21
Driver seat
refer to Seating position 112
Driving economically 177
Driving safely 111
Driving through water 175
Driving time 22
Dust filter
refer to Pollutant filter (automatic A/C system) 66
Dynamic steering 101, 167, 171

E

E85 (Fuel) 189
Easy entry function 59
Efficiency program 24
Fuel economy messages 24
Memory levels 22
Other equipment 24
Electro-mechanical power assist 171
Electromechanical parking brake
Emergency braking 77
Indicator light 76
Parking 76
Releasing and closing 76
Starting assist 77
Starting from rest 77
Starting off with a trailer 77
Warning/indicator lights 14
Electronic differential lock
Warning/indicator lights 16
Electronic Differential Lock 167
Electronic differential lock (EDL)
Warning/indicator lights 17
Electronic immobilizer 10, 33
Electronic power control
(EPC) warning/indicator light 18
Electronic speed limiter 26
Electronic stabilization control
Sport mode 168
Electronic Stabilization Control 167
Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC)
Warning/indicator lights 16
Emergency actuation
Doors 32
Ignition key 30
Emergency braking 77
Emergency flasher 50
Warning/indicator lights 20
Emergency key 28
Starting engine 72
Emergency operation
Emergency braking function (parking brake) ..77
Luggage compartment lid 34
Power top 44
Emergency starting 238
Energy management 173
Battery power 14
Driver notification 14
Engine
Compartment 195
Coolant 199
Hood 193
Starting 71, 73
Starting with jumper cables 238
Stopping 73, 74
Engine compartment 195
Safety instructions 193
Working the engine compartment 193
Engine coolant
Indicator light 15
Engine coolant system 199
Adding coolant 200
Checking coolant level 199
Checking the engine coolant level 199
Radiator fan 201
Engine coolant temperature
Temperature gauge 8
Engine hood
Closing 193
How to release the hood 193

Engine oil 195
Adding 197
Additives 197
Changing 198
Check oil level 197
Consumption 197
Indicator light 15, 18
Oil consumption 196
Pressure malfunction 15
Sensor defective 18
Specification and viscosity 195
Engine speed limitation 18
Environment
Catalytic converter 176
Disposing of your vehicle battery 206
Driving at high speeds 177
Fuel 190
Leaks under your vehicle 193
Letting the vehicle stand and warm up . . . 177
Proper disposal of drained brake fluid . . . 202
Proper disposal of drained engine coolant 200
Proper disposal of drained engine oil 197, 198
Recycling used engine oil 197
Unleaded fuel 188
What should I do with an old battery? . . . 206
EPC
refer to Electronic power control 18
Ethyl alcohol (Fuel) 189
Event Data Recorder (EDR) 169
Expansion tank 199
Exterior lighting 48
Exterior mirrors
Adjusting 51
Dimming 52
Heating 51

F

Fan
Radiator 201
Fastening
Booster seats 158
Convertible child safety seats 156
Infant seats 155
flexible fuel 189
Floor mats 116
Fog lights/rear fog light(s) 48
Folding the rear seats 64
Foot pedals 116
For the sake of the environment
Environmentally-friendly driving 177
Gasoline fumes and the environment 190
Letting the engine warm up 71, 73
Refueling 190
Saving fuel by early upshifting 9
Front airbags
Description 134
How they work 138
Frontal collisions and the laws of physics . . 123
Front passenger's door emergency locking . . 32
Front seats
Adjusting 113
Child restraints in the front seat 131
Upper cabin heating 69
Fuel
Additives 188
Blended gasoline 188
Consumption 22
Fuel gauge 10
Gasoline additives 190
Low fuel level symbol 18
Octane rating 188
Recommendation 188
Refuelling 190
Reserve 10
Saving fuel 177
Tank capacity 244
Tank system 18
Unlocking the fuel filler flap by hand 192
Fuel economy messages (efficiency program) 24
Fuel filler flap
Unlocking the fuel filler flap by hand 192
Fuses
Assignment 234, 235, 236
Replacing 234

G

Garage door opener (HomeLink) 36
Gas discharge lamps 237
Gauges
Engine coolant temperature 8
Fuel gauge 10
Tachometer 9
General illustration
Instruments and controls 6

Generator
Warning/indicator lights 14
Glossary of tire and loading terminology . . 209
Glove compartment 63
Valet parking 36
GPS controlled clock 10
Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) 243

H

Head lights
Cleaning 183
Headlights
Cleaning system 53
Defective 19
Headlight range control 19
Left hand drive, right hand drive 50
Travel mode 50
Headlight washer reservoir 206
Head restraints 114
Adjusting 60, 114
Heated
exterior mirrors 51
rear window 68
seats 68
windshield washer spray nozzles 53
Heating 66
Heavy clothing and safety belts 124
High beam 49
High voltage warning label 243
Hill descent control 84
HomeLink (garage door opener) 36
Hood
Opening 193
Release lever 193
Horn 6
How are child restraint system anchors related to child safety 163
How many airbags does my vehicle have? . . 136
How safety belt pretensioners work 128

I

Ignition
switching on/off 71
Ignition key
Emergency unlocking 30
Ignition lock 71
Indicator light 16
Malfunction 20
Imbalance (wheels) 215
Immobilizer 10
Important things to do before driving 111
Improperly worn safety belts 128
Indicator lights 11
Airbag system 140
Dynamic steering 171
PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF 140
also refer to Warning/indicator lights 11
Infant seats 155
Inflation pressure (tires) 217
Instruments 8
Adjusting the lighting 51
Instruments and controls
General illustration 6
Interior lights
Front 51
Rear 51
Intermittent (windshield wipers) 53

J

Jump-starting 238
Jumper cables 239

K

Key 28
Battery replacement 29
Check light 29
Emergency key 28, 72
Ignition/engine on/off 71
Key replacement 28
Mechanical key 28, 29
removing 73
unlocking/locking 30, 32
Kick-down 85
Knee airbags 144
Description 144
How they work 145
Important safety instructions 146

8F0012721BB

L

Lane Change Assistant
refer to side assist 97
LATCH 163
Description 164
Installing a child restraint 165
Location 164
Mounting and releasing the anchorage hook 165
Launch Control Program 86
Leather care/cleaning 185
Leaving home 49
Left hand drive 50
Lifting jack 231
Light
adaptive light 48
Coming/Leaving home 49
Daytime running lights 48, 49
Exterior lighting 49
Fog lights/rear fog light(s) 48
Low beam 48
Rear fog lights 48
Side marker lights 48
Travel mode 50
Light/rain sensor
Headlights 48
Intermittent (windshield wipers) 53
Sensor defective 19
Lighting
Exterior 48
Interior 51
Lights
Emergency flashers 50
High beam 49
Interior/reading lights 51
Turn signals 49
Locking
Rear lid 33
Locking/unlocking
at the lock cylinder 32
by remote control 30
with the central locking switch 31
with the convenience key 30
Low beams 48
Lower anchorage locator button 164
Luggage compartment
Enlarging 64
Lid 33
Loading 116
Ski sack 65
Storing cargo correctly 116
Tie-downs 64, 118
Valet parking 36
Luggage compartment lid
Emergency unlocking 34
Lumbar support 58

M

Maintenance 246
Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) 18, 25
Mechanical key 28, 29
Memory function 61
Mileage
Average 22
Instantaneous 22
Mirrors
Adjusting the exterior mirrors 51
Compass 55
dimming 52
Vanity mirrors 53
Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System . . 140
multitronic 81
Automatic Shift Lock (ASL) 82
Driving 83
Emergency mode 86
Manual shift program 85
Selector lever 81

N

Natural leather care/cleaning 185
NHTSA
Contacting 118
Number of seats 122

O

Occupant seating positions 112
Octane rating 188
Odometer 10
OFF (automatic climate control) 67

Oil
refer to Engine oil 195, 197
Oil consumption 197
On-Board Diagnostic System (OBD)
Data Link Connector (DLC) 26
Electronic speed limiter 26
Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) 25
Open door or front lid warning 21
Opening 27
Opening/closing
at the lock cylinder 32
by remote control 30
with the central locking switch 31
with the convenience key 30
Other equipment (efficiency program) 24
Outside temperature display 21

P

Paint damage 184
Paint No. 243
Parking 76
Automatic transmission 83
Valet parking 36
Parking aid
Cleaning sensors/camera lenses 183
Parking brake 76
also refer to Electromechanical parking brake 76
Parking system 104
Parking System 104
Parking system (rear)
Adjusting the warning tones 105
Parking system (rear, with rear view camera)
Parking mode 1 108
Parking mode 2 109
Safety precautions 106
Switching on/off 107
Switching rear view camera on/off 110
Parts replacement 248
PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light 140
Pedals 116
Physical principles of a frontal collision . . . 123
Polishing 184
Pollutant filter (automatic A/C system) 66
Power
seat adjustment 58
Windows 35
Power locking system
Emergency locking 32
Power windows 35
Rear lid 33
Selective unlock feature 32
Settings 32
Power steering
refer to Electro-mechanical power assist . 171
Power top 40
Cleaning 184
Closing 40
Convenience closing 41
Convenience opening 41
Emergency operation 44
General information 40
Malfunction 42
Messages 42
Opening 40
Variable power top storage bay 42
Wind deflector 43
Power window
Convenience opening/closing 35
Power windows
Malfunctions 36
Pregnant women
Special considerations when wearing a safety belt 127
Pressure (tires) 225
Proper occupant seating positions 112
Proper safety belt position 127
Proper seating position
Front passenger 113
Occupants 112
Rear passengers 114
Protecting 184

Q

Quartz clock 10
quattro
refer to all-wheel drive 172
Question
What happens to unbelted occupants? . . 123

R

Radiator fan 201
Rain/light sensor
Headlights 48
Intermittent (windshield wipers) 53
Sensor defective 19
Raising the vehicle 242
Reading lights 51
Rear fog lights 48
Rear lid
Escape handle 34
Opening and closing 33
Rear light
Defective 19
Rear parking system 104
Rear parking system with rearview camera . 105
Rear view camera
Parking mode 1 108
Parking mode 2 109
Rear view mirror 52
Rear window heating 68
Recirculation mode (automatic climate control) 68
Refuelling 190
Release lever for hood 193
Remote control key 28
Personalizing 28
unlocking/locking 30
Remote control operation
Garage door opener (HomeLink) 36
Remote rear lid release 33
Repair manuals 246
Repairs
Airbag system 143
Replacement key 28
Replacing bulbs 237
Replacing wiper blades 54
Reporting Safety Defects 118, 119
Reset button 10
Retractor 126
Right hand drive 50
Rims 221
Rollbar
refer to Active rollover protection system 119

S

SAFE 10
Safe driving habits 111
Safelock 27
Safety
Airbag system 130
Belts 122
Cargo 116
Correct seating position 112
Pedal area 116
Safety belt position 127
Safety belts worn by pregnant women . . . 127
Safety belt pretensioner
Service and disposal 129
Safety belts 122, 125
Belt positioner 125
Cleaning 184
Danger to passengers who do not wear a safety belt 123
Fastening 126
Improperly worn 128
Not worn 123
Safety belt position 127
Safety instructions 124
Securing child safety seats 159
Special considerations for pregnant women 127
Unfastening 128
Warning/indicator light 122
Warning light 14
Worn properly 124
Safety belt warning light 122
Safety compliance sticker 243
Safety equipment 111
Safety features for occupant restraint and protection 111
Safety guidelines
Seats 57
Safety instructions
Engine compartment 193
for using child safety seats 153
for using safety belts 124
Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System . 142
Seat adjustment
Head restraints 114
Seat belts
refer to Safety belts 122

Seat heating 68
Upper cabin heating 69
Seating capacity 122
Seating position
Driver 112
Front passenger 113
How to adjust the front seats 113
Incorrect seat position 115
Occupants 112
Rear passengers 114
Seats
Adjusting 58
Adjusting in the MMI 59
Convenience side view 59
Correct seating position 112
Driver's seat 57
Folding 64
Front passenger's seat 58
Number of seats 122
Power easy entry function 59
Safety guidelines 57
Seat symmetry 59
Seat ventilation 68
Seat (upper cabin heating) 69
Selective unlock feature 32
Selector lever 81
Emergency release 87
Selector lever emergency release 87
Service and disposal
Safety belt pretensioner 129
Service interval display 25
Service position
refer to Replacing wiper blades 54
SET button 9
Shutting down vehicle 176
Side airbags
Description 146
How they work 148
side assist
Adjusting the brightness 99
Sensor range 98
Side assist
Activating and deactivating 99
Cleaning the sensors 183
Description 97
Side marker lights 48
Ski sack 65
Snow chains 222
Sound system display 21
Sources of information about child restraints and their use 166
Spare tire 227
Speedometer 10
Speed warning system 78
Sport differential 101
Indicator lamp 20
START ENGINE STOP button (convenience key) 74
START ENGINE STOP button (Convenience key) 73
Starting from rest 77
Starting off with a trailer 77
Starting the engine 71, 73
Steering
Locking the steering 71
also refer to Electro-mechanical power assist 171
Steering wheel
Adjusting steering column 71
Indicator light 16, 171
Steps for determining correct load limit . . . 221
Stopping the engine 73, 74
Storage 62
S tronic 81
Selector lever 81
S tronic transmission
Emergency release 87
Launch Control Program 86
Sun visors 53
Symbols
refer to Warning/indicator lights 11

T

Tachometer 9
Technical data 243
Technical modifications 248
Tie-downs 64, 118
tiptronic 81
Automatic Shift Lock (ASL) 82
Driving 83
Emergency mode 86
Manual shift program 85
Selector lever 81

Tires 207
Low aspect ratio tires 223
Replacing 228
Service life 215
Tire pressure 217, 226
Tire pressure monitoring system . . . 224, 225
Tire pressure table 218
Treadwear indicators 215
Unidirectional 209
Uniform tire quality grading 224
Tires and wheels
Glossary of tire and loading terminology . 209
Tires and vehicle load limits 219
Tool kit 227
Torn or frayed safety belts 124
Towing
Front eyelet 240
Rear eyelet 241
Tow trucks 240
TPMS (tire pressure monitoring system) . . . 225
Trailer towing 179
Information 180
Operating instructions 179
Technical requirements 179, 180
Transmission malfunction (indicator light) . . 86
Transport Canada 119
Travel mode 50
Trip computer
Fuel consumption 22
Mileage 22
Single-trip memory 22
Total-trip memory 22
Trip odometer 10
Trunk
refer to Luggage compartment 63, 116
Trunk escape handle 34
Trunk lid
refer to Rear lid 33
Turn signals 49
Warning/indicator lights 20

U

Unfastening safety belts 128
Uniform tire quality grading 224
Unlocking
Rear lid 33
Unlocking/locking
at the lock cylinder 32
by remote control 30
with the central locking switch 31
with the convenience key 30
Upper cabin heating 69
Use of jumper cables 239

V

Valet parking 36
Vanity mirrors 53
Vehicle
Care/cleaning 182
Out of service 186
Vehicle control modules 169
Vehicle electrical system 14
Vehicle identification label 243
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) 243
Vehicle jack 231
Vehicle key 28
Vehicle shut-down 176
Vehicle tool kit 227
Ventilation 66

W

Warning/indicator lights 11
Airbag system 17
Anti-lock braking system (ABS) 17
Brake system 13
Electromechanical parking brake 14
Electronic power control 18
Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC) 16
Generator 14
Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) 18
Safety belt 14
Safety systems 17
Turn signals 20
Warning/Indicator lights
Airbag system 140
Warranty coverages 246
Washer reservoir 206
Washing matte finish paint 182
Weights 243
What happens if you wear your safety belt too loose? 127

What happens to unbelted occupants? 123
What impairs driving safety? 112
Wheel bolts 221
Wheels 207
Cleaning 183
Glossary of tire and loading terminology . 209
Replacing 228
Tires and vehicle load limits 219
When must a safety belt be replaced? 124
When must the airbag system be inspected? 140
Wind deflector 43
Window regulators 35
Windows
Cleaning/removing ice 184
defrosting 68
Windshield
Cleaning 53
defrosting 68
Windshield washer fluid
Low level 19
Windshield washer system 53
Windshield wipers
Cleaning 54
Folding up 54
Indicator light 19
Replacing windshield wiper blades 54
Switching on/off 53
Washer reservoir 206
Winter driving
Snow chains 222
Tires 222
Winter operation
Coolant system 199
Defrosting windows 68
Seat heating 68
Tires 172
Winter tires 222
Winter use
Car washes 182
Removing ice from windows 184

X

Xenon headlights 48, 50, 237

8F0012721BB

It has always been Audi's policy to continuously improve its products. AUDI AG reserves the right to make changes in design and specifications, and to make additions or improvements in its products without incurring any obligation to install them on products previously manufactured. This Owner's Manual is based on the current data available when it was printed. Text, illustrations and specifications in this owner's manual are based on the most up-to-date information available at the time of printing, and shall not constitute a basis for liability claims.

These instructions may not be reproduced or translated in whole or in part without written consent of AUDI AG. All rights reserved by AUDI AG.

For the sake of the environment

Printed on eco-friendly paper (bleached without chlorine, recyclable).

Owner's Manual
Englisch Nordamerika 05.2016
8F0012721BB



8F0012721BB

www.audi.com